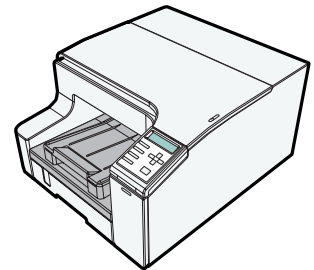




# GelSprinter GX e2600/GX e3300N/GX e3350N

## User Guide



- 
- 1** Read This First
  - 2** Preparing for Printing
  - 3** Printer Driver
  - 4** Monitoring and Configuring the Printer
  - 5** Using the Printer with a Macintosh
  - 6** Maintaining
  - 7** Troubleshooting
  - 8** Appendix



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## 1. Read This First

- About This Product.....9
  - Introduction.....9
  - Legal Prohibition.....9
  - Trademarks.....9
  - Disclaimer.....11
  - User's Notes.....11
  - Manuals for This Printer.....13
- How to Read This Manual.....15
  - Description for the Specified Model.....15
  - Symbols.....16
  - Installing User Guide.....16
  - How to Use User Guide.....17
  - Removing the User Guide.....19
- Guide to Components.....20
  - Machine Body.....20
  - Machine Rear.....21
  - Control Panel.....23
- Making Printer Settings Using the Control Panel.....27
- Options.....32
  - Multi Bypass Tray BY1000.....32
- Recommended Functions.....35

## 2. Preparing for Printing

- Setting Up the Hardware.....37
  - Checking the Computer and Installation Area.....37
  - Checking the Supplied Items and Unpacking the Printer.....40
  - Attaching the Options.....41
  - Installing the Print Cartridges.....42
  - Plugging in the Power Cord and Turning the Power On.....44
  - Loading Paper.....45
  - Printing a Configuration Page.....51
- Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (USB Connection).....53
  - Before Installing the Software (USB).....53

---

Quick Install for USB.....	54
Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (Network Connection).....	57
Before Installing the Software (Network Connection).....	57
Quick Install for Network.....	61
Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu).....	63
Interpreting the Configuration Page.....	63
Confirming the Connection Method.....	64
Installing the PCL or RPCS Raster Printer Driver (USB).....	66
Sharing the Printer.....	68
Specifying the Interface and Network Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Host Interface Menu).....	71
.....	71
Changing the Host Interface Menu.....	73
Installing the Drivers for Network Connection.....	74
Installing the PCL or RPCS Raster Printer Driver (Network).....	75
Installing the DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	81
Paper.....	82
Compatible Paper Types.....	82
Loadable Paper Sizes and Quantities.....	82
Paper Handling Precautions.....	85
Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu).....	92
Changing the Paper Input Menu.....	92

### 3. Printer Driver

---

Two Types of Printer Properties Dialog Box.....	95
Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box.....	95
Opening the Printing Preferences Dialog Box.....	95
Opening from an Application.....	96
Specifying Settings on [Accessories] Tab.....	97
Conditions for Bidirectional Communication.....	97
If Bidirectional Communication is Disabled.....	97
Printing.....	99
Unauthorized Copy Control.....	100
Canceling Printing.....	103
Canceling Printing from the Status Monitor.....	103

---

Canceling Printing Using the [Job Reset] Key of the Printer.....	103
Canceling Printing from the Taskbar.....	104
Selecting the Printer Driver Language.....	105

#### **4. Monitoring and Configuring the Printer**

---

Using the Status Monitor.....	107
Receiving Notification of Print Job Status via the Status Monitor.....	107
Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	108
Using Notification via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	109
Specifying the Settings for Monitoring the Printer.....	110
Displaying the Printer Status.....	111
Using Web Browser.....	112
Displaying Top Page.....	113
Menu.....	114
Checking the Printer Status.....	114
Changing the Printer Settings (GX e3350N only).....	115
Notifying the Printer Status by E-mail.....	115
About the Web Browser Help.....	128
SNMP.....	129

#### **5. Using the Printer with a Macintosh**

---

System Requirements for Macintosh.....	131
Operating System (for Macintosh).....	131
Hardware (for Macintosh).....	131
Preparing for Printing (for Macintosh).....	132
Installing the Printer Driver under Mac OS X.....	133
Installing the Printer Driver on a Macintosh.....	133
Specifying the Printer Settings on a Macintosh.....	134
Printer Properties Dialog Box on a Macintosh.....	138
Dialog Boxes for Printer Settings on a Macintosh.....	138
Displaying the Printer Driver Settings Dialog Boxes on a Macintosh.....	138
Printing with a Macintosh.....	141
Basic Printing Procedure for Macintosh.....	141
Printing on Various Paper Types with a Macintosh.....	141
Canceling a Print Job on a Macintosh.....	144

---

Notes on/Limitations of Printing Using a Mac.....	146
Monitoring and Configuring the Printer (for Macintosh).....	150
Displaying the Printer Status on a Macintosh.....	151
Checking whether Bidirectional Communication is Working on a Macintosh.....	151
Displaying the Status Monitor on a Macintosh.....	151
Opening Help on a Macintosh.....	153
Displaying Help from the Print dialog on a Macintosh.....	153
Displaying Mac Help.....	153
Maintaining (for Macintosh).....	154
Troubleshooting (for Macintosh).....	155
Updating the Printer Driver on a Macintosh.....	156
Checking the Version of the Printer Driver on a Macintosh.....	156
Uninstalling the Printer Driver from a Macintosh.....	156
Software on the CD-ROM for Macintosh.....	158
Files for Macintosh.....	158
RPCS Raster Printer Drivers for Macintosh.....	158
Manuals (HTML files) for Macintosh.....	159

## 6. Maintaining

---

Checking the Number of Printed Pages using the Control Panel (Counter Menu).....	161
Displaying the Counter.....	161
Performing Maintenance using the Control Panel (Maintenance Menu).....	163
Nozzle Check.....	164
Head-cleaning.....	166
Head-flushing.....	169
Head Position.....	170
Adj.Paper Feed.....	172
Registration.....	174
Setting the Date and Time.....	177
De-condensation.....	180
Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu).....	182
Changing the System Menu.....	187
Specifying PCL Settings using the Control Panel (PCL Menu).....	188
Changing the PCL Menu.....	190

---

Selecting the Control Panel Language.....	191
Restricting Printer Functions.....	193
Locking the Keys.....	193
Unlocking the Keys.....	193
Replacing a Print Cartridge.....	195
Checking the Remaining Ink.....	195
Replacing a Print Cartridge.....	197
Handling Print Cartridges.....	199
Replacing an Ink Collector Unit.....	201
Cleaning.....	204
Cleaning the Power Cable Plug.....	204
Moving.....	205
Moving a Short Distance.....	205
Moving a Long Distance.....	205
Disposing.....	207
When Not Using for a Long Period of Time.....	208

## 7. Troubleshooting

---

Software Cannot Be Installed.....	209
Confirming Installation.....	209
Checking Your Computer Environment.....	209
Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed.....	212
USB Connection is not Automatically Detected.....	212
If Test Print Fails.....	214
Uninstalling.....	215
Uninstalling the Printer Driver.....	215
Deleting Devices.....	216
Printing Will Not Start.....	218
Power Cannot Be Turned On.....	218
Paper Will Not Feed Even When the Power Is On.....	218
An Error Occurs.....	218
Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally.....	220
Paper Jam.....	222
Using the [Form Feed] Key to Remove Jammed Paper.....	222

---

Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1 .....	223
Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional).....	225
Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover.....	229
Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board.....	232
Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit.....	236
If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper.....	238
Print Results Are Not Satisfactory.....	243
Prints are Unsatisfactory.....	243
Colors Do Not Match the Displayed Image.....	245
Positions Do Not Match the Displayed Image.....	245
Other Problems.....	246
Checking the Consumables.....	248
If a Message Appears during Installation.....	249
Error & Status Messages on the Control Panel.....	250
Control Panel Error Messages.....	250
Status Monitor Errors.....	255
Status Monitor Does Not Open.....	255
No Response from Printer.....	255
No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 1).....	255
No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Bypass Tray).....	257
Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Tray 1).....	259
Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Bypass Tray).....	260
Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Auto Tray Select).....	262
Cover Open.....	264
Cover Open / Print Cartridge(s) Not Detected.....	266
Duplex Unit Not Detected.....	268
Cartridge Almost Empty.....	269
Cartridge Empty.....	270
Used Cartridge.....	271
Ink Collector Unit Not Detected.....	272
Ink Collector Unit Almost Full.....	274
Ink Collector Unit Full.....	274
Used Ink Collector Unit.....	274



---

Out of Printable Temperature Range.....	275
Printer Error.....	275
Network Interface Error.....	276
Envelope Selector Position Mismatch.....	276
Maintenance Failed.....	279
Cannot Recover Error Page.....	279

## 8. Appendix

---

Updating the Firmware.....	283
Checking the Current Printer Driver Version.....	284
Software on the CD-ROM.....	285
Files.....	285
RPCS Raster Printer Drivers.....	285
PCL Printer Drivers (GX e3350N only).....	286
SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	286
Manuals (HTML files).....	287
Cautions to Take When Using in a Network.....	288
Using DHCP.....	288
Electromagnetic Interference.....	289
Specifications.....	290
Printer Body.....	290
Option (Bypass tray).....	293
List of Printer Driver Functions (Windows/Macintosh).....	294
Information about Installed Applications.....	309
expat.....	309
MD5.....	309
NetBSD.....	310
Original SSLeay License.....	312
TCP/IP.....	313
JPEG LIBRARY.....	313
IPS™ print language emulations.....	313
Where to Inquire.....	314
Recommended Consumables.....	315
Option and Consumables.....	316

---

INDEX.....	317
------------	-----

# 1. Read This First

---

## About This Product

This section tells you about the product.

1

---

### Introduction

---

This manual describes detailed instructions on the operation and notes about the use of this machine. To get maximum versatility from this machine, all operators are requested to read this manual carefully and follow the instructions. Please keep this manual in a handy place near the machine.

For safe and correct use, please be sure to read the Safety Information in the "Safety Information" that comes with this machine before using the machine.

---

### Legal Prohibition

---

Do not copy or print any item for which reproduction is prohibited by law. Copying or printing the following items is generally prohibited by local law:

bank notes, revenue stamps, bonds, stock certificates, bank drafts, checks, passports, driver's licenses.

The preceding list is meant as a guide only and is not inclusive.

We assume no responsibility for its completeness or accuracy. If you have any questions concerning the legality of copying or printing certain items, consult with your legal advisor.

---

### Trademarks

---

Microsoft, Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe, Flash, Macromedia and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

PCL is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Monotype is a registered trademark of Monotype Imaging, Inc.

UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries, licensed exclusively through X/Open Company Limited.

Netscape is a registered trademark of Netscape Communication Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.

AppleTalk, ColorSync, Mac OS, Macintosh, and Power Mac are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Intel and Intel Core are registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

PowerPC® is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States and other countries, or both.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

- The product names of Windows 2000 are as follows:
  - Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional
  - Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Server
  - Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Advanced Server
- The product names of Windows XP are as follows:
  - Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional
  - Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition
  - Microsoft® Windows® XP Media Center Edition
  - Microsoft® Windows® XP Tablet PC Edition
- The product names of Windows Vista are as follows:
  - Microsoft® Windows Vista® Ultimate
  - Microsoft® Windows Vista® Business
  - Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Premium
  - Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Basic
  - Microsoft® Windows Vista® Enterprise
- The product names of Windows Server 2003 are as follows:
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Standard Edition
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Enterprise Edition
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Web Edition
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Datacenter Edition
- The product names of Windows Server 2003 R2 are as follows:
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Standard Edition
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Enterprise Edition
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Datacenter Edition
- The product names of Windows Server 2008 are as follows:
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise  
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Datacenter  
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 for Itanium-based Systems  
Microsoft® Windows® Web Server 2008  
Microsoft® Windows® HPC Server 2008  
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard without Hyper-V™  
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise without Hyper-V™  
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Datacenter without Hyper-V™

---

## Disclaimer

---

Contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

For good print quality, the supplier recommends that you use genuine print cartridges from the supplier.

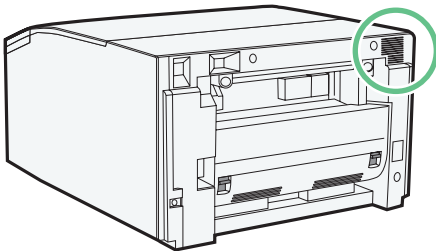
The supplier shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that might result from the use of parts other than genuine parts from the supplier with your office products.

---

## User's Notes

---

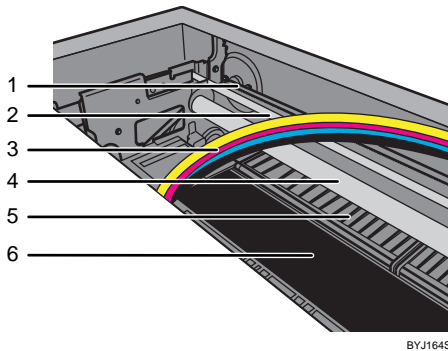
- High temperatures inside the printer can cause a breakdown. Do not lean anything against the vent or block it in any way.



BPR100S

- Warm air from the vent is normal and not a cause for concern.
- Do not leave the left, top, or right front cover open. If you do, dust or other matter might get inside the printer, and this will reduce print quality.
- During printing, do not move the printer or open its covers.
- Do not open the left, top, or right front cover during printing. If you do, printing will stop.

- During printing, do not pull out a paper tray. Printing will stop and the paper will jam.
- Do not touch the feed belt, the transparent black band, print head rail rod, ink tubes, paper pressing board, or toothed rubber belt. Also, take care not to snag any cables or ink tubes with your sleeves.



1. **Toothed rubber belt**
2. **Transparent black band**
3. **Ink tubes**
4. **Print head rail rod**
5. **Paper pressing board**
6. **Feed belt**

- Take care not to let paper clips and other foreign objects fall inside the printer.
- After you install the print cartridge and switch the printer on for the first time, the print head priming process will begin. This process sometimes clogs the print head. If this happens, perform the head cleaning procedure.
- During printing, do not turn off the power or unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- During printing, do not subject the printer to external shock such as that caused by tapping paper on it.
- When not using the printer, turn off the power.
- You can place up to 20 kg (44.1 lb.) of evenly spread weight on the printer. Do not place any concentrated weight of more than 5 kg (11.1 lb.) on the printer.
- Do not place unsteady objects on the printer. If they fall, they will cause injury to users and/or damage to the printer.
- This printer has a nominal operational life of 5 years if used normally for 12 hours a day to produce up to 2,500 A4 prints a month. Exceeding these limits may reduce the operational life. The operational life also depends on the environment in which the printer is used.
- "Total Counter" displays the number of pages printed. Use "Total Counter" to estimate the number of pages that can be printed within the printer's remaining operational life. The printer's operational life is calculated based on the number of pages that it can print on plain paper in [Speed priority] mode.

- This printer is designed to have an operational life of 5 years or be good for 150,000 pages.
- Depending on your printing document, the ink collector unit may fill up sooner than normal.  
An "Ink Collector almost full" message appears shortly before the ink collector unit is full. Although the printer remains usable until the unit is completely full, contact your sales or service representative as early as possible (charge incurred).
- Print cartridges should be used up before their expiry date, ideally within six months of being removed from their packaging.
- Cartridges that are no longer usable for printing reserve a small quantity of ink for maintenance usage.
- Print cartridges and supplies comply with the manufacturer's safety specifications. To ensure safety and reliability, use genuine print cartridges and supplies.
- Single-sided copies are printed at higher density than duplex-printed copies.
- For print quality and consistency, this printer always uses all the available ink colors (black, cyan, yellow, and magenta) to produce print images. Even if your print image is black and white or [Black and White] is selected in the printer properties dialog box, all ink colors will still be used.
- Printing stops if one of the print cartridges becomes empty. If a cartridge containing a color ink such as cyan, yellow, or magenta becomes empty, you cannot print, even in black/white. If a message prompting you to change the print cartridge appears, change the cartridge as soon as possible.
- Printing hundreds of copies in a single day might cause the print head to clog the following day. If this happens, perform the head cleaning procedure.
- This printer performs regular automatic maintenance, after and during printing, to ensure consistent print quality. Maintenance is also performed when printing begins after a period of disuse.
- Color ink may be used even if you print all-black text or if you specify black and white printing. It may also be used for print head cleaning and refreshing, which are done to maintain printer performance.
- If the printer will not be used for a long time, turn its power off, disconnect the USB cable, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet. Because the printer consumes a lot of ink for maintenance and print head cleaning when switched on after a long period of inactivity, we recommended you use the printer at least once a month.
- Do not move the printer while it is powered. Even when it is off, make sure the printer is on a level surface and safe from shock and vibration.
- Do not switch the printer off while it is busy. Make sure the printer is idle before switching it off.
- Condensation can form inside the printer if it is moved from a cold place to a warm place. Allow any condensation to fully evaporate by not switching the printer on for at least an hour after moving it.

---

## Manuals for This Printer

---

Read the appropriate manual according to what you want to do.

## **Quick Installation Guide**

This guide briefly explains how to unpack and install the printer.

## **User Guide (HTML)**

This guide, which is on the CD-ROM, explains in detail how to use the printer.

The guide explains how to make network and printer driver settings, and how to make and check printer settings using a Web browser and other utilities.

The guide also contains troubleshooting procedures, such as those related to printing and paper jams, and important information about types of paper and replacing consumables.

We recommend you install this guide on your computer so you can refer to it easily.

## **Safety Information**

This booklet contains important information about using the machine safely and correctly. Be sure to read this before using the machine.



# How to Read This Manual

Be sure to read this section before anything else.

- This guide uses Windows XP procedures for its examples. Procedures and screens might vary depending on the operating system you are using.

The color samples in this manual may differ slightly from the colors of actual copies.

Some illustrations in this manual might be slightly different from the machine.

Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer.

Depending on which country you are in, certain units may be optional. For details, please contact your local dealer.

## Three kinds of models notation are employed in this manual.

GX e2600: This model supports the RPCS Raster printer driver.

GX e3300N: This model supports the RPCS Raster printer driver.

GX e3350N: This model supports the PCL and RPCS Raster printer drivers.

---

## Description for the Specified Model

---

In this manual, the following items explain about the machine for the specified models:

**-22, -27**

Information under these numbers is applicable to J017-22, J017-27, J019-22, J019-27, J021-22, and J021-27 models. You can identify the model code by checking the label on the rear of the machine.

Read if you purchase this model.

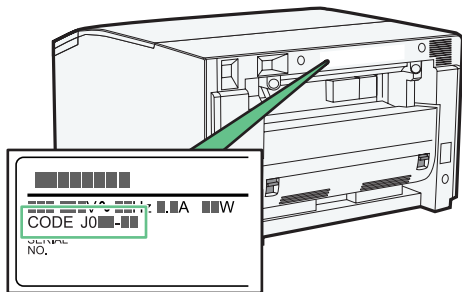
**-17**

Information under this number is applicable to J017-17 and J019-17 models. You can identify the model code by checking the label on the rear of the machine.

Read if you purchase this model.

### Note

- You can identify the machine's model code by checking the label on the rear of the machine as shown.



BPR101S

---

## Symbols

---

The following set of symbols is used in this manual.

**★ Important**

Indicates points to pay attention to when using the machine, and explanations of likely causes of paper misfeeds, damage to originals, or loss of data. Be sure to read these explanations.

**↓ Note**

Indicates supplementary explanations of the machine's functions, and instructions on resolving user errors.

**☰ Reference**

This symbol is located at the end of sections.

It indicates where you can find further relevant information.

**[ ]**

Indicates the names of keys and buttons.

---

## Installing User Guide

---

Follow the procedure below to install User Guide only.

If you installed the software when performing [Quick Install for USB] or [Quick Install for Network], there is no need to install it again here.

**★ Important**

- The following explanation uses Windows XP as an example. Procedures under other operating systems may differ.
- Screens vary according to the operating environment.

**1. Start Windows, and insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

Quit all other applications currently running.

After inserting the CD-ROM, the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] dialog box appears. If it does not, double-click the CD-ROM drive icon under [My Computer] or [Explorer], and then double-click [SETUP.EXE].

**2. Select a language for the interface, and then click [OK].****3. Click [User Guide].****4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the terms of the license agreement], and then click [Next >].****5. Confirm the location in which you want to install User Guide, and then click [Next >].**

To change the installation location, click [Change...].

**6. Confirm the program folder in which you want to install User Guide, and then click [Next >].****7. Click [Install].**

Installation starts.

During installation, a message asking whether you want to create a desktop shortcut icon is displayed. Click [Yes] or [No] as appropriate.

**8. When installation is complete, click [Finish].****Reference**

- To use the printer, the printer driver must be installed. See p.66 "Installing the PCL or RPCS Raster Printer Driver (USB)".

---

## How to Use User Guide

---

User Guide (on the provided CD-ROM) includes detailed information about this printer and a troubleshooting guide.

Use one of the browsers below to display User Guide.

- Windows:  
Microsoft Internet Explorer Version 4.01 SP2 or later
- MacOS  
Microsoft Internet Explorer Version 5 or later

When using Safari, a simplified User Guide is displayed.

To view the video files of User Guide, Adobe Flash Player (Macromedia Flash Player 5 or later) plug-in is required.

### **When using screen reader software or when you cannot install Adobe Flash Player (Macromedia Flash Player 5 or later) plug-ins**

When using screen reader software to listen to User Guide or when video files cannot be displayed because Flash plug-ins cannot be installed, click [For screen reader] to display User Guide version optimized for screen reader software.

Use the button in the upper right window to change the screen.

### **When using a non-recommended browser**

When using Internet Explorer 3.02 or Netscape Navigator 4.05 or later versions, a simplified User Guide is displayed.

#### **↓ Note**

- If the simplified User Guide does not automatically appear, in the CD-ROM's [unv] folder, open index.htm.

### **Opening from the Icon**

---

This section explains how to open User Guide from the desktop icon.

1. **Double-click the [User Guide] icon on your desktop.**



The browser opens, and then User Guide appears.

### **Opening from the [Start] Menu**

---

This section explains how to open User Guide from the Windows Start menu.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs], point to [Product Name], and then click [Product Name User Guide].**

The browser opens, and then User Guide appears.

#### **↓ Note**

- Depending on the settings made during installation, menu folder names may differ.

### **Opening from the Printer Driver**

---

This section explains how to open User Guide from the printer driver.

1. **In the printer properties dialog box, click [User Guide] on the [Setup] tab.**

The browser opens, and then User Guide appears.

---

## Opening from the CD-ROM

---

This section explains how to open User Guide from the supplied CD-ROM.

1. **Start Windows, and insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

After inserting the CD-ROM, the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] dialog box appears. If it does not, double-click the CD-ROM drive icon under [My Computer] or [Explorer], and then double-click [SETUP.EXE].

2. **Select a language for the interface, and then click [OK].**
3. **Click [Browse User Guide].**

The browser opens, and then User Guide appears.

---

## Opening from Printer Status Error Messages

---

This section explains how to open User Guide when Printer Status error message is displayed.

1. **The Status monitor displays an error message if a problem occurs.**
2. **Click [User Guide].**

The browser opens, and then User Guide appears.

Open User Guide from here if a problem occurs while using the printer.

---

## Removing the User Guide

---

Follow the procedure below to remove the User Guide installed on your computer.

### Removing the User Guide using its [Uninstall] function

1. **On [Start] menu, point to [All Programs].**
2. **Point to the installed [Product name], and then click [Uninstall User Guide].**
3. **Follow the instructions that appear to remove the User Guide.**

### Removing the User Guide using [Add/Remove Programs]

1. **On [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].**
2. **Click [Add or Remove Programs].**
3. **Select the installed [Product name User Guide], and then click [Remove].**
4. **Follow the instructions that appear to remove the User Guide.**

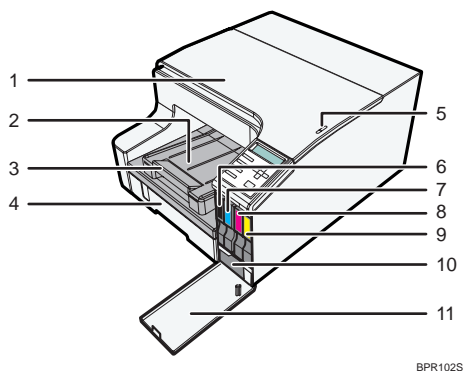
# Guide to Components

The names and functions of parts of the printer body, control panel, and options are explained.

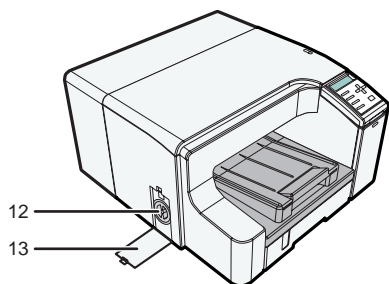
1

## Machine Body

This is a front view of the printer.



BPR102S



BPR103S

### 1. Top Cover

Normally, keep this cover closed. If you cannot locate paper jams, or jammed paper cannot be removed easily, you can check the condition of paper from the top of the printer.

### 2. Output Ramp

Prints are delivered on the output ramp.

### 3. Output Ramp Extension


Pull out when using large paper to keep the printed paper from falling.

### 4. Tray 1

Load paper here.

If you want to print on paper larger than A4 or letter size, pull the tray extension out.

### 5. Envelope Selector

For envelopes, set the lever to the rear position ; for everything else, set the lever to the forward position .

### 6. Print Cartridge (black)

### 7. Print Cartridge (cyan)

### 8. Print Cartridge (magenta)

### 9. Print Cartridge (yellow)

### 10. Ink Collector Unit

### 11. Right Front Cover

During normal usage, keep this cover closed. Open this cover only when you need to install or replace an ink cartridge or the ink collector unit.

### 12. Paper Feed Wheel

Use to wind out paper jammed around the guide board.

### 13. Left Cover

Normally, keep this cover closed. Open this cover when you need to turn the paper feed wheel.

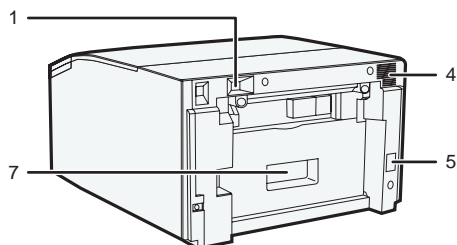
---

## Machine Rear

---

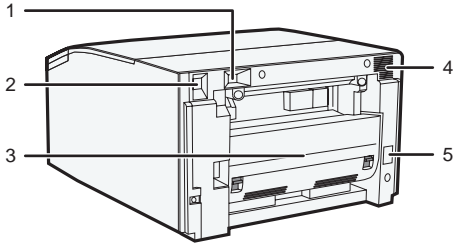
This is a rear view of the printer.

### GX e2600



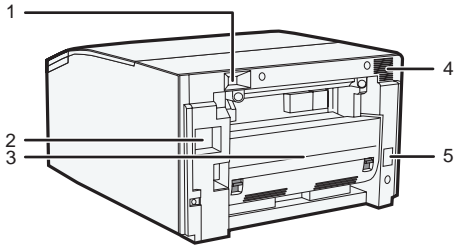
BY.I260S

### GX e3300N



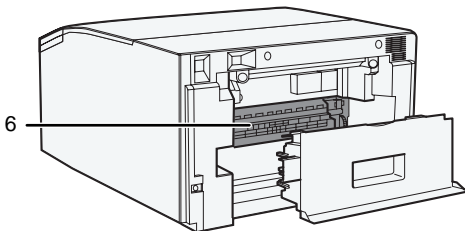
BPR104S

### GX e3350N



BYJ119S

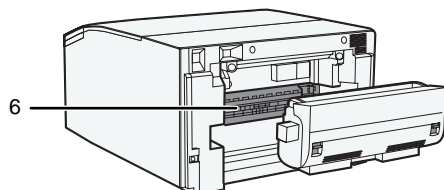
### GX e2600



BYJ261S



## GX e3300N/GX e3350N



BPR105S

### 1. USB slot

Connect the USB cable from the computer here.

### 2. Ethernet port (GX e3300N/GX e3350N only)

Use a network interface cable to connect the printer to a network.

### 3. Duplex Unit (GX e3300N/GX e3350N only)

Turns the paper over when performing duplex printing.

### 4. Vent

Air is vented here to prevent the inside of the printer from getting too warm. Do not lean anything against the vent or block it in any way. If the inside of the printer gets too warm, a breakdown could occur.

### 5. Power inlet

Plug the power cord.

Plug one end of the power cord into the printer's power inlet and the other end into a wall outlet.

Connect the grounding wire attached to the power plug directly to a grounding terminal.

### 6. Guide board

To remove paper that has jammed inside the printer, open the guide board by removing the rear cover.

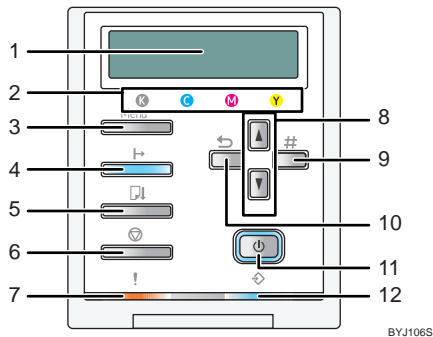
### 7. Rear cover (GX e2600 only)

Open this to remove paper that has become jammed inside the printer.

## Control Panel

The illustrations in this manual show the **-22, -27** model. The **-17** model may differ slightly from the illustrated model.

The control panels shown in the illustrations in this manual will not match the GX e2600 control panel exactly. This is because the illustrations show GX e3300N and GX e3350N control panels.



### 1. Display

Displays current printer status and error messages.

### 2. Cartridge replacement indicator

Each color corresponds to a print cartridge. From the left, the colors show the status of the black (K), cyan (C), magenta (M), and yellow (Y) cartridges.

### 3. [Menu] key

Press this key to make and check the current printer settings.

### 4. [Online] key

Indicates whether the printer is online or offline. Press this to switch between online and offline.

When the lamp is lit, the printer is online, enabling data reception from the host computer.

When the lamp is unlit, the printer is offline, disabling data reception from the host computer.

Press to return to the ready condition.

### 5. [Form Feed] key

When the printer is offline, press this to print all data left in the printer's input buffer.

You can use this to force the printer to print data received in the online status when the paper size or type does not match the actually set size or type.

If a message prompting you to remove the jammed paper by pressing the [Form Feed] key appears, press this key.

### 6. [Job Reset] key

When the printer is online, press this key to cancel an ongoing print job.

### 7. Alert indicator

Lights up whenever a printer error occurs. A red light indicates an error has occurred that makes printing impossible; blinks red to indicate a possible error during printing.

If the red light is on, follow the instructions that appear on the display.

### 8. [▲][▼] keys

Use these keys to increase or decrease values on the display when making settings.

Keep the key pressed to quicken scrolling, and increase or decrease values on the display in units of 10.

To apply this function: under [Maintenance], set [Key Repeat] to [On].

When the printer is online and the "Ready" message is displayed on the control panel, press the [▼] key to clean the cyan, magenta, yellow, and black print heads ([-17] only).

### 9. [#Enter] key

Press this key to execute menu items selected on the display.

### 10. [Escape] key

Press this key to return to the previous condition on the display.

### 11. [Power] key

- Press to turn the power on and off.
- To turn the power on, press and hold down the [Power] key for one second until it lights.
- After the power is turned on, the [Power] key will flash until the printer is ready for printing, at which point the key will stop flashing and remain lit.
- When the power is turned off, the key will blink slowly until the printer has completely shut down at which point the key will be dark.
- $\cup$  means "standby". To avoid any power consumption, disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

### 12. Data In indicator

Blinks when the printer is receiving data from a computer or when the printer is carrying out maintenance. The Data In indicator is lit if there is data to be printed.

#### Reference

- For details about the Key Repeat, see p.163 "Performing Maintenance using the Control Panel (Maintenance Menu)".

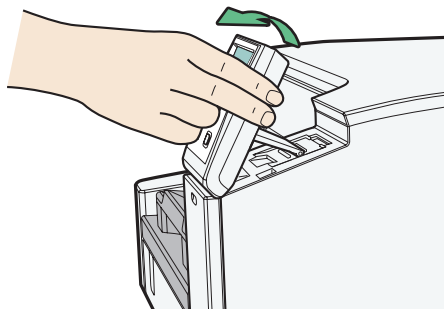
## Adjusting the Angle of the Control Panel

You can adjust the angle of the control panel for easier usage.

Use the following procedure to adjust the angle of the control panel.

### Raising the Control Panel

1. Raise the control panel by carefully pulling it upward and forward.

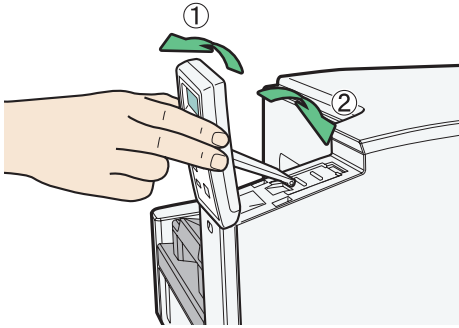


BPR189S

2. Insert the stopper on the back of the control panel into one of the grooves beneath.

## Lowering the Control Panel

1. Carefully pull the control panel slightly forward (①).




BPR190S

2. Lower the control panel (②).

### ↓ Note

- You can set the tilt to one of three angles.

# Making Printer Settings Using the Control Panel

This section explains how to change the default settings of the printer and provides information about the parameters included in each menu. For details about procedures and settings, see the information under in  **Reference**.

\* Does not appear when using the GX e2600/GX e3300N.

\*\* Does not appear when using the GX e2600.

## Counter

Menu
Show Counter
Print

## Paper Input

Menu
Tray Paper Size
Paper Type
Aut.Tray Select

## List/Test Print

Menu
Config. Page
Color Demo Page
Error Log
PCL Config.Page *

## Maintenance

Menu
Nozzle Check
Head-cleaning

Menu
Head-flushing
Head Position
Adj.Paper Feed
Registration
Date/Time
Key Repeat
Dry-delay (Exit)
Dry-delay (Dup) * *
Paper Feed Test
De-condensation

## System

Menu
Prt. Err Report *
Auto Continue
Sub Paper Size
Energy Saver
Notify by Email * *
Memory Usage *
Unit of Measure
Page Size *
Paper Type *
Preprinted Ppr *
Copies *
Duplex *

Menu
Blank Pg. Print *
Tray Switching *
Uni-direct.Prt. *
Density *
Color Mode *
Recycl.Ppr.Mode
Env.Slctr.Alert
Pg Recov. Error
Ink C.U. Space

### Host Interface

Menu
I/O Timeout
Network Setup **
USB Setting

### PCL Menu \*

Menu
Orientation
Form Lines
Font Source
Font Number
Point Size
Font Pitch
Symbol Set
Courier Font

Menu
Ext. A4 Width
Append CR to LF
Resolution
Black Printing

## Language

Menu
Japanese
English
German
French
Italian
Dutch
Danish
Swedish
Norwegian
Spanish
Finnish
Portuguese
Czech ([-22, -27] only)
Polish ([-22, -27] only)
Hungarian ([-22, -27] only)

### Reference

- p.161 "Checking the Number of Printed Pages using the Control Panel (Counter Menu)"
- p.92 "Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)"
- p.63 "Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu)"



- p.163 "Performing Maintenance using the Control Panel (Maintenance Menu)"
- p.182 "Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu)"
- p.71 "Specifying the Interface and Network Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Host Interface Menu)"
- p.188 "Specifying PCL Settings using the Control Panel (PCL Menu)"
- p.191 "Selecting the Control Panel Language"
- p.193 "Restricting Printer Functions"

# Options

This section explains the names and functions of the various available options.

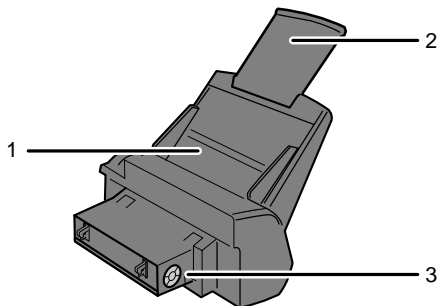
1

---

## Multi Bypass Tray BY1000

---

Use this tray to feed in sheets manually.



BPR107S

**1. Bypass tray**

Load paper here.

**2. Bypass tray extension**

Pull this out according to the paper size.

**3. Wheel**

Use this to wind out paper that became jammed after being fed in from the bypass tray.

---

## Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray

---

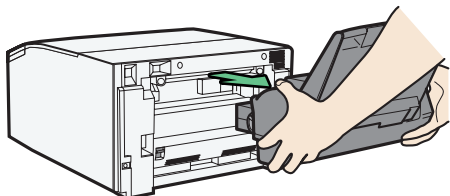
To clear a paper jam, you might have to detach the bypass tray.

This section explains how to detach and reattach the bypass tray.

**1. Remove any paper in the bypass tray.**

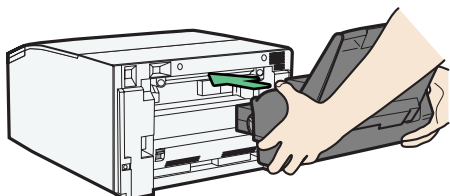
**2. Push the bypass tray extension in.**

### 3. Detach the bypass tray.



BPR108S

### 4. Reattach the bypass tray.



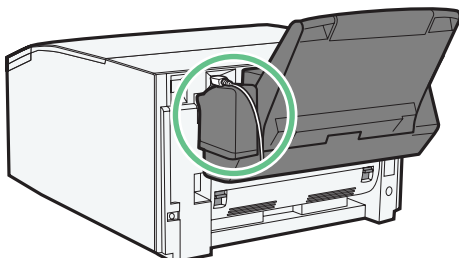
BPR109S

### 5. Pull the bypass tray extension out.

### 6. Load paper in the bypass tray.

#### ↓ Note

- After attaching the paper feed unit, you must register where to start printing on paper loaded in the paper feed unit.
- When you attach the bypass tray, take care not to trap the USB cable.



BPR198S

- When you detach and reattach the bypass tray, switch the printer off.

 **Reference**

- For details about registering where to start printing on paper loaded in the paper feed unit, see p. 174 "Registration".

---

# Recommended Functions

This section lists useful and recommended functions.

## **Automatically selecting the tray for printing**

See p.92 "Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)".

## **Copy-guard of printed documents for preventing information leaks**

See p.99 "Printing".

## **Notifying the printer status by e-mail on an occasion such as if the printer runs out of paper or paper is jammed**

See p.115 "Notifying the Printer Status by E-mail".



# 2. Preparing for Printing

---

## Setting Up the Hardware

This section explains how to install the printer.

---

### Checking the Computer and Installation Area

---

The printer's location should be carefully chosen because environmental conditions greatly affect its performance.

#### The area where the printer is to be placed

---

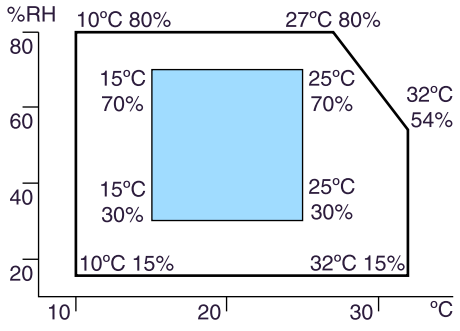
**★ Important**

- To avoid malfunctions, position the machine away from the following:
  - direct sunlight
  - flow of air from air conditioners or heaters
  - radios, televisions, or other electronic devices
  - areas of high/low temperature and high/low moisture
  - humidifying appliances
  - oil stoves and ammonia-emitting appliances (such as diazo copiers)

Choose a flat, stable area to install the machine.

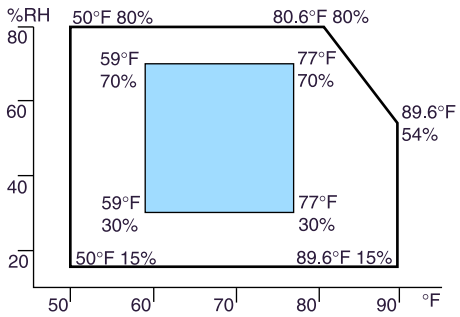
- The surface should be level within two degrees, left to right and front to back.
- To prevent condensation, install the machine in an area where temperature and humidity conditions do not exceed those indicated in the diagram below.
- The machine may cease to print if these limitations are exceeded.

**-22, -27**



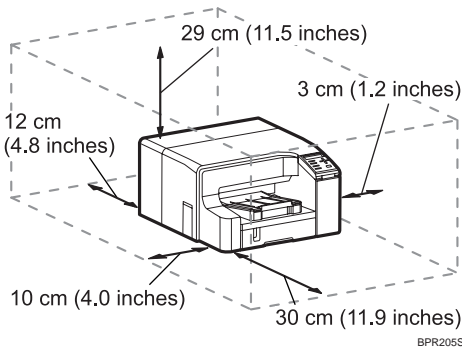
BPR172S

**-17**



BPR173S

- White area: Permissible Range
- Blue area: Recommended Range
- The diagram below shows the ideal clearance for loading paper, replacing print cartridges, and removing jammed paper



BPR205S

a. If you attach the bypass tray (option), provide additional clearance of 29 cm (11.5 inches).



## Check the power source

### **WARNING**

- Keep the machine away from humidity and dust. Otherwise a fire or an electric shock might occur.
- Place the machine on a strong and level surface. Otherwise, the machine might fall and cause personal injury.
- If you use the machine in a confined space, confirm that there is a continuous flow of air.
- Only connect the machine to the power source described on this sheet.
- Avoid multi-wiring.
- Connect the power cord directly into a wall outlet and never use an extension cord.
- Do not use power cords that are damaged, broken, or modified. Also, do not use power cords that have been trapped under heavy objects, pulled hard, or bent severely. Doing so could result in fire or electric shock.
- Do not plug or unplug the power cord with your hands wet. Otherwise, an electric shock might occur.
- Make sure the wall outlet is near the machine and freely accessible so that in event of an emergency it can be unplugged easily.

The power requirements of this machine are as follows:

GX e2600/GX e3300N

- 100-240V: 50/60Hz 1.0-0.6A

GX e3350N

- 100-120V: 50/60Hz 1.0A
- 220-240V: 50/60Hz 0.6A

## Checking the Computer to be Connected

To use this printer, computers must meet the following specifications:

- PC/AT-compatible computer with USB or network interface
- Operating system: Windows 2000/ XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2008
- 80-100MB or more available hard disk space

### **Note**

- To operate this printer, your computer must have at least the amount of memory necessary to run its operating system.

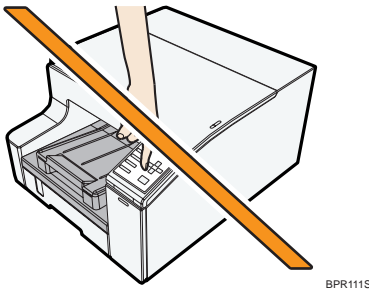
## Checking the Supplied Items and Unpacking the Printer

### **⚠ CAUTION**

- The machine weighs around 13.6 kg (30.0 lb) (16.1 kg (35.5 lb) with options installed).
- Careless handling and over exertion when lifting can result in breakage and/or injury.

### **★ Important**

- Do not turn the machine on until you have read how to do so.



Open the box and take out all supplied items. Check that all the following items are present:

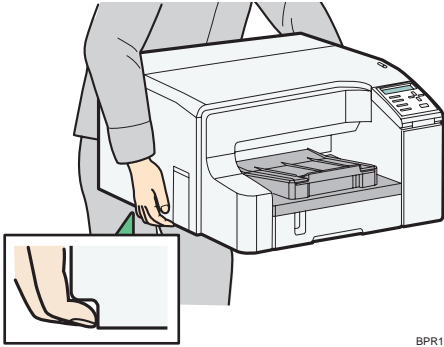
- Power Cord
- Starter cartridge - Cyan
- Starter cartridge - Magenta
- Starter cartridge - Yellow
- Starter cartridge - Black
- Quick Installation Guide
- Safety information
- CD-ROM; User Guide is included on this.

**1. Take off the protective covering.**

**2. Remove the plastic bag.**

**3. Lift the printer and move it to the place where you want to install it.**

Grip the indented area at the base of the printer's sides, as shown. Lift and carry the printer slowly and carefully.



BPR112S

#### 4. Remove the orange tape from the printer body.

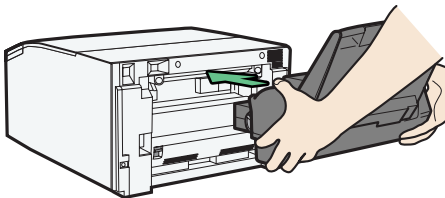
##### ↓ Note

- We recommend you keep the box, so you can use it again when relocating the printer.
- Remove all the orange tape, except the tape around the power cord.
- USB and LAN cables are not supplied.

## Attaching the Options

### Attaching the Multi Bypass Tray BY1000

1. Make sure the printer's power cord is unplugged.
2. Take the bypass tray out of its box.
3. Remove the orange tape from the bypass tray.
4. Fully insert the bypass tray.



BPR109S

5. When using the bypass tray, pull out its extension and adjust the side guides according to the size of the loaded paper.

After attaching the paper feed unit, you must register where to start printing on paper loaded in the paper feed unit.

### Reference

- For details about registering where to start printing on paper loaded in the paper feed unit, see p. 174 "Registration".

---

## Installing the Print Cartridges

---

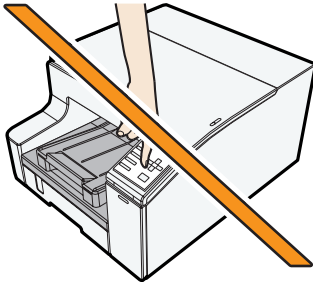
2

### CAUTION

- If ink comes into contact with your eyes, rinse immediately in running water. For other symptoms, consult a doctor.
- If ink is ingested, induce vomiting by drinking a strong saline solution. Consult a doctor immediately.
- If your skin comes into contact with ink, wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water.
- Keep the ink or ink container out of reach of children.

### Important

- Do not turn the machine on until you have read how to do so.

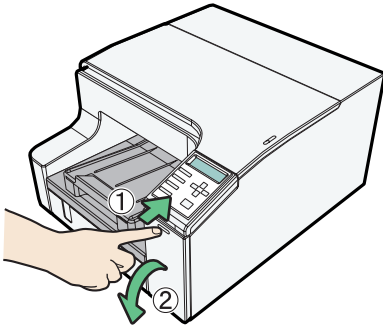


- Be sure to install the unused print cartridge that is supplied. Installing any other cartridge could result in incomplete ink filling and malfunction.

#### 1. Remove the packaging from the print cartridges.

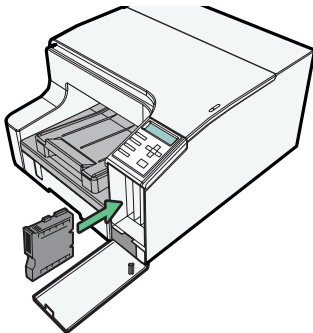
Do not touch the ink supply ports or silicon substrates of print cartridges.

2. While pressing the recessed area (①) of the right front cover, open the cover (②).



BPR113S

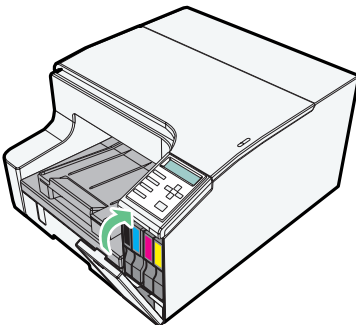
3. Check the orientation of each cartridge, and then install them gently.



BPR114S

Install in the following order from the left: black, cyan, magenta, and yellow.

4. Push in each cartridge.
5. Repeat steps 3 to 4 for all four cartridges.
6. Close the right front cover.



BPR115S

## Plugging in the Power Cord and Turning the Power On

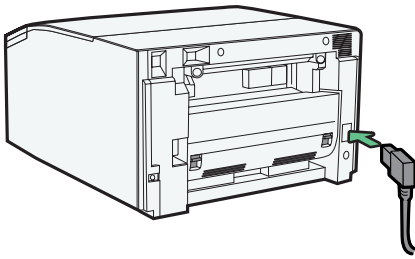
Before connecting the printer to a computer, connect the printer's power cord and switch the printer on.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Only connect the machine to the power source described on this sheet.
- Avoid multi-wiring.
- Connect the power cord directly into a wall outlet and never use an extension cord.
- Do not use power cords that are damaged, broken, or modified. Also, do not use power cords that have been trapped under heavy objects, pulled hard, or bent severely. Doing so could result in fire or electric shock.
- Do not plug or unplug the power cord with your hands wet. Otherwise, an electric shock might occur.

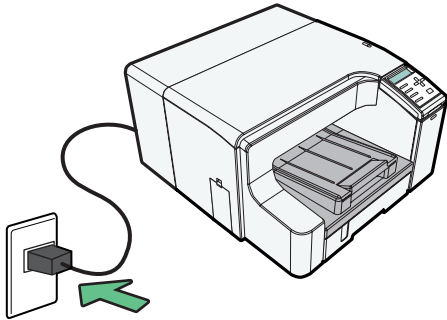
### **★ Important**

- Do not handle the machine while the cartridge is being filled. Ink filling begins when the machine's power is switched on. Until the "Loading Ink..." message disappears from the control panel.
1. Remove the orange tape from around the power cord.
  2. Plug the power cord fully into the printer.



BPR116S

### 3. Plug the power cord fully into the wall outlet.

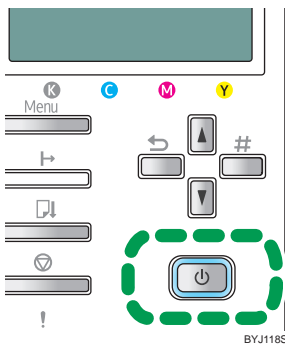


BPR117S

The surface should be level within two degrees.

Make sure the power cord is not trapped under the printer.

### 4. Press the [Power] key.



BYJ116S

The printer starts feeding ink into its print heads (taking approximately 6 minutes).

Make sure the "Ready" message is displayed on the control panel.

Do not switch off the power of the machine during this period. Make sure the plug is not removed from the wall outlet.

You might hear a clicking sound while the print heads are filling. This is not a malfunction. It will stop after a while.

## Loading Paper

Load paper into the paper tray.

Normally, load paper into tray 1.

### ↓ Note

- Load paper with the paper grain parallel to the feed direction.

## Loading Paper into Tray 1

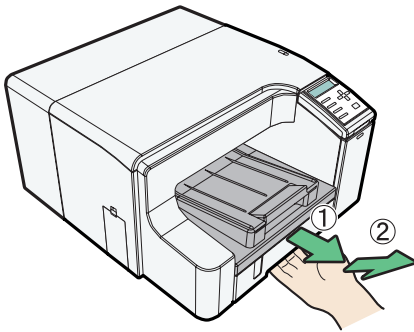
Follow the procedure below to load paper into tray 1.

A4/Letter size paper is loaded here.

**★ Important**

- Load A4/Letter size paper in  orientation.

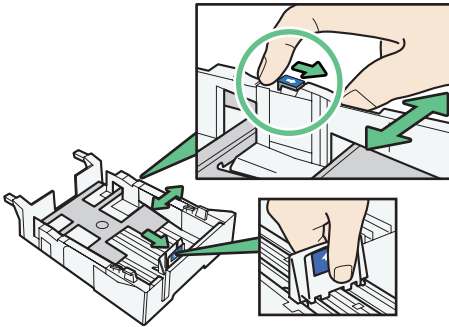
1. Hold the Tray 1 grip, pull the tray halfway out, lift it slightly (①), and then pull it out further (②).



BPR183S

Pull tray 1 completely out. Take care not to drop it.

2. While squeezing the catch on the paper guide, slide the guide so it is positioned according to the paper size.

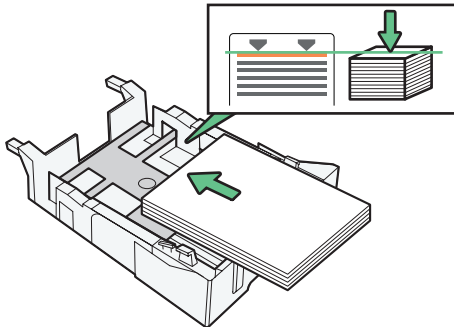


BPR121S

Beforehand, make sure to squeeze the front end paper guide, and then expand the guide.

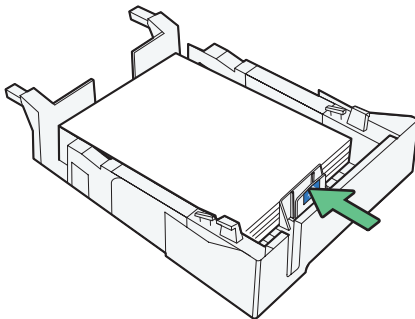


3. Load paper with the print side face down but not over the limit mark.



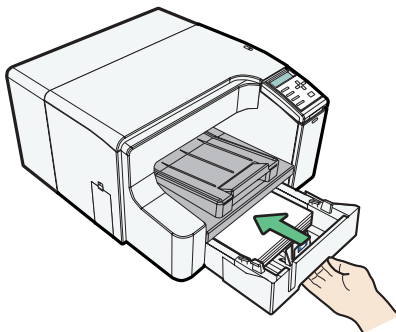
BPR122S

4. Squeeze the front end paper guide, and then slide it to meet the edge of the paper.



BPR123S

5. Push tray 1 gently in until it stops.



BPR125S

### Loading Paper Larger than A4/Letter (Tray 1)

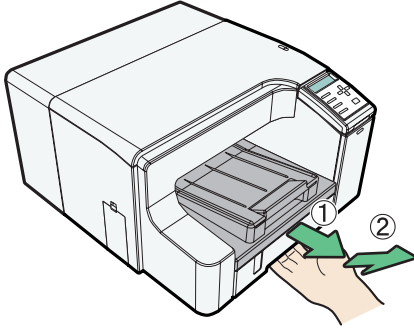
Follow the procedure below to use the paper tray extension for paper larger than A4/Letter size, such as Legal size paper.

Legal size paper is loaded here.

**★ Important**

- Load Legal size paper in  orientation.

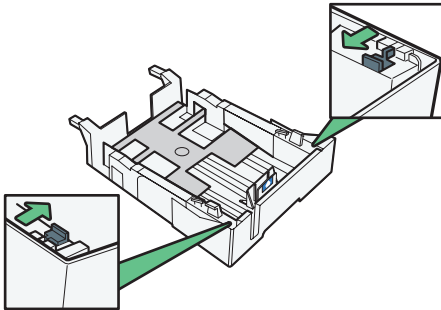
1. Hold the Tray 1 grip, pull the tray halfway out, lift it slightly (①), and then pull it out further (②).



BPR183S

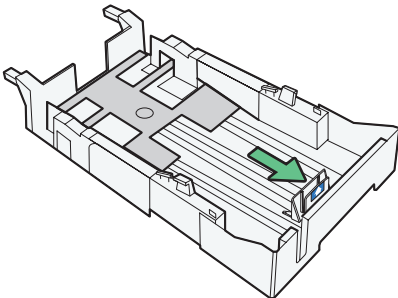
Pull tray 1 completely out. Take care not to drop it.

2. Slide the tabs on both sides of the tray's interior to the unlocked position.



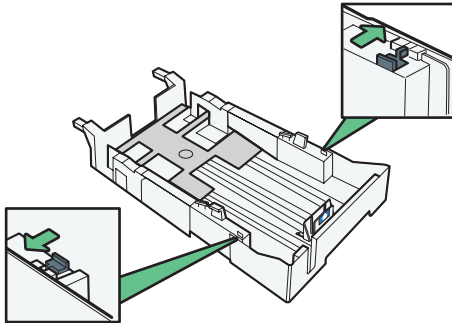
BPR166S

3. Pull out the paper tray extension.



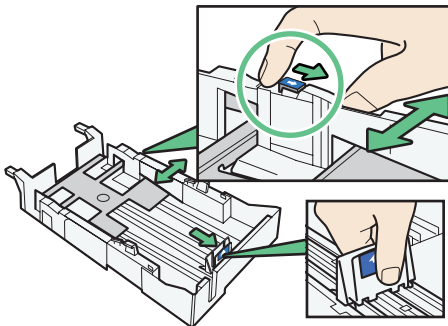
BPR167S

- Slide the tabs back into place to lock the paper tray extension into position.



BPR168S

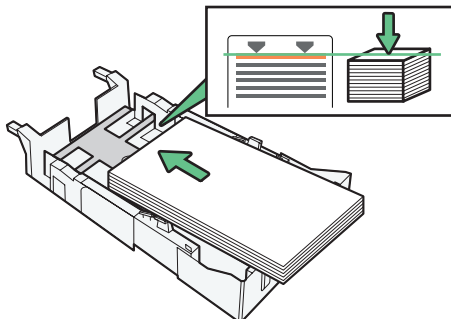
- While squeezing the catch on the paper guide, slide the guide so it is positioned according to the paper size.



BPR169S

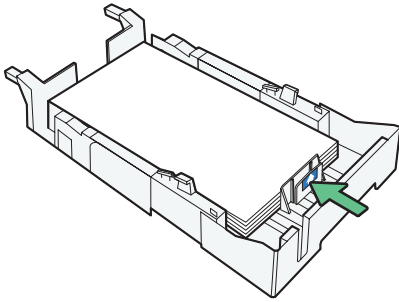
Do not use the paper tray extension for A4 (Letter) size paper or smaller paper. Use it only for long paper.

- Load paper with the print side face down but not over the limit mark.



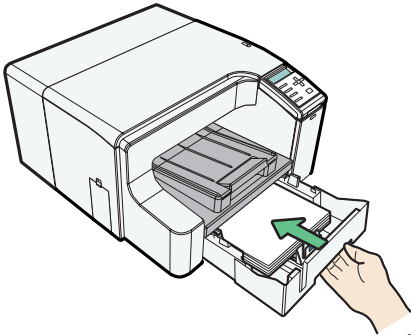
BPR170S

7. Squeeze the front end paper guide, and then slide it to meet the edge of the paper.



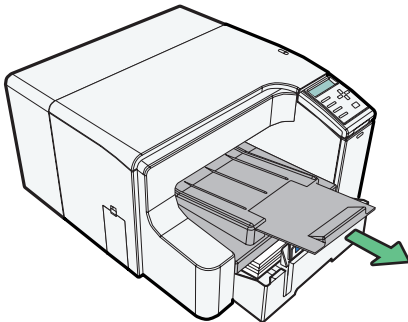
BPR171S

8. Push tray 1 gently in until it stops.



BPR174S

9. Pull out the output ramp extension.



BPR175S

### Loading Paper into Bypass Tray (optional)

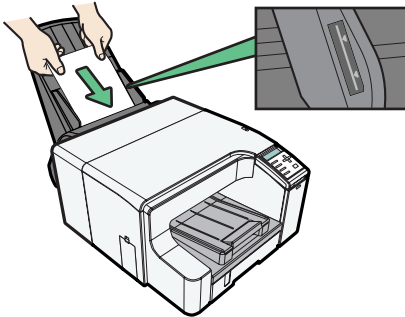
---

Follow the procedure below to load paper into bypass tray.

A4/Letter size paper is loaded here.

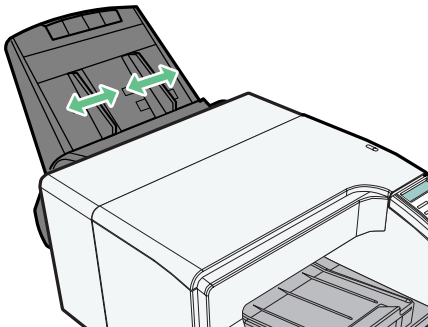
1. Pull the bypass tray extension out all the way.

## 2. Load paper in the bypass tray with the side to be printed on facing up.



BPR126S

Before loading narrow paper, position the side paper guides according to the paper size.



BPR176S

## Printing a Configuration Page

After setting up the hardware and before connecting the printer to a computer, make a test print by printing the configuration page.

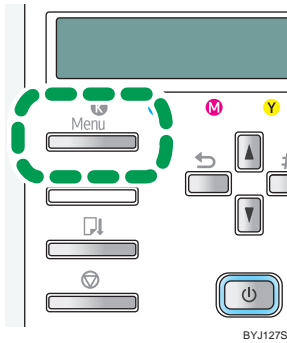
Printing the configuration page as a test print primes the print heads and allows you to check that the printer is functional.

You can also use the configuration page to check the printer's configuration and system settings.

### ★ Important

- The configuration page is printed on A4 or Letter (8 1/2" × 11") size paper, so load them in the same paper tray.

**1. Press the [Menu] key.**



**2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [List/Test Print], and then press the [#Enter] key.**

```
Menu:  
List/Test Print
```

**3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Config. Page], and then press the [#Enter] key.**

```
List/Test Print:  
Config. Page
```

The configuration page is printed.

The List/Test Print menu screen returns on completion of printing.

Check whether the print head nozzles are clogged up or not by printing a nozzle check test pattern.

**4. Hold the [Power] key down until the printer shuts down.**

If you are connecting the printer to a computer via USB, proceed to p.53 "Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (USB Connection)".

If you are connecting the printer to a network, proceed to p.57 "Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (Network Connection)".

**Reference**

- For details about printing a nozzle check test pattern, see p.164 "Nozzle Check".
- For details about the items on the configuration page, see p.63 "Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu)".

# Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (USB Connection)

After setting up the hardware and making a test print, connect the printer to your computer. This section explains how to connect the printer to a computer using a USB cable, and how to install the software using "Quick Install".

2

## Reference

- For details about the connection method, see p.64 "Confirming the Connection Method".
- For details about the installing the printer driver only, see p.66 "Installing the PCL or RPCS Raster Printer Driver (USB)".

## Before Installing the Software (USB)

Before installing the software, connect the printer to your computer using a USB cable.

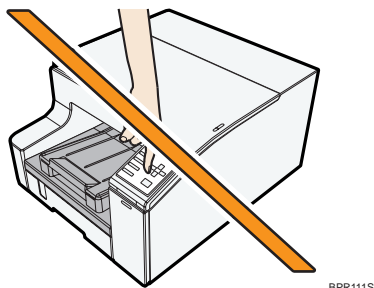
## Note

- Even if the computer that you are connecting the printer to via USB is networked, you can still connect the printer and computer according to the procedure explained in this section. For details about sharing the printer, see p.68 "Sharing the Printer".

## Connecting the Printer via USB

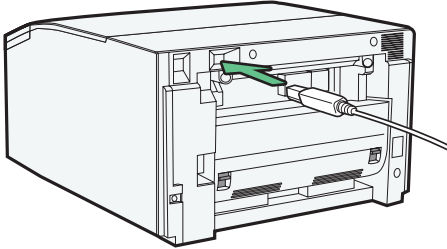
### 1. Make sure the printer is off.

Do not turn the printer on until you have read how to do so.



### 2. Turn on the power of the computer, and start Windows.

3. Remove the seal on the USB slot located on the rear of the printer, and then insert the USB cable's hexagonal (type B) plug firmly into the slot.



BPR128S

4. Insert the USB cable's rectangular (type A) plug firmly into the computer's USB slot.

**Note**

- Insert the USB cable's plug with the USB mark facing down.
- Make sure that the USB cable is fully inserted.
- Make sure the USB cable is connected properly, especially when the bypass tray is attached to the printer, because the tray makes connecting the cable difficult.

---

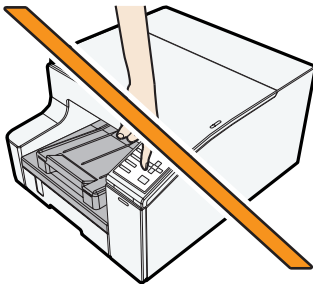
## Quick Install for USB

---

Follow the procedure below to install the printer driver and User Guide.

**Important**

- Do not turn the printer on until you have read how to do so.



BPR111S

- Only administrators can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.



## Notes on the Installation (USB Connection)

If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Software Installation], [Hardware Installation] or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears:

1. Click [Yes], [Continue Anyway] or [Install this driver software anyway] to continue the installation.

If the [Found New Hardware Wizard] dialog box appears:

1. Click [Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)], and then click [Next >].
2. Click [Include this location in the search], and then click [Browse].
3. Browse to "DRIVERS" on the CD-ROM, and then click [OK]. Select the folder appropriate for your operating system.

Be sure to clear the [Search remove media (floppy, CD-ROM...)] check box.

For details about the files stored on the CD-ROM labeled, see p.285 "Software on the CD-ROM".

### 1. Start Windows, and insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

Quit all applications currently running.

When you start Windows, the "Add New Hardware Wizard" may appear. If this happens, click [Cancel]. Check again that the power is off.

### 2. Select a language for the interface, and then click [OK].

### 3. Click [Quick Install for USB].

### 4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].

### 5. Check that the power of the printer is off, and then click [Next >].

### 6. Check again that the power of the printer is off, and then click [Next >].

Check that the dialog box below appears.

If the [Software Installation] or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears, see "Notes on the Installation".

### 7. Make sure that the computer and printer are properly connected, and then press the [Power] key.

Installation starts.

If the connection to the computer was not confirmed, make the port settings again after installation is complete.

If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Found New Hardware Wizard] or [Hardware Installation] dialog box appears, see "Notes on the Installation".

### 8. Select whether or not to open the printer status monitor automatically, and then click [Next >].

**9. Check the installation result, and then click [Next >].**

Install User Guide.

**10. Click [Finish].**

The printer driver and User Guide are now installed.

If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Found New Hardware Wizard] or [Hardware Installation] dialog box appears, see "Notes on the Installation".

2

**Note**

- After inserting the CD-ROM, the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] dialog box appears. If it does not, double-click the CD-ROM drive icon under [My Computer] or [Explorer], and then double-click [Setup.exe].
- When installation is complete, the User Guide icon appears on your desktop.
- If a message prompting you to restart the computer appears, restart the computer.
- Confirm the printer driver is correctly installed by checking the printer's [Power] key is lit, and then performing a test print.

# Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (Network Connection)

After setting up the hardware and making a test print, connect the printer to your computer. This section explains how to connect the printer to a computer via Ethernet cable, and how to use "Quick Install".

Note that the GX e2600 cannot be connected to networks.

## Reference

- For details about the connection method, see p.64 "Confirming the Connection Method".
- For details about the installing the printer driver only, see p.74 "Installing the Drivers for Network Connection".

## Before Installing the Software (Network Connection)

Connect the printer and computer via Ethernet cable. Then, on the printer's control panel, specify the printer's network settings according to the network environment, and then install the software.

## Connecting the Printer via the Network

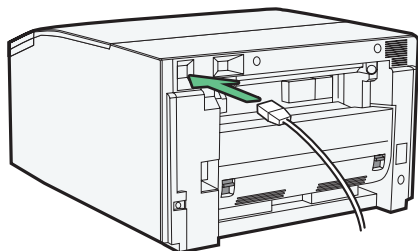
Be sure to install all necessary network equipment, such as hubs, etc. before connecting the Ethernet cable to the printer.

You can connect a 10BASE-T or 100BASE-TX cable to the printer.

## Important

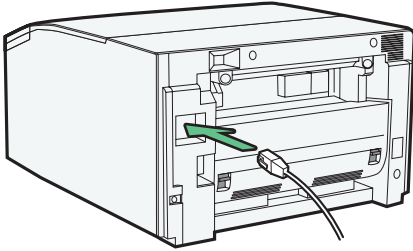
- **Ethernet cables are not supplied with this printer. Select your cable according to the network environment.**
1. **Plug the Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port on the rear of the printer.**

**GX e3300N**



BPR129S

### GX e3350N

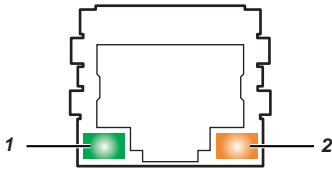


BPR124S

2. Connect the other end of the cable to the printer's network, such as to a hub.

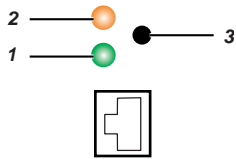
Check the LEDs on the Ethernet port

### GX e3300N



BPR177S

### GX e3350N



AKR136S

**1. Indicator (green)**

Remains green as long as the machine is properly connected to the network via 100 BASE-TX cable. Unlit if 10 BASE-T cable is connected.

**2. Indicator (orange)**

Lights whenever the printer is sending or receiving data via the network.

**3. [Reset] key**

Press this to initialize and reboot the network interface board.

## Specifying Settings on the Control Panel

Make the following network settings according to the network interface you are using.

If you have connected the printer to a network, make the required network environment settings.

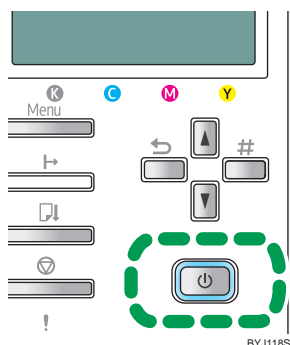
The following table shows the control panel settings and their default values. These items appear in the [Network Setup] menu.

Setting Name	Value
1.DHCP	On
2.IP Address	GX e3300N: 11.22.33.44 GX e3350N: 0.0.0.0
3.Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0
4.Gateway Address	0.0.0.0
5.Active Protocol	TCP/IP: Active
6.Ethernet Speed	Auto Select

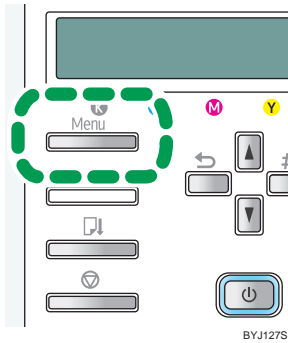
2

The following example explains making settings for TCP/IP.

### 1. Press the [Power] key.



**2. Press the [Menu] key.**



The Menu screen appears on the display.

**3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display the [Host Interface] menu, and then press the [#Enter] key.**

```
Menu:
Host Interface
```

**4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Network Setup], and then press the [#Enter] key.**

```
Host Interface:
Network Setup
```

**5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [IP Address], and then press [#Enter] key.**

```
Network Setup
IP Address
```

The current IP address appears on the display.

**6. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to enter the left most entry field of the IP address, and then press the [#Enter] key.**

```
IP Address:
█. 0. 0. 0
```

To get an IP address for the printer, contact your network administrator.

The value moves by 10 if the [▲] or [▼] key is kept pressed.

When the [#Enter] key is pressed, the cursor moves to the next field.

**7. Press the [#Enter] key.**

As the specified value is entered in each field, the cursor moves to the next field.

```
IP Address:
192. █. 0. 0
```

**8. Repeating the steps, specify values in all fields, and then press the [#Enter] key.**

To return to the previous field, press the [Escape] key.

**9. Specify "Subnet Mask" and "Gateway Address" in the same way as when specifying the IP address.****10. After you have made all the settings, press the [Online] key.**

The specified settings are set and the initial printer screen reappears.

You can print the configuration page to confirm the specified settings.

**E Reference**

- For details about how to print a configuration page, see p.51 "Printing a Configuration Page".

---

## Quick Install for Network

---

Follow the procedure below to install the printer driver, User Guide, and DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

**★ Important**

- If the version of SmartDeviceMonitor for Client already installed in the computer is newer than that on the CD-ROM, you cannot use "Quick Install" to install the printer driver. Install the printer driver, and then create the port.
- Only administrators can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.

**Notes on the Installation (Network Connection)**

If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Software Installation], [Hardware Installation] or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears:

1. Click [Yes], [Continue Anyway] or [Install this driver software anyway] to continue the installation.

**1. Start Windows, and insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

Quit all other applications currently running.

**2. Select a language for the interface, and then click [OK].****3. Click [Quick Install for Network].****4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].****5. The search for the network printer starts. If the selection dialog box appears, select the model of printer you want to use, and then click [Install].**

Installation starts.

If the [Software Installation], or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears, see "Notes on the Installation".

If the printer cannot be found and only "Printer Port" appears in the printer selection dialog box, either the printer's IP address has not been specified or the computer and printer are not on the same network segment. Before installing the software, check the printer's IP address and the network topology. Otherwise, select "Printer Port" in the dialog box, and then install the printer driver. If you do this, SmartDeviceMonitor for Client will not be simultaneously installed, so install it afterwards, and then configure the port.

If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or [Hardware Installation] dialog box appears, see "Notes on the Installation".

**6. Click [Finish].**

The printer driver, User Guide, and DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client are now installed.

**Note**

- After inserting the CD-ROM, the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] dialog box appears. If it does not, double-click the CD-ROM drive icon under [My Computer] or [Explorer], and then double-click [Setup.exe].
- When installation is complete, the User Guide icon appears on your desktop.
- If a message prompting you to restart the computer appears, restart the computer.
- Confirm the printer driver is correctly installed by checking the printer's [Power] key is lit, and then performing a test print.



# Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu)

Using the List/Test Print menu on the control panel, you can print a configuration page to check whether the printer is working properly and to ascertain the printer's status and settings.

## Config. Page

You can print the current configuration of the printer.

## Color Demo Page

You can print color samples.

## Error Log

You can print error logs.

## PCL Config. Page

You can print the current PCL configuration.

### Reference

- For details about how to print a configuration page, see p.51 "Printing a Configuration Page".

---

## Interpreting the Configuration Page

---

### System Reference

Information such as the printer's version, attached options, printer language name, and remaining amount of ink are printed in this area.

Unlike [Counter] displayed on the machine's control panel, the "Total Counter" numbers include test patterns printed using "Maintenance", system configurations printed using "List/Test Print", and counter printouts made using "Counter".

### Paper Input

The specified [Tray Priority] setting and the specified settings in the Paper Input Menu, such as the size and type of paper loaded in each tray, are printed in this area.

### Host Interface, Interface Information

The specified settings in the Host Interface Menu are printed in this area.

### PCL Menu

Settings made on the [PCL Menu] are displayed.

## Confirming the Connection Method

This printer supports local and network connection.

Before installing the drivers, check how the printer is connected. Follow the driver installation procedure that is appropriate to the connection method.

2

### ★ Important

- **The printer driver for the 64-bit Windows is not included on the supplied CD-ROM. If your operating system is the 64-bit Windows, download the drivers from the supplier's Web site, and then store the files in an easily accessible folder.**

### Local Connection

If the printer is connected via USB, install the necessary software by inserting the supplied CD-ROM into your computer and then clicking [Quick Install for USB].

Installation Key	Installed Software
Quick Install for USB	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Printer driver</li> <li>• User Guide</li> </ul>
Printer Driver	Printer driver
User Guide	User Guide
DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client	DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

### Network Connection

If the printer is connected via the network, install the necessary software by inserting the supplied CD-ROM into your computer and then clicking [Quick Install for Network], [Printer Driver] (GX e3300N), [PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers] (GX e3350N), and [DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client].

Note that the GX e2600 cannot be connected to networks.

Installation Key	Installed Software
Quick Install for Network	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Printer driver</li> <li>• User Guide</li> <li>• DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client</li> </ul>
Printer Driver	Printer driver
User Guide	User Guide

Installation Key	Installed Software
DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client	DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

**Note**

- Once the settings are complete, the printer becomes ready for use.
- With a network connection, you can use the Windows printer port to send print jobs to the printer directly (peer-to-peer transfer) or use the printer as a network printer and send print jobs to the printer from a client computer via a print server.

**Reference**

- p.75 "Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port"
- p.79 "Using as the Windows Network Printer"
- p.81 "Installing the DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client"
- p.61 "Quick Install for Network"
- p.54 "Quick Install for USB"

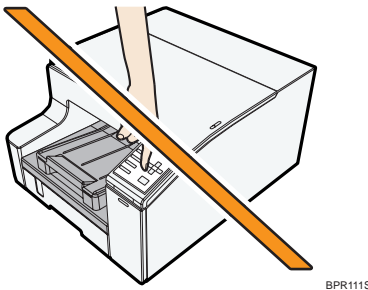
# Installing the PCL or RPCS Raster Printer Driver (USB)

This section explains how to install only the printer driver when the printer is connected to a computer via USB.

If you installed the printer driver by performing Quick Install for USB, there is no need to install it again here.

**★ Important**

- Only administrators can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.
- Do not turn on the power at this point.



The following explanation uses Windows XP as an example. Procedures under other operating systems may differ.

Screens vary according to the operating environment.

**1. Start Windows, and insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

Quit all other applications currently running.

When you start Windows, the Add New Hardware Wizard may appear. If this happens, click [Cancel]. Check again that the power is off, and then proceed to step 2.

After inserting the CD-ROM, the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] dialog box appears. If it does not, double-click the CD-ROM drive icon under [My Computer] or [Explorer], and then double-click [SETUP.EXE].

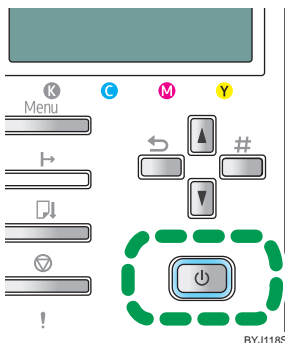
If the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] screen does not appear even when you double-click the [SETUP.EXE] icon, or if an error occurs during installation, access the CD-ROM drive from [My Computer] or [Explorer], double-click the [RDISETUP.EXE] icon in the [DRIVERS] folder, and then install the printer driver by following the instructions that appear on the screen.

**2. Select a language for the interface, and then click [OK].**

**3. Click [Printer Driver].**

If your model is the GX e3350N, click [PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers].

4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].
5. Click [Connected with USB cable], and then click [Next >].
6. Check again that the power of the printer is off, and then click [Next >].  
Check that the dialog box below appears.
7. Make sure that the computer and printer are properly connected, and then press the [Power] key.



Installation starts.

8. Select whether or not to open the Status monitor automatically, and then click [Next >].
9. Check the installation result, and then click [Finish].

#### ↓ Note

- If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Found New Hardware Wizard] or [Hardware Installation] dialog box appears:
  - Click [Yes], [Continue Anyway] or [Install this driver software anyway] to continue the installation.
- If the message prompting you to restart the computer appears, restart the computer.
- Confirm the printer driver is correctly installed by checking that the [Power] key of the printer is lit and performing a test print.
- To perform a test print, open the printer properties dialog box, click [Print Test Page] on the [General] tab.
- To specify a USB port for sharing the printer on a server running Windows Firewall, add the port to Windows Firewall before using Status Monitor.
  1. On Windows Firewall dialog box, click the [Exception] tab, and then select the [File and Print Sharing] check box.
  2. Click [Add Port...], make sure [TCP] is selected, and then enter "55665" in [Port number].

#### 📖 Reference

- For details about installing User Guide only, see p.16 "Installing User Guide".
- For details about sharing the printer, see p.68 "Sharing the Printer".

- p.249 "If a Message Appears during Installation"
- p.214 "If Test Print Fails"

---

## Sharing the Printer

---

### 2

This section explains how to share the printer over a network by connecting it via USB to a computer acting as a print server.

### Setting Up a Server

---

Follow the procedure below to set up a print server so that the printer can be shared by users.

#### Important

- **Only administrators can make this setting. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.**

Configure a computer connected to the printer as the print server.

The print server is a computer used to manage the shared printer on the network.

1. On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
2. Click [Network and Internet Connections].
3. Click [Network Connections].
4. Click [Local Area Connection] to highlight it, and then, in the [File] menu, click [Properties].
5. Select the [Client for Microsoft Networks] check box.
6. Click [OK].
7. Install the printer driver.
8. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
9. Click the icon of the printer, and then click [Sharing...] on the [File] menu.
10. Click [Share this printer], and then enter a name in the [Share name] box.
11. Click [OK].

#### Note

- Configure a computer connected to the network, where the print server is connected, as a client computer.

#### Reference

- p.69 "Setting Up a Client Computer"

## Setting Up a Client Computer

Follow the procedure below to configure a computer as a client computer and connect it to the shared printer. Make this setting when installing the printer driver from the CD-ROM provided.

### ★ Important

- **Only administrators can make this setting. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.**

Configure a computer connected to the network where the print server is connected.

**2**

1. **Start Windows, and then insert the "Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

Quit all other applications currently running.

When starting Windows, a wizard for adding new hardware may open. If this happens, click [Cancel]. Check again that the power is off.

2. **Select a language for the interface, and then click [OK].**
3. **Click [Printer Driver].**  
If your model is the GX e3350N, click [PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers].
4. **Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].**
5. **Click [Connected via LAN].**
6. **Click [Next >].**
7. **Click the plus mark next to a printer name.**
8. **Click [Port:< LPT1: >] under [Printer name:].**
9. **Click [Add].**
10. **Click [Network Printer].**
11. **Click [OK].**
12. **Select a shared printer.**
13. **Click [OK].**
14. **Check that [<\servername\sharedprintername>] appears after [Port:].**
15. **Click [Continue].**  
Installation starts.
16. **Select whether or not to open the Status monitor automatically.**
17. **Click [Next >].**
18. **Check the installation result, and then click [Finish].**

 **Note**

- When the CD-ROM is inserted, the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] dialog box appears. If it does not, double-click the CD-ROM drive icon under [My Computer] or [Explorer], and then double-click [SETUP.EXE].
- If the message prompting you to restart the computer appears, restart the computer.



# Specifying the Interface and Network Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Host Interface Menu)

In the Host Interface menu, you can make network settings and settings for the computer to printer USB connection (if used). Settings made using the Host Interface menu remain effective even if you turn the printer off.

To configure the printer's network settings, use "Network Setup" on the printer's control panel.

## I/O Timeout

Specify how long the printer waits for the currently-connected interface to respond. When the specified time elapses, the printer can receive data from another interface.

If you make the I/O Timeout period too short, timeout might occur while data transfer is in progress. If this happens, the print job will be interrupted by a new job from another interface.

- 10 seconds
- 15 seconds
- 20 seconds
- 25 seconds
- 60 seconds

Default: 15 seconds

## Network Setup

You can make network-related settings.

Note that the GX e2600 cannot be connected to networks.

### DHCP

You can specify the DHCP.

- On
- Off

Default: On

### IP Address

You can specify the IP address.

When DHCP is set to on, the IP address cannot be changed. To change it, set DHCP to off.

Contact your network administrator for information about the network configuration.

GX e3300N: Default: 11.22.33.44

GX e3350N: Default: 0.0.0.0

### **Subnet Mask**

You can specify the subnet mask.

When DHCP is set to on, the subnet mask cannot be changed. To change it, set DHCP to off. Contact your network administrator for information about the network configuration.

Default: 0.0.0.0

### **Gateway Address**

You can specify the gateway address.

When DHCP is set to on, the gateway address cannot be changed. To change it, set DHCP to off. Contact your network administrator for information about the network configuration.

Default: 0.0.0.0

### **Active Protocol**

You can select the active protocol.

- TCP/IP

Default: Active

### **Ethernet Speed**

You can select the network speed to operate the printer.

- Auto Select
- 10Mbps Half D.
- 10Mbps Full D.
- 100Mbps Half D.
- 100Mbps Full D.

Default: Auto Select

## **USB Setting**

You can specify the settings related to communication when the computer and printer are connected via USB. Usually, you do not need to change these settings.

After changing this setting, turn the machine off and then back on.

### **USB Speed**

- Full Speed
- Auto

Default: Auto

### **Port Setting**

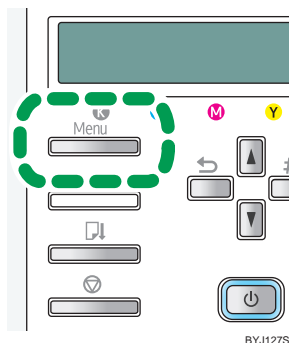
- On
- Off

Default: Off

## Changing the Host Interface Menu

This section gives an example of changing a setting in the Host Interface menu.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Host Interface], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
Host Interface
```

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [I/O Timeout], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Host Interface:
I/O Timeout
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [20 seconds], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
I/O Timeout:
20 seconds
```

The [Host Interface] menu appears.

5. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

# Installing the Drivers for Network Connection

This section explains how to install the printer driver for a network printer and configure it according to the printer port.

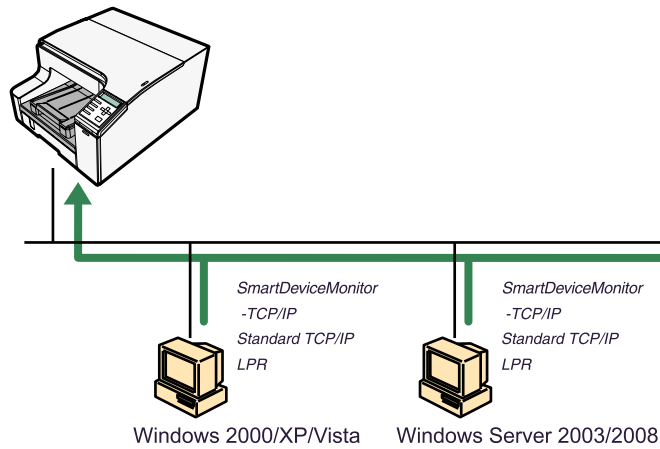
Note that the GX e2600 cannot be connected to networks.

## 2

### Using this Printer as the Windows Printing Port

Network connections can be established through Ethernet.

Available ports are determined based on the combination of Windows operating system version and connection method used.

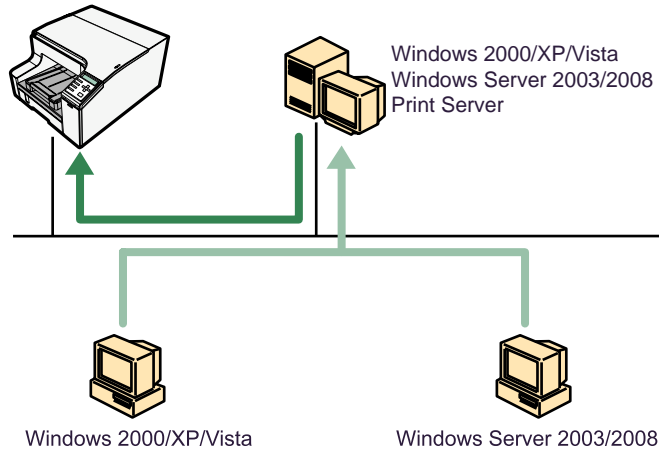


BPR130S

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port Standard TCP/IP port LPR port

### Using as a Network Printer

This printer can be used as the Windows network printer.



BPR131S

2

### Reference

- p.79 "Using as the Windows Network Printer"

## Installing the PCL or RPCS Raster Printer Driver (Network)

### Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port

This section explains how to install the printer driver (TCP/IP) and set up the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port.

To use the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port, you need to install the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

### ★ Important

- **Only administrators can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.**
- 1. Start Windows, and then insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**  
Quit all applications currently running.
  - 2. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**
  - 3. Click [Printer Driver].**  
If your model is the GX e3350N, click [PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers].  
The software license agreement appears in the [<License Agreement>] dialog box.
  - 4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].**
  - 5. Click [Connected via LAN], and then click [Next >].**

**6. Double-click the printer name or click [+]** to display the printer settings.

The details shown in [Comment:], [Driver:], and [Port:] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

**7. Click [Port:], and then click [Add].**

**8. Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [OK].**

**9. Click [TCP/IP], and then click [Search].**

A list of printers using TCP/IP appears.

**10. Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].**

Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click [Specify address], and then enter the IP address or host name of the printer.

**11. Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].**

**12. Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.**

**13. Click [Continue].**

Installation starts.

**14. Select whether or not to open the Status monitor automatically.**

**15. Click [Next >].**

**16. Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.**

A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

**Note**

- If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Software Installation], [Hardware Installation] or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears:
  - Click [Yes], [Continue Anyway] or [Install this driver software anyway] to continue the installation.
- To change the machine's settings while the machine is in use, uninstall the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port being used, change the machine's network settings on the control panel or using a Web browser, and then install the printer driver.

**Reference**

- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add Printer]. See p.249 "If a Message Appears during Installation".

## Using the Standard TCP/IP Port

---

This section explains how to install the printer driver (TCP/IP) and set up the Standard TCP/IP Port.

**★ Important**

- **Only administrators can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.**
- 1. Start Windows, and then insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

Quit all applications currently running.
  - 2. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**
  - 3. Click [Printer Driver].**

If your model is the GX e3350N, click [PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers].

The software license agreement appears in the [<License Agreement>] dialog box.
  - 4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].**
  - 5. Click [Connected via LAN].**
  - 6. Double-click the printer name or click [+] to display the printer settings.**

The details shown in [Comment:], [Driver:], and [Port:] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.
  - 7. Click [Port:], and then click [Add].**
  - 8. Click [Standard TCP/IP], and then click [OK].**

Configure the Standard TCP/IP port settings, and then see Windows Help if [Standard TCP/IP Port] does not appear.
  - 9. Click [Next >] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.**
  - 10. Enter the printer name or IP address in the [Printer Name or IP Address] box.**

The [Port Name] text box automatically obtains a port name. Change this name if necessary.

When screen for Device selection appears, select "RICOH Network Printer C model".
  - 11. Click [Finish] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.**

The installation start dialog box reappears.
  - 12. Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].**
  - 13. Configure the default printer as necessary.**
  - 14. Click [Continue].**

The printer driver installation starts.
  - 15. Select whether or not to open the Status monitor automatically.**
  - 16. Click [Next >].**
  - 17. Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.**

A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

 **Note**

- If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Software Installation], [Hardware Installation] or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears:
  - Click [Yes], [Continue Anyway] or [Install this driver software anyway] to continue the installation.
- A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

 **Reference**

- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add Printer]. See p.249 "If a Message Appears during Installation".

## Using the LPR Port

---

This section explains how to install the printer driver (TCP/IP) and set up the LPR Port.

 **Important**

- **Only administrators can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.**
- 1. Start Windows, and then insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

Quit all applications currently running.
  - 2. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**
  - 3. Click [Printer Driver].**

If your model is the GX e3350N, click [PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers].

The software license agreement appears in the [<License Agreement>] dialog box.
  - 4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].**
  - 5. Click [Connected via LAN].**
  - 6. Double-click the printer name or click [+] to display the printer settings.**

The details shown in [Comment:], [Driver:], and [Port:] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.
  - 7. Click [Port:], and then click [Add].**
  - 8. Click [LPR Port], and then click [OK].**

If [LPR Port] does not appear, see Windows Help and install it.
  - 9. Enter the printer's IP address in the [Name or address of server providing lpd] box.**
  - 10. Enter "lp" in the [Name or address of server providing lpd] box, and then click [OK].**

The port is added.
  - 11. Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].**



**12. Configure the default printer as necessary.****13. Click [Continue].**

The printer driver installation starts

**14. Select whether or not to open the Status monitor automatically.****15. Click [Next >].****16. Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.****Note**

- If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Software Installation], [Hardware Installation] or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears:
  - Click [Yes], [Continue Anyway] or [Install this driver software anyway] to continue the installation.
- A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

**Reference**

- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add Printer]. See p.249 "If a Message Appears during Installation".

## Using as the Windows Network Printer

This section assumes that the client has already been configured to communicate with a print server. Do not begin the following procedure before the client is set up and configured correctly.

To use the print server, install the printer driver by selecting "Network printer server", and then select the shared printer.

**Important**

- Only administrators and power users can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators or Power Users group.
- If you print with a print server connected to the printer using the SmartDeviceMonitor port, Recovery Printing and Parallel Printing cannot be used from the client.
- If you print with a Windows XP/Vista or Windows Server 2003/2008 print server, notification functions of SmartDeviceMonitor may not be used with the client.

**1. Start Windows, and then insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

Quit all applications currently running.

**2. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].****3. Click [Printer Driver].**

If your model is the GX e3350N, click [PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers].

The software license agreement appears in the [<License Agreement>] dialog box.

4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].

5. Click [Connected via LAN].

6. Select the [Printer Name:] check box to select the printer models you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the [Change settings for 'Printer Name'] box.

7. Double-click the printer name or click [+] to display the printer settings.

The details shown in [Comment:], [Driver:], and [Port:] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

8. Click [Port:], and then click [Add].

9. Click [Network Printer], and then click [OK].

10. Double-click the computer name you want to use as a print server in the [Browse for Printer] window.

11. Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].

12. Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].

13. Configure the user code as necessary.

For an RPCS raster printer driver, a user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

14. Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.

15. Click [Continue].

The printer driver installation starts.

16. Select whether or not to open the Status monitor automatically.

17. Click [Next >].

18. Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.

 **Note**

- If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Software Installation] , [Hardware Installation] or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears:
  - Click [Yes], [Continue Anyway] or [Install this driver software anyway] to continue the installation.
- A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

 **Reference**

- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add Printer]. See p.249 "If a Message Appears during Installation".
- p.68 "Setting Up a Server"

---

## Installing the DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

---

Follows the procedure below to install the Installing DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

### Important

- Only administrators can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.
- Install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client before installing the printer driver when using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port.

You can install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client in either of the following two ways:

#### Full install

Installs all modules.

#### Custom Install

You can select which modules to install.

This section explains the procedure for Full install.

1. **Start Windows, and then insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**  
Quit all applications currently running.
2. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**
3. **Click [DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client].**
4. **Select the language to be used for installation, and then click [Next >].**
5. **Click [Next >].**
6. **The software license agreement appears in the [<License Agreement>] dialog box. After reading through its contents, click [Yes] to accept it.**
7. **Click [Full install].**
8. **Select the folder in which you want to install the files, and then click [Next >].**
9. **Register the Program folder.**
10. **Click [Next >].**
11. **Check the specified setting, and then click [Next >].**
12. **Click [Complete].**

If you are required to restart the computer after installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, restart the computer.

### Note

- After inserting the CD-ROM, the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] dialog box appears. If it does not, double-click the CD-ROM drive icon under [My Computer] or [Explorer], and then double-click [Setup.exe].

# Paper

This section explains the available paper types and how to load paper.

## 2

---

### Compatible Paper Types

---

You can use various types of paper.

- Plain paper  
This paper is normally used for copying and printing. Unlike inkjet plain paper or glossy paper, it is uncoated.
- Inkjet plain paper  
This extra-white plain paper makes the printed colors appear more vivid. Since it does not have an ink-absorbent coating, you can write on it and use it for photocopying, just like regular plain paper.
- Glossy paper  
This machine prints best on glossy paper for laser. For details the types of glossy paper, contact your sales or service representative.
- Envelopes  
For details about the types of envelope that can be used, see Paper Handling Precautions.
- Thick paper  
For details about the types of thick paper that can be used, see Paper Handling Precautions.

#### Note

- All types of paper besides thick paper can be loaded in tray 1.

#### Reference

- p.85 "Paper Handling Precautions"



















---

### Loadable Paper Sizes and Quantities

---

You can load in each tray the paper of the following size and number.

Tray 1

Type	Size	Paper capacity
Plain / Inkjet Plain Paper	A4 (210 × 297 mm)  A5 (148 × 210 mm)  A6 (105 × 148 mm)  B5 JIS (182 × 257 mm)  Letter (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 11")  Legal (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 14")  8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "  Executive (7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 10 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> ")  8" × 13"  8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 13"  8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 13"  16K 	Maximum paper capacity: 250 sheets  Maximum paper output capacity: 100 sheets
Plain / Inkjet Plain Paper	Custom paper sizes Vertical: 139.7- 356.0 mm (5.50- 14.01 inch), Horizontal: 88.0- 216.0 mm (3.46- 8.50 inch)	Maximum paper capacity: 250 sheets  Maximum paper output capacity: 100 sheets
Glossy Paper	A4 (210 × 297 mm) 	Maximum paper capacity: 250 sheets  Maximum paper output: 1 sheets
Envelope	Com10 Envelope (4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " × 9 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> ")  Monarch Envelope (3 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " × 7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> ")  C6 Envelope (114 × 162 mm)  C5 Envelope (162 × 229 mm)  DL Envelope (110 × 220 mm) 	Maximum paper capacity: 20 sheets  Maximum paper output capacity: 20 sheets

Bypass Tray Unit

Type	Size	Paper capacity
Plain / Inkjet Plain Paper	A4 (210 × 297 mm)☐ A5 (148 × 210 mm)☐ A6 (105 × 148 mm)☐ B5 JIS (182 × 257 mm)☐ Letter (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 11")☐ 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "☐ Executive (7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 10 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> ")☐ 8" × 13"☐ 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 13"☐ 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 13"☐ 16K☐	Maximum paper capacity: 100 sheets  Maximum paper output capacity: 100 sheets
Plain / Inkjet Plain Paper	Custom paper sizes *1 Vertical: 127.0-1295.4 mm (5.00-51.00 inch), Horizontal: 55.0-216.0 mm (2.17-8.50 inch)	Maximum paper capacity: 100 sheets  Maximum paper output capacity: 100 sheets
Glossy Paper	A4 (210 × 297 mm)☐	Maximum paper capacity: 100 sheets  Maximum paper output: 1 sheets
Envelope	Com10 Envelope (4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " × 9 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> ")☐ Monarch Envelope (3 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " × 7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> ")☐ C6 Envelope (114 × 162 mm)☐ C5 Envelope (162 × 229 mm)☐ DL Envelope (110 × 220 mm)☐	Maximum paper capacity: 10 sheets  Maximum paper output capacity: 20 sheets
Thick		Maximum paper capacity: 20 sheets  Maximum paper output capacity: 20 sheets

\*1 Under the PCL driver, the available custom size is 139.7-355.9mm (5.50-14.01 inch) (Vertical) ×55.0-216.0 mm (2.17-8.50 inch) (Horizontal).

#### Note

- Thick paper: 157 g/m<sup>2</sup> (42 lb.) or more

## Paper Handling Precautions

2

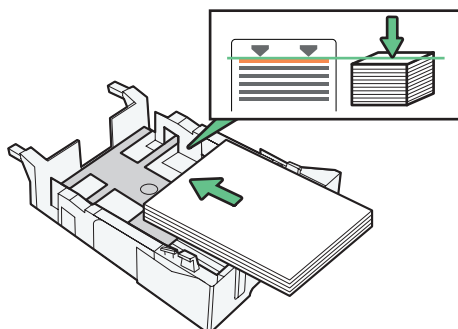
To ensure optimum print results, take care when handling paper before and after printing.

### Loading Precautions

To ensure correct printing, handle the paper carefully.

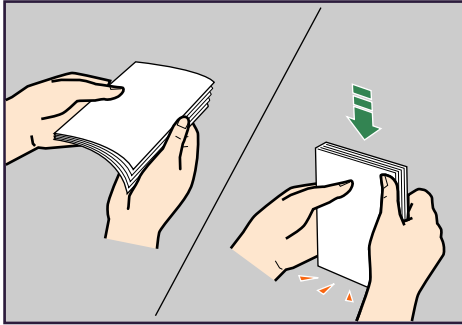
Cautions when Loading Paper

- Pull the tray completely out before loading it with paper.
- Load only supported paper in the paper tray.
- Load paper with the print side face down in the paper trays.
- Load paper with the paper grain parallel to the feed direction.
- Do not load paper of different types at the same time.
- To load a different type of paper than that already loaded, first remove all currently loaded paper.
- Do not stack paper over the limit mark.

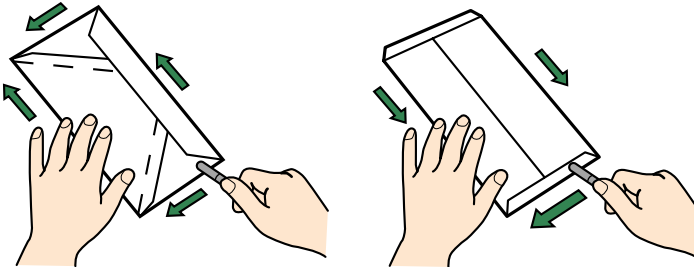


BPR122S

- Curled paper may jam. Straighten any curls within 2 mm (0.08 inches) before loading.



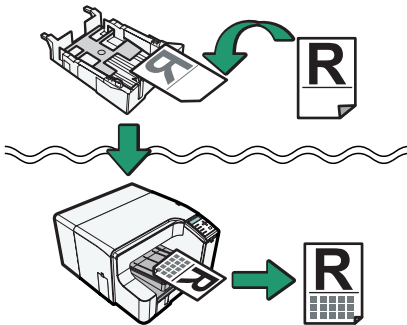
- Before loading envelopes, make sure their edges are sharply creased by rubbing the edges with a pen or similar object.



### Correct Orientation of Pre-printed Paper When Loaded in the Tray 1

Load paper print side down, shorter edge pointing in the paper feed direction.

Set paper according to the orientation of the print image, as follows.



### Compatible Paper Sizes for the Duplex Unit

The GX e2600 is not equipped with a duplex unit.

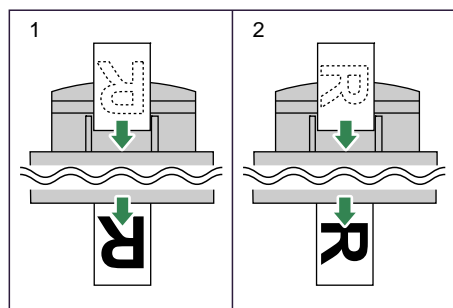


Type	Size	Paper capacity
Plain / Inkjet Plain Paper	A4 (210 × 297 mm)☐ A5 (148 × 210 mm)☐ A6 (105 × 148 mm)☐ B5 JIS (182 × 257 mm)☐ Letter (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 11")☐ 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "☐ Executive (7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 10 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> ")☐ 16K☐	

### Correct Orientation of Pre-printed Paper When Loaded in the Bypass Tray

Load paper print side up, shorter edge pointing in the paper feed direction.

Set paper according to the orientation of the print image, as follows.



BPR120S

#### 1. To print over a portrait image:

Load paper so that its top edge is pointing in the paper feed direction.

#### 2. To print over a landscape image:

Load paper so that its right edge is pointing in the paper feed direction.

### Paper Storage Precautions

This section gives cautions on storing paper.

If stored under adverse conditions, even paper suitable for printing can cause paper jams, poor print quality, or machine malfunctions. When you store paper, keep the following points in mind:

- Do not store paper in humid places.
- Do not store paper in direct sunlight.

- Store paper flat.
- Store unused paper in the original package.

## Paper Type Precautions

---

### Plain paper

- Use the bypass tray to print on thick paper (157 g/m<sup>2</sup> (42 lb.) or more).
- The only type of A6 (105 × 148 mm (4.2 × 5.9 inches)) paper that can be loaded in tray 1 is that of 104.7g/m<sup>2</sup> (28.0 lb.).
- After printing, some types of paper take longer than others to dry. With duplex printing, the ink may smear or rub off. Using the printer driver, specify how long to wait for the prints to dry between printing each side of a duplex sheet. For details, see the printer driver Help.


### Inkjet plain paper

- When printing on inkjet plain paper, in the printer properties dialog box, click [Inkjet Plain Paper]. This allows printing at higher quality.
- In the printer properties dialog box, when [Inkjet Plain Paper] is selected, only one-sided printing is possible. To print on both sides of a sheet, click [Plain].
- Use as soon as possible after opening the package.

### Glossy paper

- The time it takes for the ink to dry depends on the kind of printed image and the environmental conditions.
- If the temperature exceeds 25°C or the relative humidity exceeds 50%, problems with continuous feeding of glossy paper might occur. If this is the case, feed the sheets one by one.
- If you load multiple sheets of glossy paper and they do not feed in properly, feed them one by one.
- Ink smearing can be caused by environmental conditions (such as high humidity) and the type of image being printed (such as ink-heavy images). If smearing occurs, set [Print Quality] to [Quality priority] or [Speed priority]. This may stop the ink smearing.
- Roller marks might appear on printed images.
- If paper is fed from the bypass tray, roller marks might appear on the printed image.
- To ensure water and oil resistance, leave the printed sheet to dry for about a day.
- Some print images can cause the paper to curl, which creates patchy print. If this happens, set [Print Quality] to [Quality priority].
- When using these sheets, see the instructions supplied with them.
- Duplex printing is not supported.

## Envelopes

- Up to 20 envelopes can be loaded in tray 1.
- Flatten envelopes.
- Load envelopes carefully, because the printable area depends on the orientation.
- Set the envelope selector to the rear position  before printing.
- Duplex printing is not supported.


## Thick paper

- Thick paper is heavier than 157 g/m<sup>2</sup> (42 lb.).
- You can insert paper with weights up to 255 g/m<sup>2</sup> (60 lb.) into the bypass tray.
- Insert paper with the print side face up into the bypass tray.
- Duplex printing is not supported.

## Cautions to Observe After Printing

Depending on the paper type, the ink may take a while to dry. Before handling, make sure printed sheets have fully dried. Otherwise, the ink may smudge.

### Note

- The ink may smear depending on the type of image. If this happens, set the envelope selector to the rear position .

## Non-compatible Paper

Check if the paper is compatible.

Do not use paper that is:

- wrinkled, folded, or damaged
- wavy at the ends
- curled
- absorbent
- dry and conducive to static buildup
- already printed on (such as the back of pre-printed paper)
- pre-printed (unless specified)
- heat sensitive/non-carbon
- too thick or thin
- pre-stitched
- glued or tacked
- stapled or clipped together

- dark in places
- irregular in length and proportion

**Note**

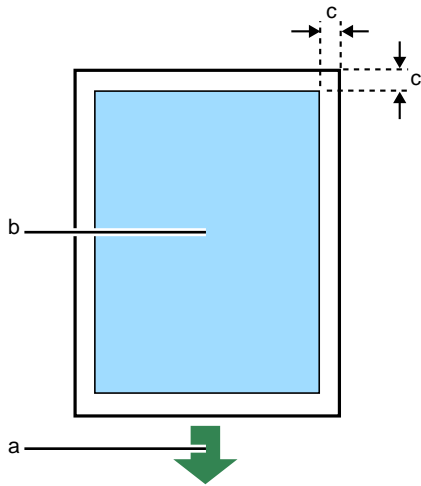
- Even if compatible paper types are used, print quality may be lower than usual or paper jams may occur if the paper was improperly stored.

**2**

**Printable Area**

---

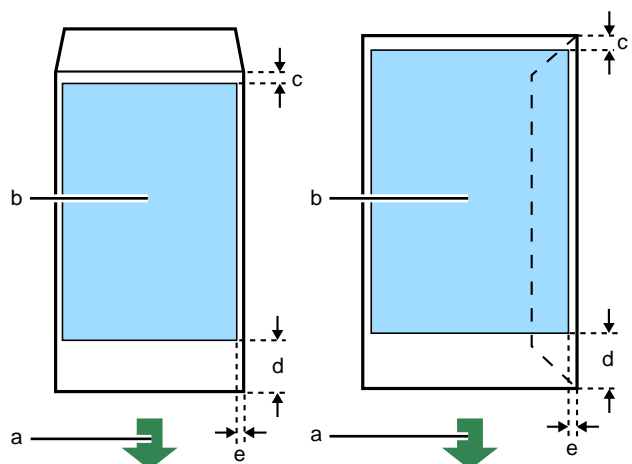
Printable and unprintable areas



BPR195S

- a. Output Direction
- b. Printable Area
- c. 3 mm (0.12 inches)

When printing on envelopes, the following print area limitations apply.



BPR196S

- a. Output Direction
- b. Printable Area
- c. 8 mm (0.4 inches)
- d. 38 mm (1.5 inches)
- e. 3 mm (0.2 inches)

# Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)

This section explains the settings you can specify in the Paper Input menu, such as those for the size and type of the paper loaded in each tray.

The very first time you load paper or anytime you change to a different size or type of paper, you must specify the paper settings using "Paper Input Menu" on the printer's control panel.

## Tray Paper Size

You can specify the size of the paper loaded in the paper feed tray.

## Paper Type

You can specify the type of the paper loaded in the paper feed tray.

## Aut.Tray Select

You can specify whether or not to automatically select the tray according to the paper size and paper type.

## Tray Priority

You can specify the prioritized paper feed tray. This setting is factory-preset to "tray 1".

### ↓ Note

- "Aut.Tray Select" can be specified only if the optional bypass tray is attached.
- If you select "Aut.Tray Select", the tray is automatically selected according to the paper size set for the trays in "Tray Paper Size".

### 📖 Reference

- p.82 "Compatible Paper Types"
- p.82 "Loadable Paper Sizes and Quantities"

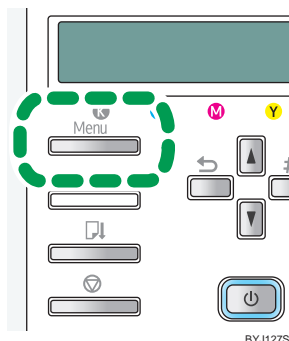
---

## Changing the Paper Input Menu

---

The following procedure is an example of setting the Tray Paper Size.

1. On the control panel, press the [Menu] key.



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Paper Input], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
Paper Input
```

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Tray Paper Size], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Paper Input:
Tray Paper Size
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display the tray you want to specify, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Tray Paper Size:
Tray 1
```

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display appropriate paper size, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Tray 1:
*A4 (210 x 297)
```

The setting is applied, and then, the Paper Input menu reappears.

6. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.





# 3. Printer Driver

---

## Two Types of Printer Properties Dialog Box

There are two types of printer properties dialog box, namely: Custom Setting and Multi-tab. The default is Custom Setting.

- Custom Setting

This type is suitable for users who rarely need to change printer properties settings and print using generally the same settings. Custom setting may change depending on the printer's system configuration.

- Multi-tab

This type is suitable for users who often need to change printer properties settings and print using a variety of settings.

To change the default Custom Setting to Multi-tab, do the following:

1. Click the [Printer Configuration] tab.
2. In the [Window type] area, click [Multi-tab].
3. Click [OK].

---

### Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box

---

This section explains how to open the printer properties dialog box from the [Printers and Faxes] window. Depending on the operating system settings, the actual procedure may differ.

1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
2. Click the icon of the printer, and then click [Properties] on the [File] menu.

The printer properties dialog box appears.

3. Click [Printing Preferences...].

---

### Opening the Printing Preferences Dialog Box

---

This section explains how to open the [Printing Preferences] dialog box from the [Printers and Faxes] window.

Depending on the operating system settings, the actual procedure may differ.

1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

2. Click the icon of the printer, and then click [Printing Preferences...] on the [File] menu.

The printing preferences dialog box appears.

---

## Opening from an Application

---

If you open the printer properties dialog box from an application, the factory settings appear. Change the settings as required and carry out printing.

Changes made here are only applicable with that application and only as long as that application stays open.

Some applications may automatically change the printer properties settings.

The procedure below is an example for Paint (included in the standard Windows package).

How to open the printer properties dialog box differs depending on the application. From most applications, the printer properties dialog box can be opened by clicking [Print...] or [Page Setup...] on the [File] menu, and then clicking [Properties] (Windows XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2008: [Preferences]). For details, see Help of the application.

1. On the [File] menu, click [Print...].
2. In the Name list, select the name of this printer, and then click Properties (Windows XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2008: Preferences).

The printer properties dialog box (Windows XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003: the [Printing Preferences] dialog box) appears.

# Specifying Settings on [Accessories] Tab

If the printer and computer are not configured for bidirectional communication, open the printer driver and specify the optional units attached to the printer and the size and type of paper loaded in the printer.

---

## Conditions for Bidirectional Communication

---

Bidirectional communication allows information about paper size and feed direction settings to be automatically sent to the printer. You can check printer status from your computer.

If you use the RPCS raster printer driver and bidirectional communication is enabled, the [Accessories] tab is unavailable.

To support bidirectional communication, the following conditions must be met:

### If the machine and computer are connected directly to each other with a USB cable

- The computer must support bidirectional communication.
- The printer must support bidirectional communication.

### When connected with the network

- The printer must support bidirectional communication.

---

## If Bidirectional Communication is Disabled

---

Perform this procedure only if the printer and computer are not communicating bidirectionally. This procedure enables you to display the printer driver settings, specify which optional units are installed, and specify the size and type of paper loaded in the printer.

### Windows 2000/Vista, Windows Server 2008

1. On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings] (Windows Vista: [Hardware and Sound] in [Control Panel]), and then click [Printers].

The [Printers] window appears.

2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
3. On the [File] menu, click [Properties] (Windows Vista: Right-click the icon of the printer, and then click [Properties]).

When you open the printer properties dialog box for the first time after installing the printer driver, or if you have not specified the attached options yet, a prompt to specify the options appears.

4. Click [OK].

**5. Click the [Accessories] tab.**

If options in the [Accessories] tab are disabled, bidirectional connection is enabled. In this case, no change is necessary for option settings.

**6. Select options installed from the [Select printer options:] area, and then make the necessary settings.**

**7. Select the appropriate size and type for the tray.**

**8. Click [OK] to close the printer properties dialog box.**

**3**

**Windows XP, Windows Server 2003**

**1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].**

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

Under Windows Server 2003, on the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers and Faxes].

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

Under Windows Server 2008, on the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The [Printers] window appears.

**2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

**3. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

When you open the printer properties dialog box for the first time after installing the printer driver, or if you have not specified the attached options yet, a prompt to specify the options appears.

**4. Click the [Accessories] tab.**

**5. Select options installed from the [Select printer options:] area, and then make the necessary settings.**

**6. Select the appropriate size and type for the tray.**

**7. Click [OK] to close the printer properties dialog box.**

**↓ Note**

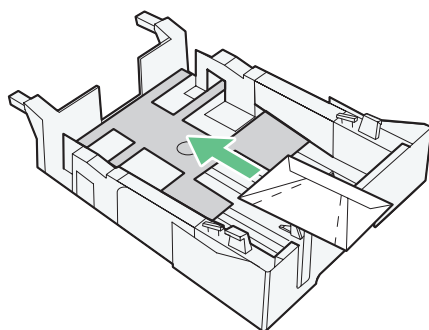
- Manage Printers permission is required to change the printer properties in the [Printers] folder. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- If you are using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port to share the printer as a print server, bidirectional communication between the printer and a client PC will not be possible.
- If you add an optional tray to an existing printer, you must refresh the settings on the printer's [Accessories] tab.

# Printing

Follow the procedure below to print on plain paper.

## ★ Important

- You can load 100 sheets in the optional bypass tray unit.
- Curled paper may jam. Straighten any curls within 2 mm (0.08 inches) before loading.
- Load paper with the print side face down in the paper trays.
- Load paper with the print side face up in the optional bypass tray unit.
- When printing on both sides, content other than text is printed at lower density.
- If ink smears appear and characters are not properly formed when printing white text on a black background, select [High speed] or [Speed priority] in the [Print Quality] area, and then print the job again.
- Printing on envelopes
  - Before loading envelopes, make sure their edges are sharply creased by rubbing the edges with a pen or similar object.
  - Squeeze the paper guide release, and then slide the paper guides into position according to the paper size.



BPR133S

### 1. Load plain paper into tray.

How to load paper depends on the paper type.

### 2. Open the printer properties dialog box from the application.

### 3. Select the paper type from the [Paper type:] list.

After selecting the paper type as required, switch the envelope selector to "⏏".

If you select [Inkjet Plain Paper], the machine will print on one side only. To print on both sides, select [Plain].

### 4. Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

The printer properties dialog box closes.

### 5. Make print settings, and then click [OK].

#### ↓ Note

- Loadable paper sizes, quantities, and paper types vary according to each paper tray.
- If you set [Paper Type:] to [Glossy Paper] in the printer properties dialog box, be sure to remove each sheet as it is delivered to the output ramp.
- You can load up to 20 envelopes.

#### 📖 Reference

- p.95 "Two Types of Printer Properties Dialog Box"
- p.85 "Paper Handling Precautions"
- p.90 "Printable Area"
- For details about loadable paper sizes and quantities, see p.82 "Loadable Paper Sizes and Quantities".

3

---

## Unauthorized Copy Control

---

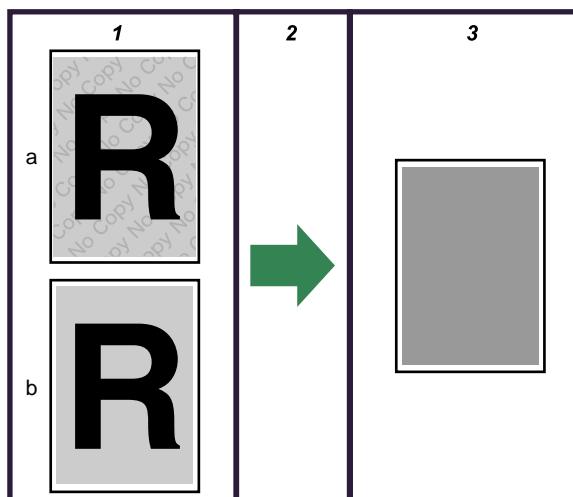
To prevent unauthorized copying, you can embed patterns and text beneath the print. You do not need a special paper to use this function. If a paper with text or image patterns is copied by a copier or a multi-function printer, either the patterns are printed vividly or the copy is grayed out, so as to protect the information on the original from leaking. To print with protection against unauthorized copying, you can use [Data security for copying] and [Mask type:].

#### ★ Important

- **This function is designed to discourage copying confidential documents; it does not prevent unauthorized use of information.**

In the printer properties dialog box, click [Setup] tab to select the [Unauthorized copy...] check box.

### Printing a document using [Data security for copying]



BPR199S

1. The pattern and text you have set is printed.

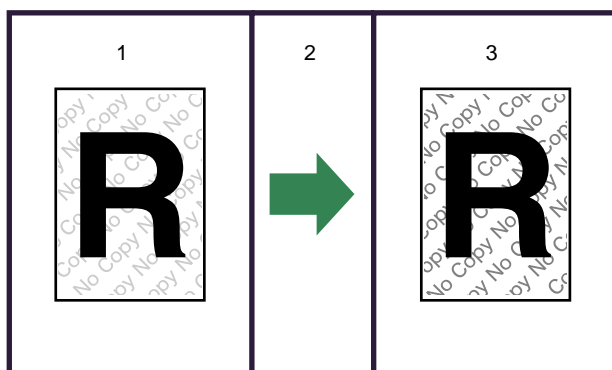
a: Text

b: Pattern

2. The document is copied to the machine that the Copy Data Security unit is installed.

3. The document is blanked by gray overprint.

### Printing a Document Using [Mask type:]



BPR200S

1. The print preview of the pattern and the text you set is displayed.

2. The document is copied to the copier or the multifunction machine.

3. The pattern and the text you set appear.

#### ↓ Note

- When selecting [High speed], [Unauthorized copy...] is not available.

- When selecting [Economy Color], [Unauthorized copy...] is not available.
- When selecting [Use error diffusion] and [Whole page], [Unauthorized copy...] is not available.

### Important Notice

---

- The supplier does not provide warranty regarding the appearance of print patterns and other copy protection features. The appearance of the print patterns and the performance of Unauthorized Copy Control may vary depending on the quality of paper used and the machine model and settings.
- The supplier takes no responsibility for any damages sustained in connection with use of or inability to make use of Unauthorized Copy Control print patterns.

#### Note

- For details, see the printer driver Help.



# Canceling Printing

Print jobs can be canceled from either a printer or computer. How to cancel print jobs differs according to their job status. Check the job status first.

## Canceling a Print Job Being Printed

Cancel the print job from the Status monitor or by pressing the [Job Reset] key of the printer.

## Canceling a print job in queue

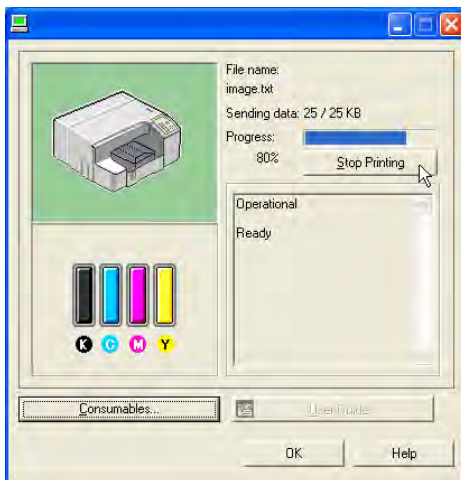
Cancel the print job from the taskbar of the computer.

3

## Canceling Printing from the Status Monitor

Follow the procedure below to cancel a print job being printed.

1. Check that printing and the Status monitor have started.
2. Click [Stop Printing].



It will take a few moments for printing to stop.

### Reference

- p.107 "Using the Status Monitor"

## Canceling Printing Using the [Job Reset] Key of the Printer

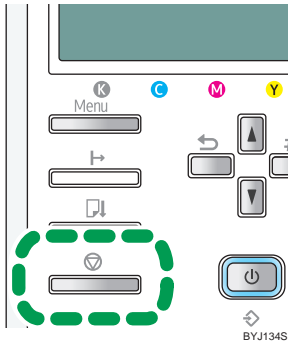
Follow the procedure below to cancel a print job being printed.

1. Check that printing has started.

Not only the print job being printed but also the print jobs in queue will be canceled.

If you press the [Job Reset] key while the printer is receiving print data for a print job (the Data in lamp is blinking), that print job is also canceled.

**2. Press the [Job Reset] key.**



The confirmation screen appears.

**3. Press the [#Enter] key.**

It will take a few moments for printing to stop.

---

## Canceling Printing from the Taskbar

---

Follow the procedure below to cancel a print job in queue.

1. Double-click the icon of the printer on the taskbar.
2. Select the print job you want to cancel, and then click Cancel on the Document menu.

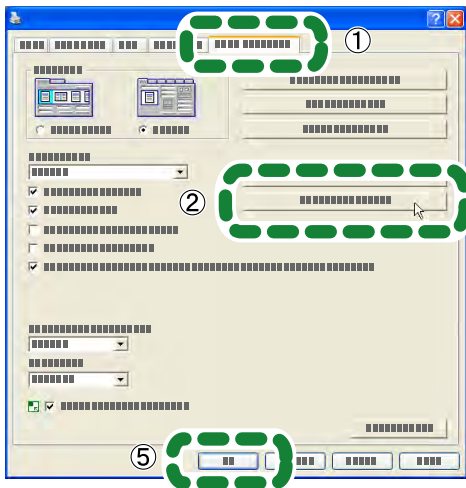
# Selecting the Printer Driver Language

This section explains how to select the language used for the settings and messages displayed on the Printer Driver.

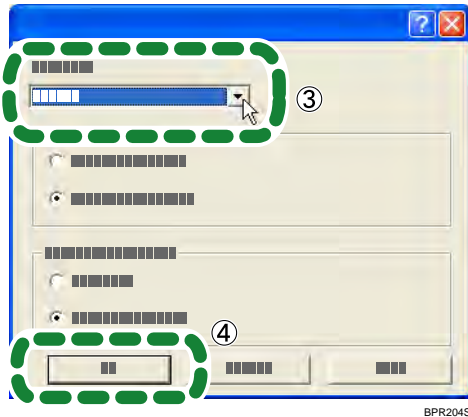
1. Open the printer properties dialog box.
2. Click [Printing Preferences].
3. Click the [Printer Configuration] tab.
4. Click [Environment Settings...].
5. In the [Language:] list, select the language you require.
6. Click [OK].
7. Click [OK].

Use the following procedure to change the language setting.

1. Open the printer properties dialog box.
2. Click [Printing Preferences].
3. Click the [Printer Configuration] tab (①).



4. Click [Environment Settings...] (②).



3

5. In the language list (shown below), find the language you require.

The languages in the list appear in the following order:

- 1.Japanese
- 2.English
- 3.German
- 4.French
- 5.Italian
- 6.Spanish
- 7.Dutch
- 8.Swedish
- 9.Danish
- 10.Norwegian
- 11.Portuguese
- 12.Russian
- 13.Finnish
- 14.Czech
- 15.Hungarian
- 16.Polish

6. In the [Language:] list, select the language you require (③).

7. Click [OK] (④).

8. Click [OK] (⑤).

# 4. Monitoring and Configuring the Printer

---

## Using the Status Monitor

Using the Status monitor, you can check the print job status, error messages amount of remaining ink, and other printer status information.

### Reference

- p.195 "Replacing a Print Cartridge"
- p.255 "Status Monitor Errors"
- p.103 "Canceling Printing from the Status Monitor"

---

## Receiving Notification of Print Job Status via the Status Monitor

---

You can specify how to receive notification of print job status via the Status monitor.

1. Open the printer properties dialog box.
2. Click the [Maintenance] tab.
3. Click [Status Monitor Settings].
4. From the list in the [Status Monitor display settings] area, select a method for launching the Status monitor.
5. Press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

## Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is an application that has functions such as the peer-to-peer printing machine monitoring. We recommend you install this application on the client computer.

- Operating System: Windows 2000  
Protocol Stack  
TCP/IP protocol supplied with Windows 2000
- Operating System: Windows Server 2003  
Protocol Stack  
TCP/IP protocol supplied with Windows Server 2003
- Operating System: Windows XP  
Protocol Stack  
TCP/IP protocol supplied with Windows XP
- Operating System: Windows Vista  
Protocol Stack  
TCP/IP protocol supplied with Windows Vista
- Operating System: Windows Server 2008  
Protocol Stack  
TCP/IP protocol supplied with Windows Server 2008

### What can you do with it?

Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, you can do the following:

- Peer-to-peer printing
  - Send print jobs directly to the network printer without going through a print server.
  - Print using a substitute printer if there are too many jobs waiting on the specified printer, or if an error disables printing (Recovery Printing).
  - Allocate multiple print jobs to multiple printers (Parallel Printing).
  - Preregister groups of printers specified for Recovery Printing or Parallel Printing.
- Receive error message notification if an error occurs in the machine while it is printing or sending a job.
- Monitoring function
  - Check the printer status such as the remaining amount of paper while printing.
  - Simultaneously monitor multiple printers in use.
  - Check the printer's network settings and system configuration.
- Be notified of print completion.

- View up to 100 print jobs that belong to you.

#### ↓ Note

- The status monitor function might not be able to monitor all possible items or events.

## Using Notification via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

This section explains how to use the Notification function in SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

If a client computer uses SmartDeviceMonitor for Client to access a network printer, you can specify the Notification setting to allow the computer to receive print job status notification.

#### ★ Important

- To change the printer properties in the [Printer] folder, you must have access to "Printer Management access authentication". To make this possible, log on as a member of the Administrators or Power Users group.

#### 📖 Reference

- p.68 "Sharing the Printer"

## Specifying the Print Server

Follow the procedure below to make the settings on the print server.

#### ★ Important

- To change the print server setting, you must have access to "Printer Management access authentication". To make this possible, log on as a member of the Administrators or Power Users group.

1. On the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs], point to [DeskTopBinder], [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client], and then click [Print Server Setting].

The Print Server Setting dialog box appears.

2. Select the [Notify client PCs of printout/data-transmission] check box, and then click [OK].

Depending on the print server setting, a dialog box appears. Read the message in the dialog box, and then click [OK].

By clicking [Cancel], the changed setting is cancelled.

3. A dialog box about specifying the client computer setting appears. Click [OK].

The print server setting has been changed. However, you still need to specify the Notification setting on each client computer.

#### ↓ Note

- When the spooler stops, the print job in progress is completely reprinted.
- If [Extended Features] was not used, it is automatically enabled.

## Specifying the Client Computer Settings

---

Follow the procedure below to make the settings on the client.

1. On the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs], point to [DeskTopBinder], [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client], and then click [Extended Features Settings].

The Extended Features Settings dialog box opens.

2. Select the [Use Extended Features] check box.
3. Select the [Notify of printout/ data-transmission when using print server] check box in "Notification".
4. Click [OK].

The Extended Features dialog box closes.

Specifying the client computer settings is now complete.

4

---

## Specifying the Settings for Monitoring the Printer

---

Use SmartDeviceMonitor for Client to monitor the status of the printer.

To use SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, you must make the following settings:

1. **Launch SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.**

The SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon appears in the taskbar's system tray.

This will not appear if you click [Do not show this message again].

2. **Right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon, and then, in the pop-up menu, look for the printer you want to monitor.**
3. **If the printer you want to monitor does not appear, point to [Property], and then click [Monitor Device Settings...].**

The SmartDeviceMonitor for Client - Option dialog box opens.

4. **Select the printer you want to monitor, and then select the [To be Monitored] check box in [Printer Settings].**

If you select the [Display on the task bar menu] check box, you can reflect the printer status in the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon in the taskbar system tray.

5. **Click [OK].**

The SmartDeviceMonitor for Client - Settings dialog box closes and the selected printer is monitored.

### ↓ Note

- For details about how the icon indicates the printer status, see the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

### 📖 Reference

- If you are using the printer in a DHCP environment, see p.288 "Using DHCP".



---

## Displaying the Printer Status

---

You can display the printer status.

**1. Launch SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.**

**2. Right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon.**

The printer status is reflected in the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon in the taskbar system tray.

**3. To monitor the status in more detail, right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon, and then select the printer you want to monitor.**

**4. Click [Printer].**

A dialog box displaying the printer status opens.

**↓ Note**

- For details about the items in the dialog box, see the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.
- For details about how the icon indicates the printer status, see the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

## Using Web Browser

The GX e3300N and GX e3350N can be configured and monitored through a Web browser.

The GX e2600 has no networking capability and is therefore not operable through a Web browser.

### Available operations

The following operations can be remotely performed using Web browser from a client computer.

- Displaying printer status or settings
- Resetting the printer
- Making printer settings
- Making e-mail notification settings
- Making network protocol settings
- Making security settings

### Configuring the printer

To perform the operations from Web browser, TCP/IP is required. After the printer is configured to use TCP/IP, operations from Web browser become available.

### Recommended Web browsers

- Windows:
  - GX e3300N: Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher, Firefox 2.0 or higher
  - GX e3350N: Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 or higher, Firefox 1.0 or higher
- Mac OS:
  - GX e3300N: Safari 2.0 or higher, Firefox 2.0 or higher
  - GX e3350N: Safari 1.0 or higher, Firefox 1.0 or higher

#### Note

- If the previous versions of the Web browser above are used or JavaScript and cookies are not enabled with the Web browser used, display and operation problems may occur.
- Non-recommended Web browsers might not display certain screen elements correctly.
- If you are using a proxy server, change the Web browser settings. Contact your network administrator for information about the settings.
- The previous page may not appear even after the back button of a Web browser is clicked. If this happens, click the refresh button of a Web browser.
- Updating the printer information is not automatically performed. Click [Refresh] in the display area to update the printer information.

## Displaying Top Page

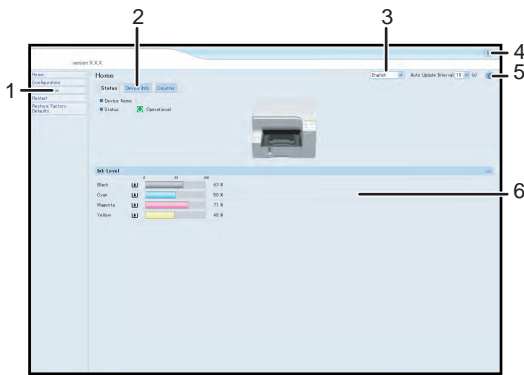
This section explains the Top Page and how to display Web browser.

### 1. Launch the Web browser.

### 2. In the Web browser's address bar, enter "http://(printer's IP address)/" to access the printer.

If a DNS server is in use and the printer's host name has been specified, you can enter the host name instead of the IP address.

The displayed Web page is split into the following areas:



BYJ135S

### 1. Menu Area

A menu appears.

When you click an item in the menu area, information about the item appears.

### 2. Tab area

Details about each menu appears.

### 3. Language Selection Menu

Select a language.

If the displayed page is garbled when using an English language operating system, select "English" with the language selection menu.

### 4. Header area

The link to the screen where you can check the firmware version and the link to the administrator log on screen appear here.

### 5. Help

The link to the displayed screen's help section appears here.

### 6. Work Area

Information about an item selected in the menu area appears here.

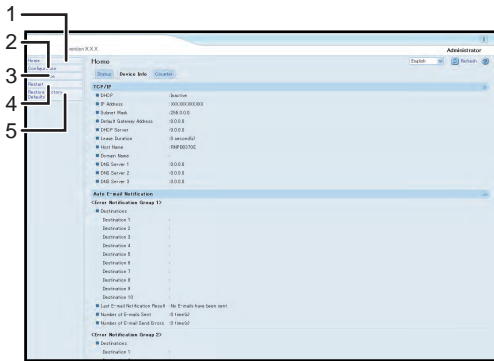
Information displayed in the work area does not update automatically.

To update the information, click [Refresh] in the upper-right corner of the work area.

To refresh the entire Web browser window, click [Refresh] on the Web browser tool bar.

## Menu

This section explains the items in the Web browser menu.



BPR136S

### 1. Home

The [Status] and [Device Info] tab are displayed. Details of the tab menu are displayed on the work area.

### 2. Configuration

Make system settings for the machine, interface settings, and security.

### 3. Maintenance

Click to perform printer maintenance.

### 4. Restart (GX e3350N only)

Click to restart the printer and apply the settings.

### 5. Restore Factory Defaults (GX e3350N only)

Click to reset the printer.

## Checking the Printer Status

You can check the printer status.

### 1. Launch the Web browser.

### 2. In the address bar, enter "http://(printer's IP address or host name)/".

The printer's top page appears.

### 3. In the menu area, click the item you want to check.

---

## Changing the Printer Settings (GX e3350N only)

---

You can change the printer settings.

1. Launch the Web browser.
2. In the address bar, enter "http://(printer's IP address or host name)/".
3. Click [Configuration], and then click [General Settings].

A dialog box for entering the user name and password opens.

4. Enter the user name and password, and then click [OK].

If this is the first time to do this, enter "admin" as the user name and leave the password blank.

To ensure security, it is important you change the password.

5. Specify the printer settings.

6. Click [OK].

The specified settings are transmitted to the printer.

---

## Notifying the Printer Status by E-mail

---

You can be notified of the printer status by e-mail on an occasion such as if the printer runs out of paper or paper is jammed.

The e-mail notifying the printer status will be sent to the e-mail address specified as the destination in advance.

### Important

- Depending on your e-mail application, a phishing warning message might appear when you receive e-mail. To stop this warning message appearing, see your e-mail application's Help for details about registering trusted senders.

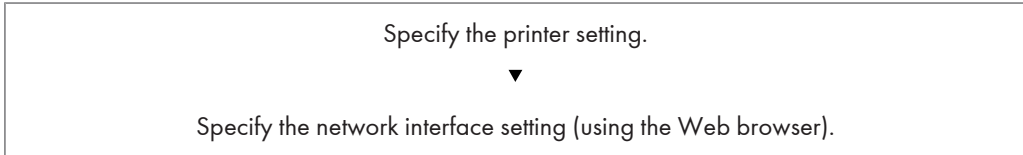
You can also specify the timing and status to notify.

The following status can be notified:

- The printer error has occurred.
- The ink has run out.
- The ink will run out soon.
- The Ink Collector Unit must be replaced now.
- The Ink Collector Unit must be replaced soon.
- The paper has run out.
- The paper has been jammed.
- The paper type is wrong.

- The paper size is wrong.
- The paper size and type are wrong.
- A cover is open.
- The paper has been loaded incorrectly.
- The machine is out of its operational temperature range.

**Flowchart showing how to specify notification by e-mail**



4

To specify the network interface setting, use the Web browser. This section explains how to specify the network interface setting using the Web browser.

**Reference**

- For details about specifying the printer setting, see p.182 "Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu)".
- For details about specifying the network interface setting, see p.115 "Changing the Printer Settings (GX e3350N only)".

**Specifying Notification the Printer Status by E-mail**

In E-mail, you can specify the basic and authentication settings for sending e-mails.

**Specifying SMTP Server**

You can specify whether to use SMTP, and specify the SMTP server name and SMTP port number. The "Administrator E-mail Address" will appear in the e-mail message. The "Device E-mail Address" will appear in the "From" box.

Functions	Selectable value	Default
SMTP	Active Inactive	Inactive
SMTP Server Name	127 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics)	None
SMTP Port Number	1-65535	25
Device E-mail Address	127 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics)	None

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Administrator E-mail Address	127 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics)	None
Text in E-mail	255 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics) (2-byte characters available)	None

### Specifying SMTP Authentication

By specifying the SMTP authentication setting, you can send e-mails to destinations where the e-mail server carries out SMTP authentication.

By specifying the SMTP authentication setting, you can log on to SMTP servers which require authentication. The supported authentication protocols are: CRAM MD5, PLAIN, and LOGIN.

If you set [SMTP Authentication Encryption] to [Auto], the printer will try logging on using CRAM MD5, LOGIN, and then PLAIN.

If you set [SMTP Authentication Encryption] to [On], the printer will try logging on using only CRAM MD5. If you set [SMTP Authentication Encryption] to [Off], the printer will try logging on using LOGIN and then PLAIN.

Functions	Selectable value	Default
SMTP Authentication	Active Inactive	Inactive
SMTP Authentication Name	191 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics)	None
SMTP Authentication Password	63 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics)	None (No Password)
SMTP Authentication Encryption	Auto On Off	Auto

### Specifying POP before SMTP

By specifying the SMTP authentication setting, you can send e-mails to destinations where the e-mail server carries out SMTP authentication.

By using POP before SMTP, you can log on to an SMTP server supporting POP before SMTP.

You can specify whether to use POP before SMTP, and specify the POP server name, POP port number, POP user name, and POP password.

If you set [POP Authentication Encryption] to [Auto], the printer will try logging on by APOP login, and then in plain text.

If you set [POP Authentication Encryption] to [On], the printer will try logging on only by APOP login.

If you set [POP Authentication Encryption] to [Off], the printer will try logging on only in plain text.

In standby time following POP authentication (in milliseconds), you can specify how long the printer can wait for logging on to the SMTP server after logging on to the POP server.

Functions	Selectable value	Default
POP before SMTP	Active Inactive	Inactive
POP Server Name	127 characters max. (1-byte alphanumeric)	None
POP Port Number	1-65535 (1-byte numeric characters)	110
POP User Name	127 characters max. (1-byte alphanumeric)	None
POP Password	63 characters max. (1-byte alphanumeric)	None (no password)
POP Authentication Encryption	Auto On Off	Auto
Wait Time after POP Authentication	0-10000 (millisecond(s))	300

### Auto E-mail Notification: Error Notification Group 1-3

#### Group to Notify

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Group Name	19 characters max. (1-byte alphanumeric)(2-byte characters available)	None



Functions	Selectable value	Default
E-mail Language	English Japanese French German Italian Spanish Dutch Swedish Norwegian Danish Portuguese Finnish	English
E-mail Language	Polish Czech Hungarian Russian	English
Subject	31 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics) (2-byte characters available)	None
Text	255 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics) (2-byte characters available)	None

### Destinations

GX e3300N: Destination 1-5

GX e3350N: Destination 1-10

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Name	19 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics) (2-byte characters available)	None

Functions	Selectable value	Default
E-mail Address	127 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics)	None

**Error Notification**

This section lists the settings for notification by e-mail.

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Printer Error	ON OFF	OFF
Cartridge Empty	ON OFF	OFF
Cartridge Almost Empty	ON OFF	OFF
Replace Ink Collector Unit	ON OFF	OFF
Ink Collector Unit Near Full	ON OFF	OFF
No Paper	ON OFF	OFF
Paper Misfeed	ON OFF	OFF
Paper Size Mismatch	ON OFF	OFF
Paper Type Mismatch	ON OFF	OFF
Paper Size and Type Mismatch	ON OFF	OFF
Cover Open	ON OFF	OFF

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Unit/Cartridge Not Set	ON OFF	OFF
Out of Printable Temperature Range	ON OFF	OFF

## Auto E-mail Notification: Counter Notification Group

### Group to Notify

Functions	Selectable value	Default
E-mail Language	English Japanese German French Italian Spanish Dutch Swedish Danish Norwegian Portuguese Finnish	English
E-mail Language	Polish Czech Hungarian Russian	English
Subject	31 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics) (2-byte characters available)	None

### Destination

GX e3300N: Destination 1-5

GX e3350N: Destination 1-10

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Name	19 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics) (2-byte characters available)	None
E-mail Address	127 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics)	None

**Counter Notification**

4

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Machine Total	ON OFF	OFF

**Auto E-mail Notification: Error Notification**

---

**Printer Error**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**Cartridge Empty**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

### Cartridge Almost Empty

4

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs
Notify within	10 20 30 (%)	10

### Replace Ink Collector Unit

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**Ink Collector Unit Near Full**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**No Paper**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**Paper Misfeed**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

### Paper Size Mismatch

4

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

### Paper Type Mismatch

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**4**

**Paper Size and Type Mismatch**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**Cover Open**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs



Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**Unit/Cartridge Not Set**

4

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**Out of Printable Temperature Range**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

## Auto E-mail Notification: Counter Notification

---

### Machine Total

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notification Method	Number of Pages Number of Pages & Monthly	Number of Pages
Notify Every	100 200 300 400 500 1000 2000 (pages)	100 (pages)
Notification Day	1-28 (days)	1 (day)

4

---

## About the Web Browser Help

---

Using "Settings", you can view help on the things you can do through the Web browser.

1. Launch the Web browser.
2. In the address bar, enter "http://(printer's IP address or host name)/".
3. Click .

Help on the things you can do through the Web browser appears.

# SNMP

The Ethernet interface includes the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) agent for UDP.

Using the SNMP manager, you can obtain printer data.

The default community name is "public". Using this community name, you can obtain MIB data.

The GX e3300N and GX e3350N can be configured and monitored through a Web browser.

The GX e2600 has no networking capability and is therefore not operable through a Web browser.

## Supporting MIB (SNMP v1/v2c)

- MIB-II
- PrinterMIB
- HostResourceMIB
- RicohPrivateMIB
- PrinterPortMonitorMIB



# 5. Using the Printer with a Macintosh

## System Requirements for Macintosh

### Operating System (for Macintosh)

- PowerPC-Based Macintosh: Mac OS X 10.3 or later
- Intel-Based Macintosh: Mac OS X 10.4.5 or later

**Note**

- The operating environment for the printer driver depends on the application in use.
- OS X Server is not supported.
- Printing with USB 2.0 is supported under Mac OS X 10.3.3 and later versions.

### Hardware (for Macintosh)

#### PowerPC-Based Macintosh

Computer: Macintoshes Based on PowerPC G3 or later PowerPC models

Memory: 128 MB or more

HDD: 50 MB or more

Other requirements: USB port or network port

#### Intel-Based Macintosh

Computer: Macintoshes Based on Intel Core Duo or later Intel models

Memory: 256 MB or more

HDD: 50 MB or more

Other requirements: USB port or network port

**Note**

- You can only use a network printer via a TCP/IP connection. You cannot use AppleTalk.
- This machine does not support Bonjour or Rendezvous connections.

## Preparing for Printing (for Macintosh)

For details about preparing to print from a Macintosh computer, see the following sections:

### **Checking the printer status and settings using the printer's control panel**

See p.63 "Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu)"

### **Specifying the interface and network settings using the printer's control panel**

See p.71 "Specifying the Interface and Network Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Host Interface Menu)"

### **Available paper types and how to load paper**

See p.82 "Paper"

### **Loading paper into the paper tray**

See p.45 "Loading Paper"

### **Specifying the paper settings using the printer's control panel**

See p.92 "Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)"

# Installing the Printer Driver under Mac OS X

This section explains how to install the printer driver. After installing the printer driver, adjust the settings as necessary.

If using the GX e3300N/GX e3350N, install the driver from the CD-ROM provided with the printer. If using the GX e2600, download the driver from the Web site.

The following procedures are based on Mac OS 10.5.1. The procedures for your machine might differ slightly from those shown if you are using a different version of Mac OS.

## ★ Important

- Only the English version of the Macintosh printer driver is supplied.

## Installing the Printer Driver on a Macintosh

Follow the procedure below to install the printer driver.

## ★ Important

- You cannot install the printer driver while other applications are running. Be sure to close all applications before installing the printer driver.
- After installing the printer driver, you must restart the computer. Be sure to save any files you are working on before installing the printer driver.
- To install the printer driver, you must log on as administrator. For details, consult the administrator of the Macintosh in question.

### 1. Start Macintosh, and insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The GX e2600 driver is not included on the provided CD-ROM. When you are using GX e2600, download the driver from the supplier's Web site, save it in an accessible folder, and then decompress it.

### 2. In the [RPCS\_R] folder in the [Mac OS X 10.5 or later] folder, double-click the product name.pkg icon.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, double-click the product name.pkg icon in the [RPCS\_R] folder in the [Mac OS X 10.3 or later] folder.



A warning message appears.

When you are using GX e2600, open the folder that contains the driver, and then double-click the product name.pkg icon.

**3. After reading the displayed message, and then click [Continue].**

The following message is displayed: "Welcome to the product name installer"

**4. Click [Continue].**

The software license agreement appears in the [Software License Agreement] dialog box.

**5. After reading the agreement, and then click [Continue].**

The confirmation screen appears.

**6. Click [Agree].**

If you click [Disagree], the screen that appeared in the previous step returns.

**7. Click [Install].**

The [Authenticate] dialog box appears.

To select where to install the file, click [Change Install Location...].

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, select where to install the file in the [Select a Destination] dialog box.

**8. Enter the administrator's user name and password, and then click [OK].**

The confirmation screen appears.

**9. Read the message on the confirmation screen, and then click [Continue Installation].**

The printer driver is installed.

**10. Click [Restart].**

To complete the installation, the computer restarts.

5

---

## Specifying the Printer Settings on a Macintosh

---

This section explains how to register a printer you want to use in [Printer List]. You can specify usable printers with this registration.

### Using the Printer via a USB Connection from a Macintosh

---

**★ Important**

- Connect the printer to the USB port and switch it on in advance.
- Printing with USB 2.0 is supported under Mac OS X 10.3.3 and later versions.

**1. On the [Apple] menu, click [System Preferences...], and then click the [Print & Fax] in the [System Preferences] dialog box.**

The [Print & Fax] appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, double-click the Printer Setup Utility icon in the [Utilities] folder in the [Applications] folder.



The [Printer List] appears.

2. From the list of printers, select a printer that is automatically recognized by plug-and-play, and then delete it. Click [−].

The confirmation screen appears.

3. Click [OK].

4. Click [+].

The add printer screen appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, click [Add Printer...] on the [Printers] menu or [Add] on the toolbar.

The [Printer Browser] appears.

5. On the add printer screen, click [Default], and then make sure [Kind] is set to [USB].

The name of the printer connected to the USB port appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, make sure [Connection] is set to [USB].

6. Select the name of the printer you want to use.

7. Make sure the product name appears in the [Printer Name] field, and then click [Add].

8. If you want to use the bypass tray, select options in the [Installable Options] dialog box, and then select [Continue].

9. The name of the registered printer appears in [Print & Fax].

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, the name of the registered printer appears in [Printer List].

10. On the [System Preferences] menu, click [Quit System Preferences].

The [System Preferences] closes.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, click [Quit Printer Setup Utility] on the [Printer Setup Utility] menu.

The [Printer Setup Utility] closes.

#### ↓ Note

- If you use a printer that has been automatically recognized by plug-and-play, the driver screens may be displayed in English due to the specifications of the Mac OS X. To display the driver screens properly, delete the printer once from the list of printers.
- To make fine adjustments to print quality, set [Adjust Color Density...] before using the printer.

#### 📖 Reference

- For details about setting [Adjust Color Density...], see the printer driver Help.

## Using the Printer via Network Connection from a Macintosh

Note that the GX e2600 cannot be connected to networks.

**★ Important**

- **Connect the printer to the network in advance and switch it on.**
- **Specify the printer's IP address on its control panel in advance.**

- 1. On the [Apple] menu, click [System Preferences...], and then click the [Print & Fax] in the [System Preferences] dialog box.**

The [Print & Fax] appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, double-click the Printer Setup Utility icon in the [Utilities] folder in the [Applications] folder.

The [Printer List] appears.

- 2. Click [+].**

The add printer screen appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, click [Add Printer...] on the [Printers] menu or [Add] on the toolbar.

The [Printer Browser] appears.

- 3. On the add printer screen, click [IP].**

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, click [IP Printer] in the [Printer Browser] dialog box.

- 4. From the [Protocol] pop-up menu, select [Line Printer Daemon - LPD].**

You can also select [HP Jetdirect - Socket].

- 5. In the [Address:] field, enter the IP address of the printer you want to use.**

- 6. Select [Select a driver to use...] in the [Print Using] field, and then select a printer in the list.**

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, select [RICOH] in the [Printer Using] field, and then select a printer in the [Model Name] list.

- 7. Click [Add].**

- 8. If you want to use the bypass tray, select options in the [Installable Options] dialog box, and then select [Continue].**

- 9. The IP address of the registered printer appears in [Print & Fax].**

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, the IP address of the registered printer appears in [Printer List].

- 10. On the [System Preferences] menu, click [Quit System Preferences].**

The [System Preferences] closes.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, click [Quit Printer Setup Utility] on the [Printer Setup Utility] menu.

The [Printer Setup Utility] closes.

**↓ Note**

- To make fine adjustments to print quality, set [Adjust Color Density...] before using the printer.
- If printing is too slow with protocol [LPD (Line Printer Daemon)], select protocol [HP Jetdirect - Socket].

### Reference

- For details about setting [Adjust Color Density...], see the printer driver Help.

# Printer Properties Dialog Box on a Macintosh

This section describes the printer properties dialog box and explains how to open it.

---

## Dialog Boxes for Printer Settings on a Macintosh

---

The dialog boxes for specifying the printer driver settings consist of the Page Setup dialog and Print dialog. The printer settings can be adjusted in [Maintenance Utility].

### Page Setup dialog

Specify the paper settings on the Page Setup dialog.

### Print dialog

The Print dialog comprises settings such as [Paper Feed] and [Printer Features].

When you open the Print dialog, the [Copies & Pages] settings appear. Using the pop-up menu in the middle-right of the dialog box, you can switch the displayed settings from [Copies & Pages] to other settings such as [Paper Feed] and [Printer Features].

### Maintenance Utility dialog

Adjust the printer settings in the [Maintenance Utility]. You can open the [Maintenance Utility] from the [Print & Fax].

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, you can open the [Maintenance Utility] from the [Printer Setup Utility].

#### ↓ Note

- The way of opening the printer settings differs depending on the application. For details, see the manual provided with the application.
- Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, the [Copies & Pages] setting appears under the name of the application in use.

#### 📖 Reference

- For details about opening the [Maintenance Utility], see p. 139 "Displaying the [Maintenance Utility] on a Macintosh".

---

## Displaying the Printer Driver Settings Dialog Boxes on a Macintosh

---

This section explains how to use the [TextEdit] application provided with Mac OS X.

#### ★ Important

- Under Mac OS X, the printer you want to use must be registered beforehand in [Printer Setup Utility]. After registering the printer, open the printer driver settings dialog box from the application.

**Reference**

- For details about specifying the printer driver settings, see p. 133 "Installing the Printer Driver under Mac OS X".

**Displaying the Page Setup dialog on a Macintosh**

1. From the application's File menu, click [Page Setup...].

The Page Setup dialog appears.

2. From the [Format for] pop-up menu, select the printer you want to use.

If you want to use a printer connected to the network, select the printer according to its IP address.

**Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh**

1. From the application's File menu, select [Print...].

The [Copies & Pages] setting appears.

2. From the [Printer] pop-up menu, select the printer you want to use.

If you want to use a printer connected to the network, select the printer according to its IP address.

To display the [Setup] settings, using the pop-up menu in the middle-right of the dialog box, switch from [the name of the application in use] to [Printer Features], and then select [Setup] from the [Feature Sets:] pop-up menu.

To display the [Paper Feed] settings, using the pop-up menu in the middle-right of the dialog box, switch from [the name of the application in use] to [Paper Feed].

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, if you open the printer driver settings from an application, the previously specified settings appear. Change the settings as required, and then print.

**Note**

- Depending on the application, the printer driver settings may be automatically changed.
- Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, the [Copies & Pages] setting appears under the name of the application in use.

**Displaying the [Maintenance Utility] on a Macintosh**

1. On the [Apple] menu, click [System Preferences...], and then click the [Print & Fax] in the [System Preferences] dialog box.

The [Print & Fax] appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, double-click the Printer Setup Utility icon in the [Utilities] folder in the [Applications] folder.

The [Printer List] appears.

- 2. From the [Print & Fax], select the printer you want to use, and then click [Open Print Queue...].**

If you want to use a network printer, select it according to its name of the printer.

- 3. On the [Print & Fax] toolbar, click [Utility].**

The [Maintenance Utility] appears.

---

# Printing with a Macintosh

This section explains how to start and stop printing.

---

## Basic Printing Procedure for Macintosh

---

This section explains the basic procedure for printing from an application.

---

### Printing on a Macintosh

---

#### ★ Important

- Install the printer driver and configure the printer settings in advance.
1. In the application, open the file you want to print.
  2. Open the Page Setup dialog, select a printer from the [Format for] pop-up menu, and then specify the paper settings as required.  

Be sure to select the actual printer you want to use; do not select "Any Printer". If you do select "Any Printer", you may not be able to access all the paper sizes available on the printer.
  3. Open the Print dialog, select a printer from the [Printer] pop-up menu, and then specify the printer settings as required.
  4. Click [Print].

Printing starts.

#### ↓ Note

- You can let other Macintoshes on the same network as yours share the printer, whether it is connected to your computer via USB or the network. For details about how to share the printer, see Mac Help.

#### 📖 Reference

- For details about displaying the printer driver settings, see p. 138 "Displaying the Printer Driver Settings Dialog Boxes on a Macintosh".
- For details about specifying the printer driver settings, see p. 133 "Installing the Printer Driver under Mac OS X".
- For details about displaying Mac Help, see p. 153 "Opening Help on a Macintosh".

---

## Printing on Various Paper Types with a Macintosh

---

The print method differs depending on the type of paper used for printing. Use a print method appropriate for each paper type.

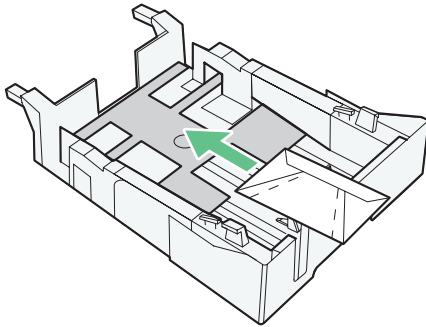
## Printing on Paper in a Paper Tray with a Macintosh

This section explains how to load paper in the paper tray and print on it.

### ★ Important

- Curled paper may jam. Straighten any curls within 2 mm (0.08 inches) before loading.
- Load paper with the print side face down in the paper trays.
- Printing on Envelopes
  - Before loading envelopes, make sure their edges are sharply creased by rubbing them with a pen or similar object.
  - Switch the envelope selector to "✉".
  - Squeeze the paper guide release, and then slide the paper guides into position according to the envelope size.

5



BPR133S

### 1. Load paper into tray.

How to load paper depends on the paper type.

### 2. Open the Print dialog.

### 3. Select the tray from the [Paper Feed] settings.

To display the [Paper Feed] settings, using the pop-up menu in the middle-right of the dialog box, switch from [the name of the application in use] to [Paper Feed].

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, using the pop-up menu, switch from [Copies & Pages] to [Paper Feed].

### 4. Select the color mode, paper type, and print quality from the [Setup] settings.

Select the color mode from the [Color/Black and White:] pop-up menu, then select the paper type from the [Paper type:] pop-up menu, and then select the print quality from the [Resolution:] pop-up menu.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, select the color mode from the [Color Mode:] pop-up menu, and then select the paper type and print quality from the [Print Mode:] pop-up menu.



To display the [Setup] settings, using the pop-up menu in the middle-right of the dialog box, switch from [the name of the application in use] to [Printer Features], and then select [Setup] from the [Feature Sets:] pop-up menu.

After selecting the paper type as required, switch the envelope selector to "".

If you select [Inkjet Plain Paper], the machine will print on one side only. To print on both sides, select [Plain].

### 5. Make print settings, and then click [Print].

Depending on the selected paper type, a confirmation screen might appear. If it does, read the message, and then click [OK].

#### Note

- Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, the [Copies & Pages] setting appears under the name of the application in use.
- The vertical and horizontal resolutions will be the same.

#### Reference

- For details about opening the [Setup] or [Paper Feed] settings, see p.139 "Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh".
- For details about the number of sheets that can be loaded in the paper tray, see p.45 "Loading Paper".
- For details about how to handle paper, carry out duplex printing, and use options, see p.45 "Loading Paper".
- For details about dithering, see the printer driver Help.
- For details about specifying a time for ink drying, see the printer driver Help.
- For details about the printable areas of envelopes, see p.45 "Loading Paper".

## Printing with the Bypass Tray with a Macintosh

This section explains how to load paper in the bypass tray and print on it.

The procedure for loading thick paper in the bypass tray and printing on it is used as an example.

#### Important

- Paper lighter than 157 g/m<sup>2</sup> (297.6 lb.) can be loaded into tray 1. To use Paper lighter than that, click [Plain] in the [Paper type:] pop-up menu.

1. Open the [Setup] settings.
2. Select the paper type from the [Setup] settings.

Select [Thick] from the [Paper type:] pop-up menu.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, select [Thick paper-High speed] or [Thick paper-Standard] or [Thick paper-High quality] from the [Print Mode:] pop-up menu.

3. Make sure [Bypass Tray] is selected from the [Paper Feed] settings.
4. Slide the bypass tray guides into position according to the paper size.
5. Insert a sheet of paper into the bypass tray with the print side face up.  
Insert the sheet straight into the bypass tray.
6. Make print settings, and then click [Print].

**Note**

- To use the bypass tray, click the [Driver] tab in the [Printer Info] dialog box, and then select the [Bypass Tray Unit] check box. To display the [Printer Info] dialog box, display the [Print & Fax], double-click the printer from the printer list, and then click [Info] on the toolbar.
- Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, to use the bypass tray, select the [Installable Options] in the [Printer Info] dialog box, and then select the [Bypass Tray Unit] check box. To display the [Printer Info] dialog box, display the [Printer List], and then click [Show Info] on the [Printers] menu.

**5**

**Reference**

- For details about opening the [Setup] or [Paper Feed] setting, see p.139 "Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh".
- For details about handling paper, see p.45 "Loading Paper".
- For details about the number of sheets that can be loaded in the bypass tray, see p.45 "Loading Paper".

---

## Canceling a Print Job on a Macintosh

---

You can cancel a print job from either the printer or the computer. The procedure for canceling the job depends on whether or not the computer has sent the job to the printer yet.

### If the computer has sent or is sending the print job to the printer

You can cancel the print job from the print job queue window or by pressing the [Job Reset] key on the printer's control panel.

### If the computer has not yet sent the print job to the printer

If you execute the print command, the print job queue window opens and the print job is queued. Using the print job queue window, you can cancel print jobs.

---

## Canceling a Print Job from the Computer (for Macintosh)

---

You can delete a print job before, during, and after its being sent from the computer to the printer.

1. Check that printing has started and the print job queue window opens.
2. In the print job queue window, select the print job you want to cancel.
3. Click [Delete Job] in the [Jobs] menu or [Delete] on the toolbar.

**Reference**

- For details about the print job queue window, see p. 151 "Displaying the Printer Status on a Macintosh".

**Canceling Printing Using the [Job Reset] Key of the Printer (for Macintosh)**

---

You can cancel a print job while it is being transmitted or printed.

**1. Check that printing has started.**

Not only the print job being printed but also the print jobs in queue will be canceled.

If you press the [Job Reset] key while the printer is receiving print data for a print job (the Data in lamp is blinking), that print job is also canceled.

**2. Press the [Job Reset] key.**

It will take a few moments for printing to stop.

## Notes on/Limitations of Printing Using a Mac

- To specify a paper tray under Mac OS X v10.3.x or v10.4.x, you must specify which tray you want to use in the [All pages from], [First page from], and [Remaining from] pop-up menus in the [Paper Feed] settings. Not specifying the tray in these pop-up menus can result in paper being fed in from the wrong tray.
- If you are using Mac OS X v10.3.x or v10.4.x and change the [Print Mode], [Color Mode], [Dithering], or [Color profile] settings, you must select an item other than [Printer Features] first, and then select [Printer Features] again in the [Printer Features] pop-up menu.  
If you fail to do so, the options in the [Printer Features] menu will not be displayed correctly.
- If you want to perform duplex printing on a custom paper size, select a paper tray other than [Bypass Tray]. If you select [Bypass Tray], printing will be on one side only.
- If you are using Mac OS X v10.5 or later, duplex printing is not possible on the following paper types:

Thick

Envelope

Glossy paper

Inkjet plain paper

- If you are using Mac OS X v10.3.x or v10.4.x, duplex printing is not possible with the following combinations of printing modes:

Thick paper-High quality

Thick paper-Standard

Thick paper-High speed

Envelope-High quality

Envelope-Standard

Envelope-High speed

Glossy paper-Super high quality

Glossy paper-High quality

Glossy paper-Standard

Inkjet plain paper-High quality

Inkjet plain paper-Standard

- Duplex printing is not possible on the following paper sizes:

Legal

F/GL

Foolscap

Folio

Japanese envelope #3

Japanese envelope #4

Yoh #4 envelope

Com10 Env.

Monarch Env.

C5 Envelope

C6 Envelope

DL Envelope

- If you specify a custom size outside the range of the selected paper tray, the tray selection setting will change automatically to [Auto Tray Select]. If you specify a custom size outside the range of the bypass tray, the paper size setting will change automatically to the OS-standard paper size.

The paper size ranges for each tray are as follows:

- Tray 1
  - Length: 139.7 – 356.0 mm (5.50 – 14.01 inch)
  - Width: 88.0 – 216.0 mm (3.47 – 8.50 inch)
- Bypass tray
  - Length: 127.0 – 1295.4 mm (5.00 – 51.00 inch)
  - Width: 55.0 – 216.0 mm (2.17 – 8.50 inch)
- If you are using Mac OS X v10.5 or later and specify the following paper types for a paper tray, the tray selection setting will change automatically to [Auto Tray Select].
  - Tray 1
    - Thick
- If you are using Mac OS X v10.3.x or v10.4.x and specify the following combinations of printing modes for a paper tray, the tray selection setting will change automatically to [Auto Tray Select].
  - Tray 1
    - Thick paper-High quality
    - Thick paper-Standard
    - Thick paper-High speed
- If you are using Mac OS X v10.5 or later and specify [Black and White] for [Color/Black and White], [Color Ink Saving] will be unavailable.
- If you are using Mac OS X v10.5 or later and specify the following paper types, [Color Ink Saving] will be unavailable.

Inkjet plain paper

Inkjet postcard

Glossy paper

5

- If you are using Mac OS X v10.3.x or v10.4.x and specify the following combinations of printing modes, [Color Ink Saving] - [Color Mode] will be unavailable. If you specify [Color Ink Saving], the color mode will change automatically to [Color].

Inkjet postcard-High quality

Inkjet postcard-Standard

Inkjet plain paper-High quality

Inkjet plain paper-Standard

Glossy paper-Super high quality

Glossy paper-High quality

Glossy paper-Standard

- If you are using Mac OS X v10.5 or later and specify [300 dpi] for [Resolution], [Use error diffusion] - [Dithering] will be unavailable. [Dithering] will change automatically to [Photographic].

- If you are using Mac OS X v10.3.x or v10.4.x and specify the following combinations of printing modes, [Use error diffusion] - [Dithering] will be unavailable. [Dithering] will change automatically to [Photographic].

Plain paper-High speed

Postcard-High speed

Envelope-High speed

Thick paper-High speed

- If you are using Mac OS X v10.5 or later and select the [Color Ink Saving] check box, [Color profile] will change automatically to [Presentation].
- If you are using Mac OS X v10.3.x or v10.4.x and specify [Color Ink Saving] for [Color Mode], [Color profile] will change automatically to [Presentation].
- If you are using Mac OS X v10.5 or later, possible combinations of [Resolution], [Paper Type], [Number of print head passes], and [Bi-/Uni-directional printing] are as follows:

Resolution	Paper Type	Number of Print Head Passes	Bi-/Uni-directional Printing
300 dpi	Plain	1	Bidirectional
300 dpi	Postcard	1	Unidirectional
300 dpi	Envelope	1	Unidirectional
300 dpi	Thick	1	Unidirectional
600 dpi	Plain	1	Bidirectional
600 dpi	Plain	1	Unidirectional

Resolution	Paper Type	Number of Print Head Passes	Bi-/Uni-directional Printing
600 dpi	Postcard	1	Unidirectional
600 dpi	Postcard	2	Unidirectional
600 dpi	Envelope	1	Unidirectional
600 dpi	Envelope	2	Unidirectional
600 dpi	Thick	1	Unidirectional
600 dpi	Thick	2	Unidirectional
600 dpi	Inkjet Postcard	1	Unidirectional
600 dpi	Inkjet Postcard	2	Unidirectional
600 dpi	Inkjet Plain Paper	1	Unidirectional
600 dpi	Inkjet Plain Paper	2	Unidirectional
600 dpi	Glossy	2	Unidirectional
1200 dpi	Glossy	2	Unidirectional
1200 dpi	Glossy	4	Unidirectional

If the settings you specify do not match any of the combinations in the table, they will be automatically reconfigured in the following order:

- (1) Resolution (highest priority)
- (2) Paper Type
- (3) Number of Print Head Passes
- (4) Bi-/Uni-directional Printing (lowest priority)

## Monitoring and Configuring the Printer (for Macintosh)

For details about using a Macintosh to obtain a list of the printer's settings, the printer's status, or similar printer information, see the following section:

### **Checking the printer's status or changing the printer's network settings using a Web browser**

See p.112 "Using Web Browser"



# Displaying the Printer Status on a Macintosh

Using the Status Monitor, you can display the amount of ink left and other printer status details on the computer. You can also check any errors that occur in the print job queue window.

The print job queue window opens automatically when you execute a print command. Using the Status Monitor, you can also display the printer status without executing a print command.

To view the printer's status on your computer, bidirectional communication between the printer and computer must be established.

## Checking whether Bidirectional Communication is Working on a Macintosh

You can view the printer's status on your computer only if the printer and computer are communicating bidirectionally.

Use the following procedure to check whether the computer and printer are communicating bidirectionally.

5

1. **Open [Maintenance Utility].**
2. **Check that [Maintenance Utility] is displayed.**

If [Maintenance Utility] is displayed, bidirectional communication is available.

The printer's status can be checked from the computer if bidirectional communication is available.

### Reference

- For details about displaying the [Print & Fax], see p.139 "Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh".
- For details about opening the [Maintenance Utility], see p.139 "Displaying the [Maintenance Utility] on a Macintosh".

## Displaying the Status Monitor on a Macintosh

This section explains how to display the Status Monitor.

1. **Display the [Print & Fax].**  
Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, display the [Printer List].
2. **From the [Print & Fax], select the printer you want to use.**  
If you want to use a network printer, select it according to its IP address.
3. **On the [Print & Fax] toolbar, click [Utility].**  
The [Maintenance Utility] appears.
4. **Click [Status Monitor].**  
The Status Monitor is launched.

 **Reference**

- For details about displaying the [Print & Fax], see p.139 "Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh".

# Opening Help on a Macintosh

Help is useful for learning about what the various settings do and how to specify them. Use the following procedure to open the printer driver Help and Mac Help under Mac OS X.

---

## Displaying Help from the Print dialog on a Macintosh

---

You can display Help from the Print dialog.

1. **Click the Finder icon on the dock.**
2. **Start Help Viewer from Mac Help, click [Home], and then select [RICOH RPCS Raster Help].**

The Help screen appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, start Help Viewer from Mac Help, and then select [RICOH RPCS Raster Help] from the [Library] menu.

### Reference

- For details about displaying the [Setup] or [Paper Feed] settings, see p. 139 "Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh".

---

## Displaying Mac Help

---

This section explains how to open Mac Help.

1. **Click the Finder icon on the dock.**
2. **From the [Help] menu, select [Mac Help].**

The Help Viewer is launched and Mac Help appears.

## Maintaining (for Macintosh)

For details about maintaining and managing the printer with a Macintosh computer, see the following sections:

### **Checking the number of printed pages using the control panel**

See p.161 "Checking the Number of Printed Pages using the Control Panel (Counter Menu)"

### **Performing maintenance using the control panel**

See p.163 "Performing Maintenance using the Control Panel (Maintenance Menu)"

### **Specifying system settings using the control panel**

See p.182 "Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu)"

### **Selecting the control panel language**

See p.191 "Selecting the Control Panel Language"

5

### **Restricting printer functions**

See p.193 "Restricting Printer Functions"

### **Replacing a print cartridge**

See p.195 "Replacing a Print Cartridge"

### **Replacing an ink collector unit**

See p.201 "Replacing an Ink Collector Unit"

### **Cleaning**

See p.204 "Cleaning"

### **Moving**

See p.205 "Moving"

### **Disposing**

See p.207 "Disposing"

### **When not using for a long period of time**

See p.208 "When Not Using for a Long Period of Time"

# Troubleshooting (for Macintosh)

## Printing will not start

See p.218 "Printing Will Not Start"

## Paper is not fed or delivered normally

See p.220 "Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally"

## Paper jam

See p.222 "Paper Jam"

## Print results are not satisfactory

See p.243 "Print Results Are Not Satisfactory"

## Error & status messages on the control panel

See p.250 "Error & Status Messages on the Control Panel"

### ↓ Note

- If the custom size setting exceeds the acceptable range, the image will be printed on the OS-specified default paper size. Check the custom size setting range.

# Updating the Printer Driver on a Macintosh

---

## Checking the Version of the Printer Driver on a Macintosh

---

This section explains how to check the version of the current printer driver.

**1. Display the [Print & Fax].**

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, Display the [Printer List].

**2. Select the printer you want to use from the printer list, and then click [Info] on the toolbar.**

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, click [Show Info] on the [Printers] menu.

The [Printer Info] dialog box opens.

**3. Check the displayed version number.**

**Reference**

- For details about displaying the [Print & Fax], see p.139 "Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh".

5

---

## Uninstalling the Printer Driver from a Macintosh

---

To update the printer driver, you need to uninstall the current printer driver and then install the new one.

**★ Important**

- The printer driver cannot be uninstalled if other applications are running. We recommend you close all applications before attempting to uninstall the driver.
- To uninstall a printer driver, you must log on as administrator. For details, consult the administrator of the Macintosh in question.
- When you uninstall a printer driver, the Status Monitor installed with the driver is also uninstalled.

**1. On the [Apple] menu, click [System Preferences...], and then click the [Print & Fax] in the [System Preferences] dialog box.**

The [Print & Fax] appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, double-click the Printer Setup Utility icon in the [Utilities] folder in the [Applications] folder.

The [Printer List] appears.

**2. Select the printer you want to delete, and then click [-].**

The confirmation screen appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, select the printer you want to delete in the [Printer List], and then click [Delete Selected Printers] in the [Printers] menu, or click [Delete] on the toolbar.

The printer is deleted from [Printer List].

**3. Click [OK].**

The printer is deleted from [Print & Fax].

**4. Click [Quit System Preferences] on the [System Preferences] menu.**

The [System Preferences] closes.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, click [Quit Printer Setup Utility] on the [Printer Setup Utility] menu.

The [Printer Setup Utility] closes.

**5. Insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

The GX e2600 driver is not included on the provided CD-ROM. When you are using GX e2600, download the driver from the supplier's Web site, save it in an accessible folder, and then decompress it.

**6. In the [RPCS\_R] folder in the [Mac OS X 10.5 or later] folder, double-click the Uninstall\_product name icon.**

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, double-click the Uninstall\_product name icon in the [RPCS\_R] folder in the [Mac OS X 10.3 or later] folder.



The confirmation screen appears.

When you are using GX e2600, open the folder that contains the driver, and then double-click the product Uninstall\_product name icon.

**7. Click [OK].**

A dialog box for entering the user name and password opens.

If you click [Cancel], the installation dialog box closes and the printer driver is not uninstalled.

**8. Enter the administrator's user name and password, and then click [OK].**

A message confirming that the uninstallation is complete appears.

**9. Click [OK].**

**Reference**

- For details about checking the printer driver version, see p.156 "Checking the Version of the Printer Driver on a Macintosh".

## Software on the CD-ROM for Macintosh

This section describes the CD-ROM supplied with the printer.

### Files for Macintosh

The following is a list of the files on the CD-ROM.

File Name
product name_Mac_OS_X*
RPCS Raster Printer Driver for Macintosh* <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PowerPC-Based Macintosh: Mac OS X 10.3 or later</li> <li>• Intel-Based Macintosh: Mac OS X 10.4.5 or later</li> </ul>
Manuals (HTML files)

\* Not provided with the GX e2600.

### RPCS Raster Printer Drivers for Macintosh

This section gives the file locations of the different RPCS raster printer drivers and their system requirements.

#### File Location (GX e3300N/GX e3350N only)

The drivers are in the following folders on the supplied CD-ROM.

- RPCS raster printer driver for Mac OS X 10.3 or later  
**Mac OS X 10.3 or later\RPCS\_R**
- RPCS raster printer driver for Mac OS X 10.5 or later  
**Mac OS X 10.5 or later\RPCS\_R**

#### System Requirements for the Printer Drivers

- Computer  
PowerPC-Based Macintosh/Intel-Based Macintosh
- Operating Systems  
PowerPC-Based Macintosh: Mac OS X 10.3 or later  
Intel-Based Macintosh: Mac OS X 10.4.5 or later
- Display Resolution  
Minimum SVGA 800 × 600 pixels



 **Note**

- For details about using the printer driver, see the printer driver Help.

---

## **Manuals (HTML files) for Macintosh**

---

This section gives the location of the manuals.

### **File Location**

The manuals are in the following folders on the supplied CD-ROM.

MANUAL\_HTML\LIST



# 6. Maintaining

---

## Checking the Number of Printed Pages using the Control Panel (Counter Menu)

You can check and print out the printer's counter figures.

Counters show the number of prints made by the printer. Print counter numbers do not include test patterns printed using "Maintenance", system configurations printed using "List/Test Print", and counter printouts made using "Counter".

### Show Counter

- Color:  
This counter shows the total number of pages printed in color.
- Black:  
This counter shows the total number of pages printed in black and white.
- EconClr:  
This counter shows the total number of pages printed in Economy Color.

### Print

You can print out the printer's page counts, including the number of duplex-printed pages.

"Total Mono+Economy Color" combines "Total Mono Color" and "Total Economy Color".

#### Note

- Black and white files are counted as black and white prints even if color printing was specified.

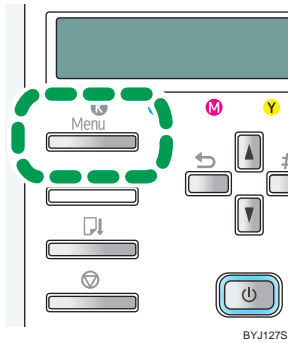
---

## Displaying the Counter

---

You can display the counter.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press [▲] or [▼] to display [Counter], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:  
Counter
```

3. Press [▲] or [▼] to display [Show Counter], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:  
Show Counter
```

4. Press [▲] or [▼], and then check the [Color], [Black], and [EconClr] on the display.

```
Color: 12345678  
Black: 12345678
```

```
EconClr: 12345678
```

5. Press the [Online] key.

The operating screen appears.

# Performing Maintenance using the Control Panel (Maintenance Menu)

Using the Maintenance menu, you can specify printer maintenance settings for adjusting settings such as gradation and density.

## Nozzle Check

You can print a test pattern to check whether the inks are being correctly ejected from the print head nozzles.

## Head-cleaning

You can clean the print head.

Clean the head if certain colors are not printed or are printed faintly.

Head cleaning consumes ink.

## Head-flushing

You can clean the print head more thoroughly.

Because head flushing consumes more ink than head cleaning, do it only if the print head cannot be cleaned properly by head cleaning.

## Head Position

If bidirectionally printed lines are vertically misaligned, or if printed images are blurred, print the test pattern and adjust the print head alignment.

## Adj.Paper Feed

If printed lines are horizontally misaligned or if images are printed unevenly, print the test pattern and adjust the paper feed setting.

## Registration

Print the test pattern and align the point where printing starts for each paper feed tray.

## Date/Time

You can specify the date and time.

## Key Repeat

The key repeat function allows you to specify setting values in units of ten or scroll the display quickly by pressing and holding down a control panel key. You can enable or disable this function.

- On
- Off

Default: On

## Dry-delay (Exit)

To prevent spoiling of printed copies, select a print delivery interval to allow them to dry.

The interval must be long enough to allow a sheet to dry.

- Off
- 1 sec
- 2 sec
- 5 sec
- 10 sec
- 15 sec
- 20 sec

Default: Off

### **Dry-delay (Dup)**

To prevent spoiling of duplex-printed copies, select a print delivery interval to allow them to dry.

The interval must be long enough to allow a duplex-printed sheet to dry.

The GX e2600 has no duplex printing capability and therefore does not feature this function.

- Off
- 1 sec
- 2 sec
- 5 sec
- 10 sec
- 15 sec
- 20 sec

Default: Off

### **Paper Feed Test**

You can eject a sheet of paper without printing anything on it.

### **De-condensation**

To remove moisture from inside the printer, you can eject three sheets of paper without printing anything on them.

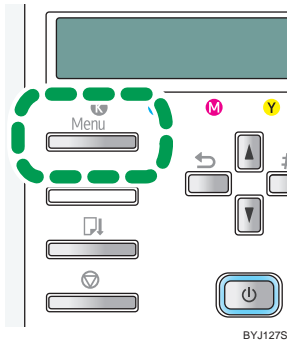
---

## **Nozzle Check**

---

Follow the procedure below to check whether the print head nozzles are clogged up or not by printing a nozzle check test pattern.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
Maintenance
```

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Nozzle Check], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Maintenance:
Nozzle Check
```

4. Press the [#Enter] key.

```
Press # to
print pattern
```

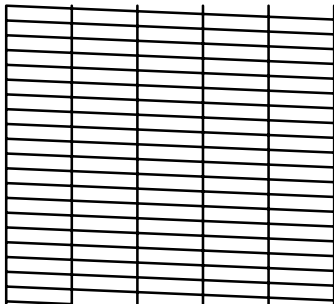
A test pattern is printed.

5. Press the [Online] key.

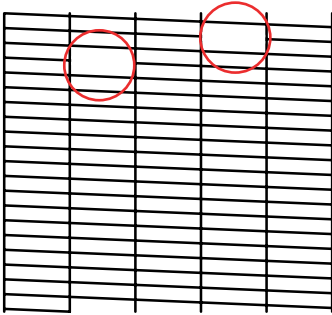
The initial screen appears.

6. Check the printed test pattern.

Normal



When print heads are clogged



BPR212S

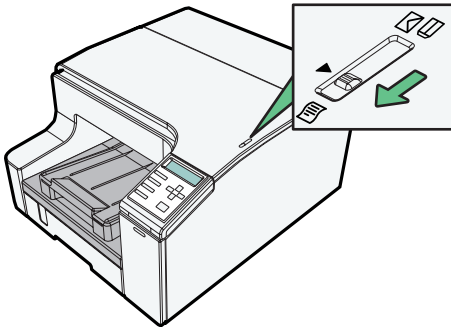
## Head-cleaning

Follow the procedure below to perform a normal print head cleaning. Perform a head cleaning when a particular color cannot be printed or print images are blurred. Head cleaning consumes ink.

When the Print cartridge is empty, replace it instead of performing a print head cleaning. After a Print cartridge is replaced, a print head cleaning will be automatically performed.

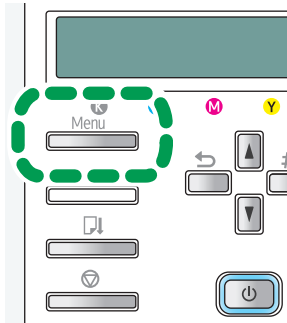
6

1. Slide the envelope selector  to the forward position.



BPR137S

2. Press the [Menu] key.



BYJ127S



3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

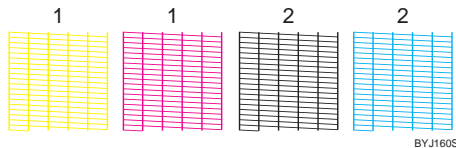
```
Menu:
Maintenance
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Head-cleaning], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Maintenance:
Head-cleaning
```

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a color, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Head-cleaning:
All Heads
```



1. Head 1 (Yellow/Magenta)

2. Head 2 (Black/Cyan)

6. Press the [#Enter] key.

```
Press # to
clean heads
```

Head cleaning starts.

```
Maintenance
in process...
```

7. Press the [Online] key.

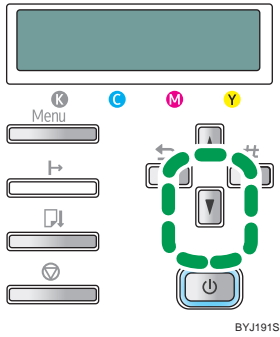
The initial screen appears.

## No-Fuss Head Cleaning

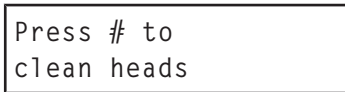
When the machine is online, you can clean the cyan, magenta, yellow, and black print heads with just a couple of keystrokes.

```
-22, -27
```

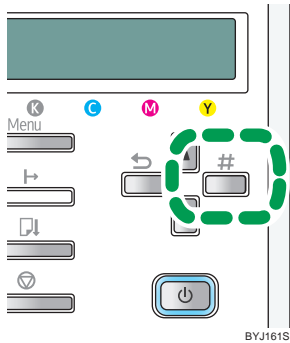
1. Press the [▼] key.



The following message appears:



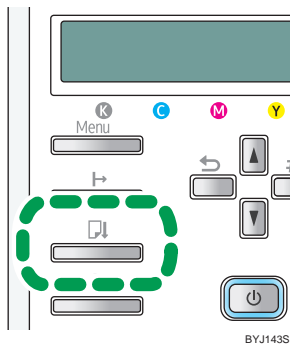
2. Press the [#Enter] key.



Head cleaning starts.

-17

1. Hold the [Form Feed] key down for three seconds.



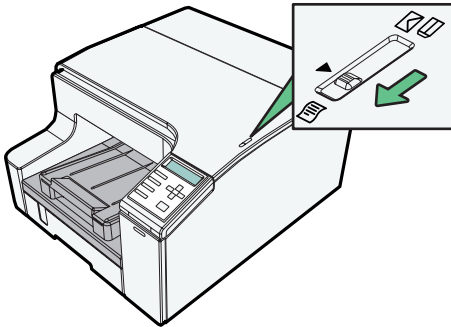
Head cleaning starts.

## Head-flushing

Follow the procedure below to perform a thorough print head cleaning. Since this consumes more ink than a normal head cleaning does, perform this when the problem persists after performing a normal head cleaning.

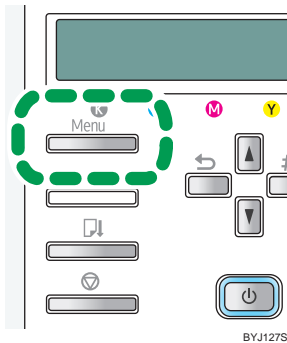
When the Print cartridge is empty, replace it instead of performing a print head cleaning. After a Print cartridge is replaced, a print head cleaning will be automatically performed.

1. Slide the envelope selector  to the forward position.



BPR137S

2. Press the [Menu] key.



BYJ127S

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

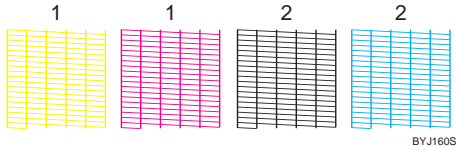
```
Menu:
Maintenance
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Head-flushing], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Maintenance:
Head-flushing
```

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a color, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Head-flushing:
All Heads
```



- 1. Head 1 (Yellow/Magenta)
- 2. Head 2 (Black/Cyan)

**6. Press the [#Enter] key.**

Press # to  
flush heads

Head flushing starts.

Maintenance  
in process...

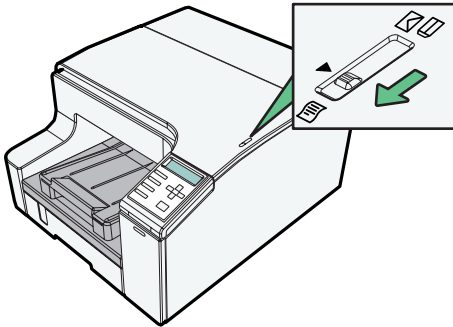
**7. Press the [Online] key.**

The initial screen appears.

## Head Position

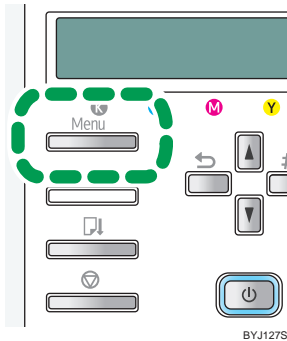
Follow the procedure below to print a test pattern and adjust the print head positions if vertical lines are printed unaligned or printed colors look blurred.

**1. Slide the envelope selector to  the forward position.**



BPR137S

**2. Press the [Menu] key.**



**3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.**

```
Menu:
Maintenance
```

**4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Head Position], and then press the [#Enter] key.**

```
Maintenance:
Head Position
```

**5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Pr.Test Pattern], and then press the [#Enter] key.**

```
Head Position:
Pr.Test Pattern
```

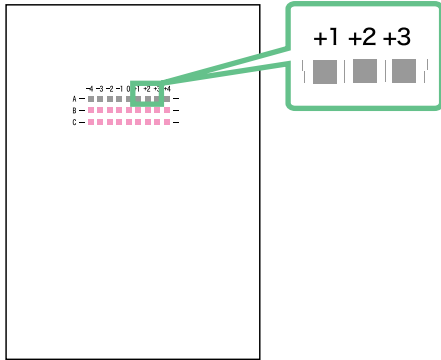
**6. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a test pattern, and then press the [#Enter] key.**

```
Pr.Test Pattern:
High Speed
```

To adjust print head positions for all resolutions, repeat this procedure selecting the other resolution.  
A test pattern to adjust print head positions is printed.

**7. Check the optimal adjustment values on the printed test pattern.**

The optimal adjustment value is the column number above the square that is between the straight vertical lines and that is the lightest shade of gray. If the column number for the "A" line is "+2", the optimal adjustment value is for "A" is "+2".



BBF010S

8. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Adjustment], and then press the [#Enter] key.
9. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a resolution from step 5, and then press the [#Enter] key.

Adjustment:  
High Speed

10. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a line, and then press the [#Enter] key.

Adjustment:  
1.A

11. Enter the optimal adjustment values from step 6, and then press the [#Enter] key.

A:  
(-4, +4)            0

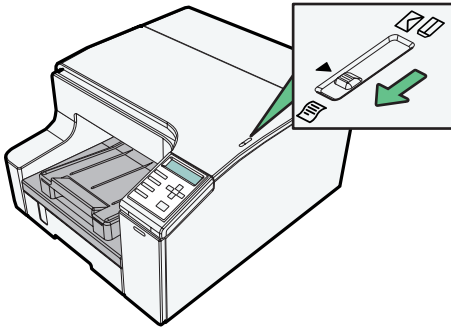
12. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

## Adj.Paper Feed

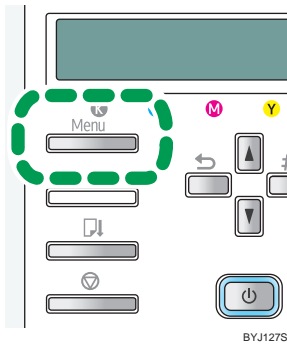
If horizontal lines are printed unaligned, print images are patchy, or a black or white line is printed at regular intervals, print a test pattern, and then adjust the paper feed setting.

1. Slide the envelope selector to  the forward position.



BPR137S

2. Press the [Menu] key.



BYJ127S

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
Maintenance
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Adj.Paper Feed], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Maintenance:
Adj.Paper Feed
```

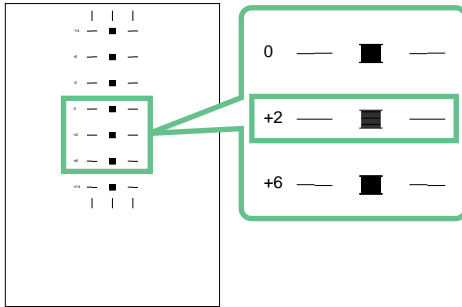
5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Pr.Test Pattern], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Adj.Paper Feed:
Pr.Test Pattern
```

A test pattern to adjust paper feed is printed.

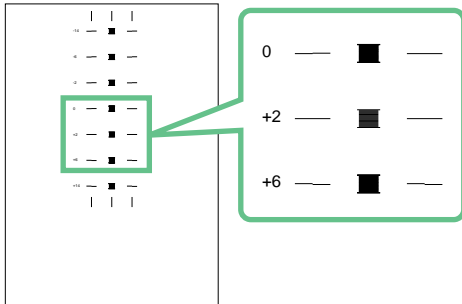
6. Check the optimal adjustment values on the printed test pattern.

The optimal adjustment value is the number that appears on the left of the lightest gray square with straight horizontal lines on both sides. When this number is "+2", the optimal adjustment value is "+2".



BPR214S

When horizontal lines beside the lightest gray square are broken, select the optimal adjustment value by referring to the lines broken in the opposite direction. When the "+2" square is the lightest gray square and the "+6" horizontal lines are broken in the opposite direction, the optimal adjustment value is between "+3" and "+5". After adjustment, check the adjustment result.



ZKX040J

6

7. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Adjustment], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Adj.Paper Feed:
Adjustment
```

8. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to enter the adjustment value (-14 to +14) from step 5, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
A:
(-14, +14)    0
```

9. Press the [Online] key.

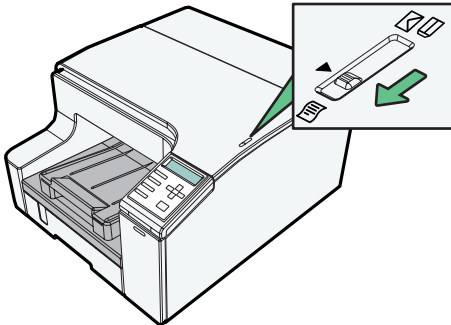
The initial screen appears.

## Registration

Follow the procedure below to adjust where to start printing on paper loaded in each paper tray after checking the test pattern printed.

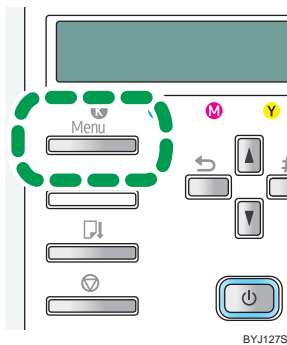


1. Slide the envelope selector to  the forward position.



BPR137S

2. Press the [Menu] key.



BYJ127S

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
Maintenance
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Registration], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Maintenance:
Registration
```

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Pr.Test Pattern], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Registration:
Pr.Test Pattern
```

6. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper tray, and then press the [#Enter] key.

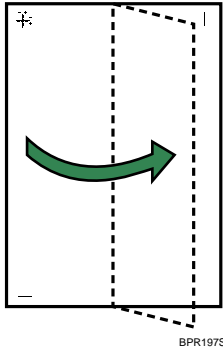
```
Pr.Test Pattern:
Tray 1
```

7. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper type, and then press the [#Enter] key.

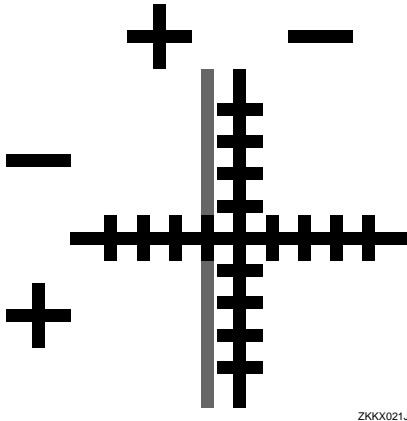
```
Pr.Test Pattern:
*Plain Paper
```

A test pattern to adjust the print start position is printed.

8. Check the optimal adjustment values on the printed test pattern.
9. Fold the test pattern sheet in half lengthwise.



10. The optimal adjustment value is the difference between the single vertical line and the cross's vertical line that you can see when the folded paper is held up to light. When the difference is one calibration mark in the "+" direction, the optimal adjustment value for the [Read Direction] is "+1.0".



11. Fold the test pattern sheet in half widthwise, and then check the adjustment value for the [Feed Direction].

Adjustment values are in 0.1 increments.

12. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Adjustment], and then press the [#Enter] key.

Registration:  
Adjustment

13. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper tray, and then press the [#Enter] key.

Adjustment:  
Tray 1

14. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper type, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Adjustment:
*Plain Paper
```

15. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to enter the adjustment values (-4.0 to +4.0) in the [Read Direction] from step 7, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Read Direction:
(-4, +4) 0.0
```

16. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to enter the adjustment values (-4.0 to +4.0) in the [Feed Direction] from step 7, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Feed Direction:
(-4, +4) 0.0
```

17. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

**Note**

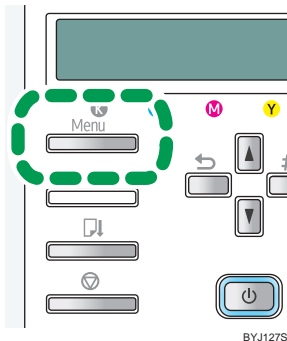
- For the bypass tray, you can adjust [Read Direction] only.
- If you select [Glossy Paper] as the paper type for Tray 1, you can adjust [Feed Direction] only.

## Setting the Date and Time

Use the following procedure to specify the date, time, and time zone.

### Date Setting

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

Menu:  
Maintenance

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Date/Time], and then press the [#Enter] key.

Maintenance:  
Date/Time

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Date Setting], and then press the [#Enter] key.

Date/Time:  
Date Setting

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to set the date, and then press the [#Enter] key.

-22, -27

Date Setting:  
30/ 8/2008

-17

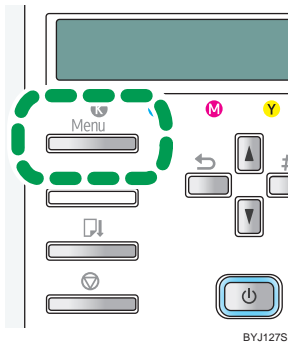
Date Setting:  
8/30/2008

6. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

## Time Setting

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
Maintenance
```

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Date/Time], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Maintenance:
Date/Time
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Time Setting], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Date/Time:
Time Setting
```

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to set the time, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
-22, -27
```

```
Time Setting:
10:31:25
```

```
-17
```

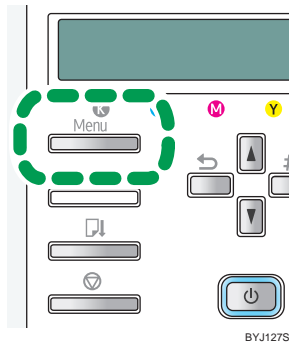
```
Time Setting:
10:31:25 AM
```

6. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

## Time Zone Setting

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:  
Maintenance
```

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Date/Time], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Maintenance:  
Date/Time
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Time Zone], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Date/Time:  
Time Zone
```

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to set the time zone, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Time Zone:  
GMT+09:00
```

6. Press the [Online] key.

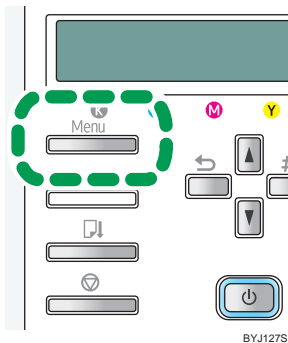
The initial screen appears.

6

## De-condensation

If the "ERR (993) Power Off On / Call Service if error reoccurs" message appears, there might be condensation inside the printer. You can dry the printer's interior by performing the de-condensation procedure.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

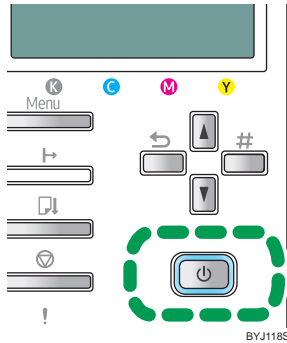
```
Menu:  
Maintenance
```

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [De-condensation], and then press the [#Enter] key.

Maintenance:  
De-condensation

Three sheets are fed through the printer without anything being printed on them.

4. Switch the printer off and then back on again.



If the error message does not reappear, the printer's interior has fully dried.

If the error persists, switch the printer off, leave it for an hour, and switch it back on. If this does not solve the problem, contact your sales or service representative.

#### ↓ Note

- If the paper is smeared with ink after being ejected, contact your sales or service representative.

#### 📖 Reference

- p.314 "Where to Inquire"

# Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu)

You can set basic functions required to use the printer. The printer can be used on factory default, but the configuration can be changed depending on the condition of the user. The changed condition holds even if the printer is turned off.

## **Prt. Err Report**

Select this to have an error report printed when a printer or memory error occurs.

- Off
- On

Default: Off

## **Auto Continue**

You can specify how the printer handles a print job if it does not have a tray containing paper of the size and type specified in the printer driver.

- Off

The printer does not print until a tray containing paper of the size and type required for the print job is inserted.

- Immediate

The printer prints even if the paper size or paper type is different from that specified.

Default: Immediate

## **Sub Paper Size**

You can specify whether to print on A4 paper if the printer is not equipped with a paper tray that can feed Letter (8 1/2×11) paper specified on the printer driver, and vice versa.

- Auto
- Off

Default: Off

## **Energy Saver**

Use Energy Saver mode to reduce the printer's power consumption.

You can specify how long the printer remains idle before it switches to Energy Saver mode. When the printer is in Energy Saver mode, it requires time to start up when it receives a print job.

- 5 minutes
- 15 minutes
- 30 minutes
- 45 minutes



- 60 minutes

Default: 5 minutes

### Notify by Email

You can specify whether or not to send notification that a printer error has occurred to a particular e-mail address.

After changing this setting, turn the printer off and then back on.

The GX e3300N and GX e3350N can be configured and monitored through a Web browser.

The GX e2600 has no networking capability and is therefore not operable through a Web browser.

- Off
- On

Default: Off

### Memory Usage

Insufficient memory can cause printing to fail or a file's image data to not be printed. If this happens, you can specify the priority assigned to the printer's memory space.

- Font Priority  
Select this if a file's image data is not printed.
- Frame Priority  
Select this if printing fails due to insufficient memory.

Default: Frame Priority

### Unit of Measure

You can switch the measurement between "mm" and "inch".

- mm
- inch

: Default: mm

: Default: inch

### Page Size

You can select the default paper size.

- A4 (210×297)
- B5 JIS (182×257)
- A5 (210×148)
- A6 (105×148)
- 8 1/2×14
- 8 1/2×11
- 8 1/2×5 1/2

- $7\frac{1}{4}\times 10\frac{1}{2}$
- $8\times 13$
- $8\frac{1}{2}\times 13$
- $8\frac{1}{4}\times 13$
- 16K (195×267)
- $4\frac{1}{8}\times 9\frac{1}{2}$
- $3\frac{7}{8}\times 7\frac{1}{2}$
- C5 Env (162×229)
- C6 Env (114×162)
- DL Env (110×220)
- Custom Size

Default: A4 (210×297)

### Paper Type

You can select the default paper type.

- Plain Paper
- Inkjet Plain Paper
- Glossy Paper
- Inkjet Postcard
- Postcard
- Envelope
- Thick Paper

Default: Plain Paper

### Preprinted Ppr

You can enable this to print on pre-printed or pre-punched paper.

- Off
- On

Default: Off

### Copies

Specify the number of pages to print.

This setting is disabled if the number of pages to print is specified by the printer driver.

- 1-999

### Duplex

Specify whether or not to print on both sides of a sheet.

- Off
- Short Edge Bind
- Long Edge Bind

Default: Off

### Blank Pg. Print

Specify whether or not to print blank pages.

- On
- Off

Default: On

### Tray Switching

You can set to switch the paper tray.

- Off
- On

Default: Off

### Uni-direct.Prt.

Specify whether to print unidirectionally or bidirectionally.

Unidirectional printing produces higher quality print, but bidirectional printing is faster.

- Env.Selector:On

Printing is done unidirectionally or bidirectionally according to the envelope selector position.

If the envelope selector is set to the rear position, printing is done unidirectionally.

If the envelope selector is set to the forward position, printing is done unidirectionally or bidirectionally according to the paper type.

- Auto Detect

Printing is done unidirectionally or bidirectionally according to the paper type, regardless of the envelope selector position.

- Always

Printing is always done unidirectionally, regardless of the envelope selector position.

Default: Env.Selector:On

### Density

You can adjust the density of the printing color.

- Light
- Standard
- Dark

**-22, -27**: Default: Standard

-17 : Default: Dark

### Color Mode

You can select the default color mode.

- Color
- Economy Color
- Black and White

Default: Color

### Recycl.Ppr.Mode

You can enable this to print on recycled paper.

- Off
- On


Default: Off

### Env.Slctr.Alert

You can specify whether or not to enable the Env.Slctr.Alert function.

To enable display of envelope messages, click the [Printer Configuration] tab in the printer properties dialog box, and then clear the [When the envelope selector is set to Envelope Mode, use unidirectional printing only] check box.

- Display Alert

If you attempt bidirectional printing on sheets when the envelope selector is in the  (rear) position, printing does not begin and an error message notifying you that the envelope selector is incorrectly set will appear.

- No Alert & Prnt

Regardless of the envelope selector position, the printer ignores the error and continues printing.

Default: Display Alert

### Pg Recov. Error

You can specify whether or not Page Recovery Error is reported.

- Display
- Do not Display

Default: Display

### Ink C.U. Space

You can check the remaining capacity of the ink collector unit.

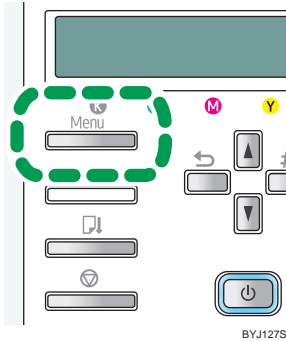
#### Reference

- For details about how to display the printer properties dialog box, see p.95 "Opening the Printing Preferences Dialog Box".

## Changing the System Menu

This section explains setting Energy Saver mode as an example of how to change a System menu setting.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to display [System], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
  System
```

3. Press [▲] or [▼] key to display [Energy Saver], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
System:
  Energy Saver
```

4. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select the lead time needed to switch to the Energy Saver mode.

```
E.Saver Timer:
  *5 minutes
```

5. Press the [#Enter] key.

The [System] screen appears.

6. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

# Specifying PCL Settings using the Control Panel (PCL Menu)

You can set conditions when using PCL for printing.

## Orientation

You can select the page orientation.

- Portrait
- Landscape

Default: Portrait

## Form Lines

You can specify the number of lines per page between 5 and 128.

Default:

- Metric version: 64
- Inch version: 60

## Font Source

You can set the location of the default font.

- Resident
- RAM

Default: Resident

When you select [RAM], you can select only fonts downloaded to the printer RAM.

## Font Number

You can specify the ID of the default font you want to use.

- 0 to 63 (Internal)
- 1 to n (Download)

The value of "n" is the number of fonts downloaded to the printer RAM.

## Point Size

You can specify the point size you want to use for the default font between 4 and 999.75 in 0.25 increments.

Default: 12.00 points

This setting is effective only for a variable-space font.

## Font Pitch

You can specify the number of characters per inch you want to use for the default font between 0.44 and 99.99 in 0.01 increments.

Default: 10.00 pitch

This setting is effective only for fixed-space fonts.

### Symbol Set

You can specify the character set for the default font. Available sets are as follows:

Roman-8, ISO L1, ISO L2, ISO L5, PC-8, PC-8 D/N, PC-850, PC-852, PC8-TK, Win L1, Win L2, Win L5, Desktop, PS Text, VN Intl, VN US, MS Publ, Math-8, PS Math, VN Math, Pifont, Legal, ISO 4, ISO 6, ISO 11, ISO 15, ISO 17, ISO 21, ISO 60, ISO 69, Win 3.0

Default: PC-8

### Courier Font

You can select a courier-type font.

- Regular
- Dark

Default: Regular

### Ext. A4 Width

You can extend the width of the printable area of A4 sheets reducing side margin width.

- On
- Off

Default: Off

### Append CR to LF

You can specify whether or not to append a CR code to each LF code to print text data clearly.

- On
- Off

Default: Off

### Resolution

You can specify the print resolution in dots per inch.

- 600×300 dpi
- 600×600 dpi
- 300×150 dpi

Default: 600×300 dpi

### Black Printing

You can select the black printing.

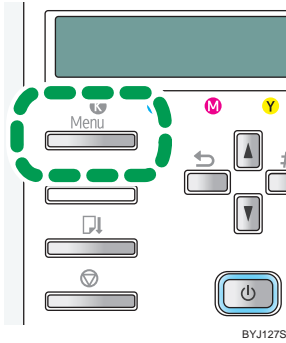
- Use 4 Colors
- Driver Setting

Default: Driver Setting

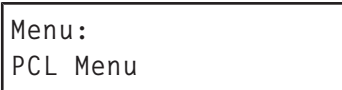
## Changing the PCL Menu

This section explains setting the symbol set mode as an example of how to change a PCL menu setting.

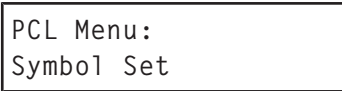
1. Press the [Menu] key.



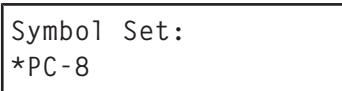
2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to display [PCL Menu], and then press the [#Enter] key.



3. Press [▲] or [▼] key to display [Symbol Set], and then press the [#Enter] key.



4. Press [▲] or [▼] key to display [PC-8], and then press the [#Enter] key.



The [PCL Menu] screen appears.

5. Press the [Online] key.

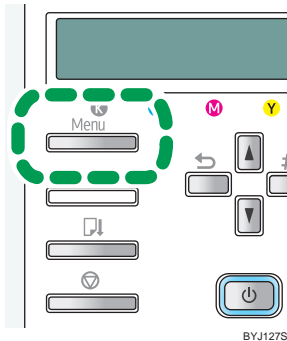
The initial screen appears.



# Selecting the Control Panel Language

This section explains how to select the language used for the settings and messages displayed on the control panel.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Language], and then press the [#Enter] key.

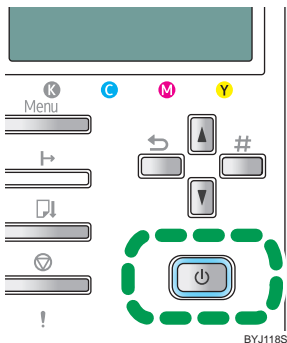
Menu:  
Language

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the language, and then press the [#Enter] key.

Language:  
\*English

The message "Power Off On to Change Setting" appears.

4. Switch the printer off and back on.



Use the following procedure to change the language setting.

1. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

2. Press the [Menu] key.

**3. Press the [▲] key once, and then press the [#Enter] key.**

The Language setting appears.

**4. In the language list (shown below), find the language you require.**

On the printer's control panel, the names of the available languages appear in English.

Language List

Language Name Displayed on Control Panel (English)	Language
Japanese	Japanese
English	English
German	German
French	French
Italian	Italian
Dutch	Dutch
Danish	Danish
Swedish	Swedish
Norwegian	Norwegian
Spanish	Spanish
Finnish	Finnish
Portuguese	Portuguese
Czech	Czech ([-22, -27] only)
Polish	Polish ([-22, -27] only)
Hungarian	Hungarian ([-22, -27] only)

**5. Select the language you require, and then press the [#Enter] key.****6. Press the [Online] key.****7. Switch the printer off and then back on.**

# Restricting Printer Functions

This section explains how to lock keys on the printer's control panel to prevent general users from changing settings and performing certain functions.

By locking certain control panel keys, you can prevent users other than the administrator from doing the following:

- Pressing the [Menu] key to display the menu
- Holding the [Form Feed] key down to clean the print head
- Pressing the [Job Reset] key to cancel print jobs
- Pressing the [Power] key to switch the printer off
- Pressing the [Online] key to switch between online and offline modes

---

## Locking the Keys

---

Use this procedure to lock the control panel keys.

1. **Simultaneously hold the [▼], [Escape], and [#Enter] keys down for 3 seconds, and then [#Enter] key.**

The following message appears:

```
Press # to  
lock
```

2. **Press the [#Enter] key.**

The following message appears:

```
Panel Locked
```

The initial screen appears.

---

## Unlocking the Keys

---

Use this procedure to unlock the control panel keys.

1. **Press the key you want to unlock.**

The following message appears:

```
Panel Locked  
Cannot use
```

2. Simultaneously hold the [▼], [Escape], and [#Enter] keys down for 3 seconds, and then [#Enter] key.

The following message appears:

```
Press # to
unlock
```

3. Press the [#Enter] key.

The following message appears:

```
Panel Unlocked
```

The initial screen appears.

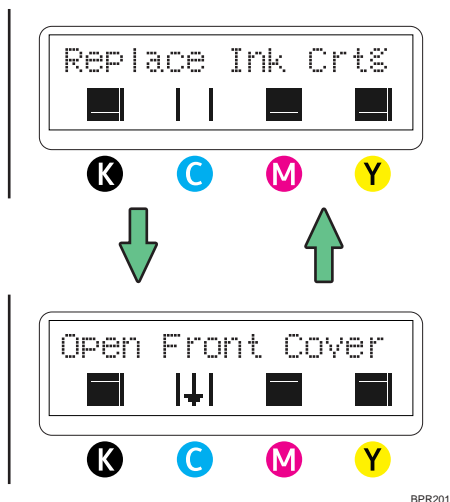
# Replacing a Print Cartridge

Follow the procedure below to replace a Print cartridge.

## Checking the Remaining Ink

Follow the procedure below to check when to replace Print cartridges using the Status monitor or the cartridge replacement indicators.

### Checking the cartridge replacement indicators of the printer control panel



BPR201S

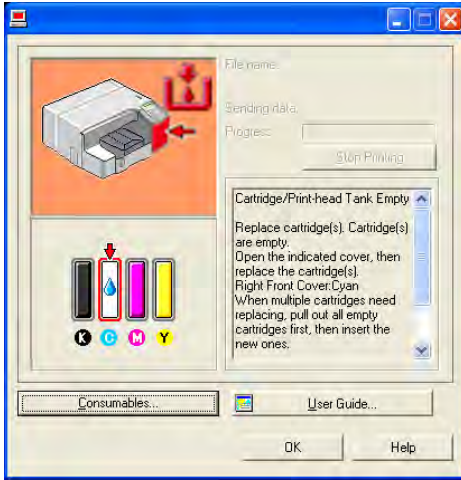
The illustration above indicates the control panel is indicating that the cyan print cartridge is empty.

### Checking Using the Status Monitor

1. Open the printer properties dialog box.
2. Click the [Maintenance] tab.
3. Click [Display Status Monitor].

The Status monitor dialog box appears.

#### 4. Check the cartridge status.



The illustration above indicates the cyan ink has completely run out.

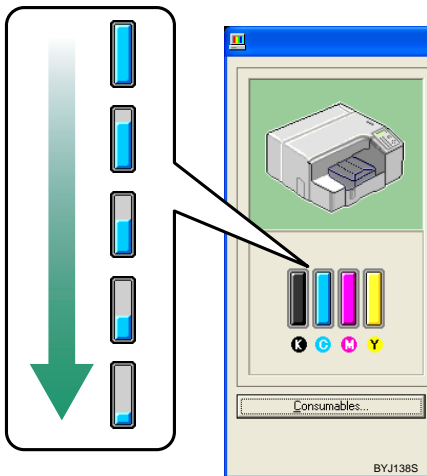
A red background in the image indicates that printing is not possible. Check which color of cartridge needs to be replaced, and then replace it.

6

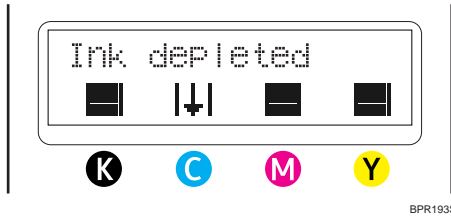
From left to right, the cartridge replacement indicators display the status of the black (K), cyan (C), magenta (M), and yellow (Y) Print cartridges.

#### ↓ Note

- The cartridge status can be used for determination of cartridge change.



- A message indicating to replace a print cartridge can be also checked on the control panel.



### Reference

- Be sure to insert the print cartridges correctly. If you insert them incorrectly, Status Monitor might not be able to detect the amount of ink that is remaining in the cartridges. For details about handling the print cartridges, see p. 199 "Handling Print Cartridges".

## Replacing a Print Cartridge

Follow the procedure below to replace an empty Print cartridge.

Clear any errors, such as when there is a paper jam or when no paper is loaded, before replacing a Print cartridge.

### CAUTION

- If ink comes into contact with your eyes, rinse immediately in running water. For other symptoms, consult a doctor.
- If ink is ingested, induce vomiting by drinking a strong saline solution. Consult a doctor immediately.
- If your skin comes into contact with ink, wash the affected area thoroughly with water or soap and water.
- Keep the ink or ink container out of reach of children.

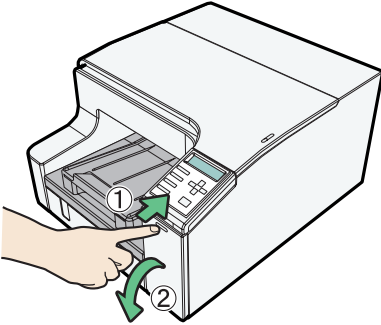
### Important

- **Take care to install the cartridges in the correct position.**

#### 1. Remove the Print cartridges' packaging.

If multiple cartridges are empty, replace all the empty cartridges. You can shorten the time for needed replacement.

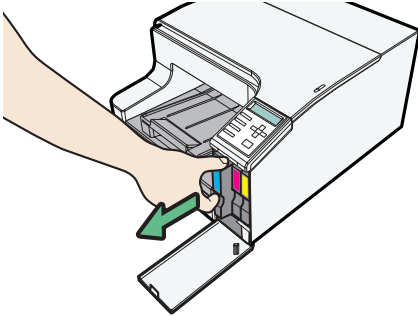
2. While pressing the recessed area (①) of the right front cover, open the cover (②).



BPR113S

3. Take out the empty cartridges.

When doing this, be sure to hold the printer firmly so that it does not move.

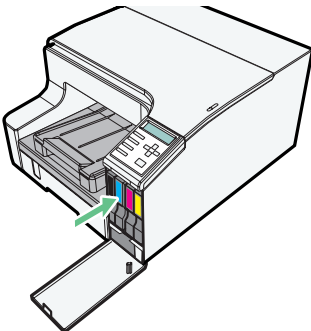


BPR140S

4. Check the cartridges' orientation, and then install them gently.

Install in the following order from the left: black, cyan, magenta, and yellow.

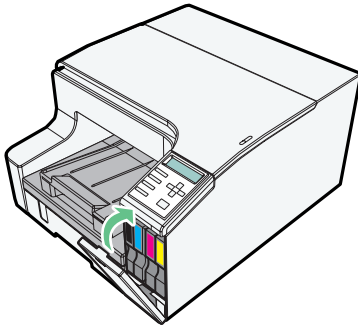
5. Push in the cartridge.



BPR141S



## 6. Close the right front cover.



BPR115S

### Reference

- p.315 "Recommended Consumables"

## Handling Print Cartridges

Important points about handling Print cartridges are explained.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- If ink comes into contact with your eyes, rinse immediately in running water. For other symptoms, consult a doctor.
- If ink is ingested, induce vomiting by drinking a strong saline solution. Consult a doctor immediately.
- If your skin comes into contact with ink, wash the affected area thoroughly with water or soap and water.
- Keep the ink or ink container out of reach of children.

### About Print cartridges

- Print cartridges comply with the manufacturer's safety specifications. To ensure safety and reliability, use genuine Print cartridges.
- When using the printer for the first time, install the Print cartridges supplied with the printer.
- As soon as you install the supplied print cartridges, the printer begins feeding ink to the print heads. Be sure not to reinstall used print cartridges.

### Using Print cartridges

- Print cartridges should be used up before their expiry date, ideally within six months of being removed from their packaging.
- Do not open the package of a Print cartridge until the cartridge will be installed in the printer.
- Do not touch the print cartridges' ink inlets or chip contacts.
- Do not shake Print cartridges strongly. Ink may leak out.

- Do not take apart Print cartridges.
- Do not open the right front cover except when installing Print cartridges. Do not turn off the power or unplug the power cord during the process of installing the cartridges.
- Always confirm the color of a Print cartridge before installing it.
- Do not remove a Print cartridge once it has been installed unless necessary.
- Do not remove a Print cartridge while printing is being performed. Printing will stop.
- For print quality and consistency, this printer always uses all the available ink colors (black, cyan, yellow, and magenta) to produce print images. Even if your print image is black and white or [Black and White] is selected in the printer properties dialog box, all ink colors will still be used.
- Printing stops if one of the print cartridges becomes empty. If a cartridge containing a color ink such as cyan, yellow, or magenta becomes empty, you cannot print, even in black/white. If a message prompting you to change the print cartridge appears, change the cartridge as soon as possible.

### **Storing Print cartridges**

- Store print cartridges at a temperature of between -30 and 43°C.

## **6**

### **Ink consumption**

- To protect the print head and ensure print quality, the printer performs periodic maintenance and print head cleaning when it is switched on and before printing. Both of these operations consume ink.
- The amount of ink consumed during cleaning depends on the cartridge size.

# Replacing an Ink Collector Unit

Follow the procedure below to replace an ink collector unit.

## **WARNING**

- Keep the polythene materials (bags, gloves, etc.) supplied with this machine away from babies and small children at all times. Suffocation can result if polythene materials are brought into contact with the mouth or nose.

## **CAUTION**

- Keep the ink collector unit out of reach of children.
- When replacing the ink collector unit, be careful not to spill ink on your clothes or nearby objects. Ink stains can be hard to remove.
- If ink comes into contact with your eyes, rinse immediately in running water. For other symptoms, consult a doctor.
- If ink is ingested, induce vomiting by drinking a strong saline solution. Consult a doctor immediately.
- If your skin comes into contact with ink, wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water.

## **Important**

- **Do not use an ink collector unit that has not been used for a long time.**
- **Do not touch the ink collector unit' chip contacts.**
- **Attach or detach the ink collector unit only when you replace it.**
- **Take care not to drop the ink collector unit.**
- **Take care not to drop the ink collector unit when putting it in the supplied plastic bag. The bag might tear, causing ink to spill.**
- **Make sure the ink collector unit is fully inserted. If it is not, ink will leak inside the printer.**

Replace the ink collector unit when the following message appears on the control panel:

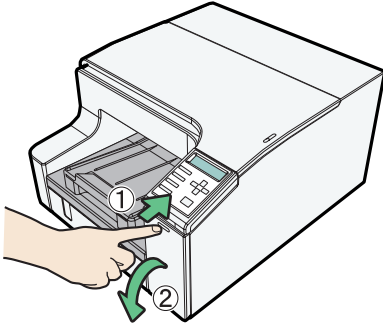
The following message appears when the ink collector unit is full.

Ink Collector  
Unit is Full

Replace Ink  
Collector Unit

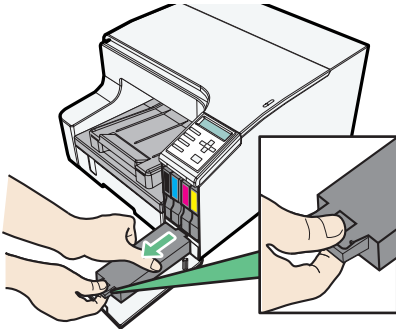
1. **Remove the ink collector unit' packaging.**

2. While pressing the recessed area (①) of the right front cover, open the cover (②).



BPR113S

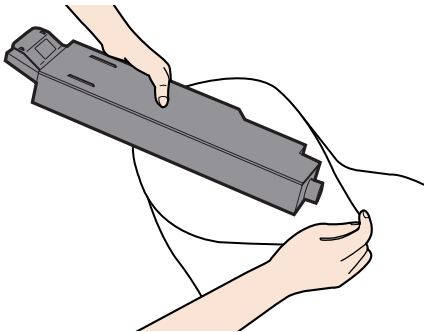
3. Wait at least five seconds, and then remove the full ink collector unit from the printer.



BPR185S

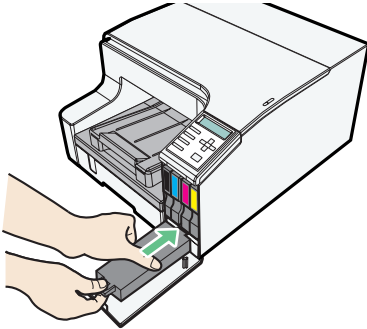
When pulling the unit out, keep the unit level and press on the area marked "Push".

4. Put the Ink collector unit in the supplied plastic bag.



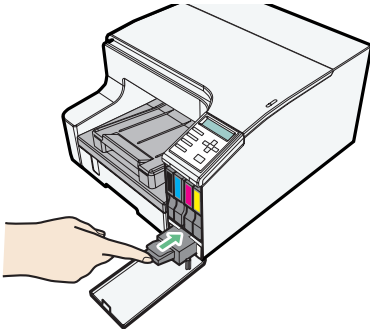
BPR186S

**5. Insert the new ink collector unit.**



BPR187S

**6. Slide the ink collector unit carefully into the printer, until you hear it click.**



BPR194S

**7. Close the right front cover.**

# Cleaning

Clean the outside of the printer regularly to maintain the condition of the printer.

## **WARNING**

- To avoid hazardous electric shock, do not remove any covers or screws other than those specified in this manual. When the machine needs to be checked, adjusted, or repaired, contact your service representative.
- Do not take apart or attempt any modifications to this machine. There is a risk of fire, electric shock, explosion or loss of sight.

To clean the exterior of the printer, wipe it with a soft, dry or damp cloth. If the dirt does not come off, wipe the printer first with a cloth moistened with a neutral detergent, then with a damp cloth, and finally with a dry cloth.

## **Important**

- Do not use volatile chemicals like benzene or thinner, or insecticides on the printer. Using these chemicals could deform, crack, or change the color of the printer.
- When wiping the printer with a cloth moistened with detergent, be sure to wipe only the exterior.

6

---

## Cleaning the Power Cable Plug

---

This section describes precautions for cleaning the power cable plug.

## **CAUTION**

- Be sure to disconnect the plug from the wall outlet and clean the prongs and the area around the prongs at least once a year. Allowing dust to build up on the plug constitutes a fire hazard.

# Moving

The precautions when moving the printer a short distance or long distance are explained.

## Moving a Short Distance

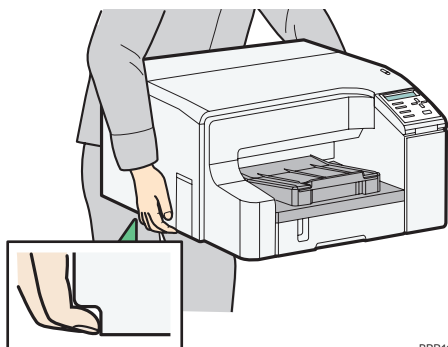
Take the following precautions when moving the printer a short distance - for instance, when attaching an optional tray or relocating the printer inside the same room.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- The machine weighs around 13.6 kg (30.0 lb) (16.1 kg (35.5 lb) with options installed).
- Careless handling and over exertion when lifting can result in breakage and/or injury.

### ★ Important

- Be sure to keep the printer level. If it is unduly tilted, ink will leak from the ink collector.
1. Turn the power off, disconnect the USB cable, or ethernet cable, and then unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.  
Before moving the printer, be sure to disconnect the power cord from the printer, too.
  2. Lift the printer and move it to the place where you want to install it.



BPR112S

Grip the indented area at the base of the printer's sides, as shown. Lift and carry the printer slowly and carefully.

Make sure the power cord is not trapped under the printer.

## Moving a Long Distance

1. Turn the power off, disconnect the USB cable, or ethernet cable, and then unplug the power cord from the wall outlet. Do not remove the print cartridges. Remove the paper.

- 2. Pack the printer for transport when moving it a long distance such as when changing office or residence. Disconnect all cables, place the printer in the box it was in when purchased, and transport in a level manner.**

Contact sales or service representative for details.

 **Note**

- The inside of the printer may become dirty if the printer is not level when transported.
- When you move the printer, unplug the power cord from the printer, too.



# Disposing

Consult with an authorized dealer to dispose of the printer.

When disposing of the printer yourself, be sure to comply with local disposal regulations.

## When Not Using for a Long Period of Time

If the printer will not be used for a long time, turn its power off, disconnect the USB cable, and then unplug it from the wall outlet. It is recommended to print at least once a month, because the printer consumes a considerable amount of ink for periodic maintenance and print head cleaning when switched on after a long period of inactivity.

Be careful of the following:

- The nozzles of the print heads may dry out and become clogged. To prevent this, periodically print something. Even if you do not print anything, turn the printer on for a few minutes once a month.
- If you do not use the printer for a long period of time, always check if the nozzles are clogged by printing a nozzle check test pattern. Clean the print heads as necessary, and then begin printing.
- If you try to use the printer after it has been out of use for a long time, it may not print properly even if head cleaning is carried out several times. If this is the case, carry out head flushing. If the print heads are still clogged, leave the printer for about ten minutes, and then print the nozzle check pattern. If the problem persists, switch the printer off and leave it for at least eight hours. This should unclog the print heads.

6

### ↓ Note

- After head cleaning is performed multiple times, clogged ink will dissolve over time, and normal printing may become possible.
- If there is no improvement after performing the steps above, contact sales or service representative.

### 📖 Reference

- p.314 "Where to Inquire"
- p.164 "Nozzle Check"
- p.166 "Head-cleaning"
- p.169 "Head-flushing"

# 7. Troubleshooting

## Software Cannot Be Installed

This section explains how to troubleshoot software installation problems under different environments.

### Confirming Installation

Check whether the software has been installed.

Checking icons	<p>When the printer driver is properly installed, the icon of the printer appears in the [Printers and faxes] folder.</p> <p>When installation of User Guide is complete, User Guide icon appears on your desktop.</p> <p>If the icons do not appear, the software is not properly installed. In this case, you must repeat the installation procedure. See p.54 "Quick Install for USB".</p>
Checking the software	<p>You can install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client by clicking "Quick Install for Network" or "DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client".</p> <p>If SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is installed, the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon appears in the [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client] folder. To open the [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client] folder, select [Programs] on the [Start] menu, then select [DeskTopBinder], and then select [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client].</p>
Checking ports	<p>In the printer properties dialog box, check that USB connection or network printer is selected as a port. To check the connection, perform a test print. If the test print is not printed, see p.214 "If Test Print Fails".</p>

### Checking Your Computer Environment

Check the system requirements for installing the software.

**Quick Install for USB**

<p>The CD-ROM may not be inserted properly.</p>	<p>Check that the CD-ROM is inserted properly. Check also that it is not damaged and the CD-ROM drive is working properly.</p>
<p>The power cord or USB cable may not be properly connected.</p>	<p>Check that the power cord and USB cable are properly connected and not damaged.</p>
<p>The operating system is incompatible. There is insufficient hard disk space.</p>	<p>Check that the computer's operating system is fully compatible with this printer. See p.37 "Checking the Computer and Installation Area".</p>
<p>Other applications are not closed.</p>	<p>When installing software, quit all other applications. Installation may be disrupted if other applications are open. Also, quit any anti-virus applications that are running.</p>
<p>Windows made USB settings automatically.</p>	<p>Open Windows' Device Manager, and then, under [Universal Serial Bus controllers], remove any conflicting devices. Conflicting devices have a yellow [!] or [?] icon by them. Take care not to accidentally remove required devices. For details, see p.216 "Deleting Devices".</p>
<p>The printer is turned on before installation.</p>	<p>Switch the printer off and then on, and then try Quick Install for USB again.</p>
<p>The USB connection does not work.</p>	<p>Switch the printer off, unplug the USB cable from the printer, launch "Quick Install for USB" again, and then switch the printer on when the dialog box confirming printer driver installation appears. If this does not solve the problem, press the [Menu] key on the control panel, change "USB Setting" in [Host Interface] from [Auto] to [Full Speed], uninstall the printer driver, delete the device, and then launch "Quick Install for USB" again.</p>

<p>An error occurs during software installation.</p>	<p>If an error occurs because the printer is detected as an unidentified device, follow the instructions under "The USB connection does not work". If this does not solve the problem, do the following: First reboot Windows. Then, on the [Start] menu, select [Settings], and then select [Control Panel]. Double-click the System icon, and then on the [Hardware] tab, click [Device Manager]. Under [Other Devices], select the printer, and then open its properties dialog box. On the [General] tab, click [Reinstall Driver] to reinstall the software.</p>
--	---

### Quick Install for Network

<p>The CD-ROM may not be inserted properly.</p>	<p>Check that the CD-ROM is inserted properly. Check also that it is not damaged and the CD-ROM drive is working properly.</p>
<p>The power cord or Ethernet cable may not be properly connected.</p>	<p>Check that the power cord and Ethernet cable are properly connected and not damaged.</p>
<p>The operating system is incompatible. There is insufficient hard disk space.</p>	<p>Check that the computer's operating system is fully compatible with this printer. See p.37 "Checking the Computer and Installation Area".</p>
<p>Other applications are not closed.</p>	<p>When installing software, quit all other applications. Installation may be disrupted if other applications are open. Also, quit any anti-virus applications that are running.</p>
<p>The printer's IP address has not been specified. The computer and printer are not on the same network segment.</p>	<p>If the printer cannot be found and only "Printer Port" appears in the printer selection dialog box, either the printer's IP address has not been specified or the computer and printer are not on the same network segment. Before installing the software, check the printer's IP address and the network topology. Otherwise, select "Printer Port" in the dialog box, and then install the printer driver. If you do this, SmartDeviceMonitor for Client will not be simultaneously installed, so install it afterwards, and then configure the port.</p>

<p>A newer version of SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is already installed.</p>	<p>If the version of SmartDeviceMonitor for Client already installed in the computer is newer than that on the CD-ROM, you cannot use "Quick Install" to install the printer driver. Install the printer driver, and then create the port.</p>
---	--

## Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed

This section explains how to troubleshoot printer driver installation problems.

<p>The printer driver installer does not start. An error occurs during installation.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the screen does not appear even when you double-click the [SETUP.EXE] icon, or if an error occurs during installation, access the CD-ROM drive from [My Computer] or [Explorer]. Double-click the [RDISSETUP.EXE] icon, and then install the printer driver by following the instructions that appear on the screen.</li> </ul>
<p>The printer driver installer does not start. An error occurs during installation.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An error occurs if the path to the location of the stored data is too long. To install a printer driver downloaded from a Web site or copied from a CD-ROM, save the printer driver directly on the hard disk, and then install it.</li> </ul>
<p>The printer driver installer does not start. An error occurs during installation.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers and faxes]. In the [Printers and faxes] window, install the printer driver. For details, see Windows Help.</li> </ul>

## USB Connection is not Automatically Detected

If the USB connection is not automatically detected, do the following:

1. Delete the printer driver.
2. Delete the device.
3. Run [Quick Install for USB] again.

If these steps do not solve the problem, contact your sales or service representative.

### Reference

- For details about deleting the printer driver, see p.215 "Uninstalling the Printer Driver".

- For details about deleting the device, see p.216 "Deleting Devices".
- For details about [Quick Install for USB], see p.54 "Quick Install for USB".

## If Test Print Fails

This section explains how to troubleshoot Test Print problems.

The power cord or USB cable or Ethernet cable is not properly connected.	Check that the power cord and USB cable, Ethernet cable are properly connected.
The port connection is not properly set.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].</li> <li>2. Click the icon of the printer, and then click [Properties] on the [File] menu.</li> <li>3. Click the [Ports] tab, and then check the printer port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select USB or network printer in the list when the selected port connection is something other than USB or network printer.</li> <li>• To connect via USB when USB does not appear in the list, you must re-install the printer driver. See p.212 "USB Connection is not Automatically Detected".</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
Ink feed is incomplete.	<p>Ink begins automatically feeding into the print heads when the power of the printer is first turned on or when a cartridge is replaced.</p> <p>Wait until ink feed is complete at which point the [Power] key stops blinking and remains lit.</p>
The printer is offline.	Check if the printer's on-line indicator is lit. If the printer is offline, press the [Online] key on the control panel to switch the printer to the on-line mode.
A printer error has occurred.	Use the control panel to check if a printer error has occurred. If it has, correct the error, and then perform the print again.

If you cannot solve the problem, contact sales or service representative.

### Reference

- If the Status monitor displays an error message, see p.255 "Status Monitor Errors".



# Uninstalling

If software was installed incorrectly or incompletely, uninstall and then reinstall it.

## ★ Important

- Before uninstalling software or deleting devices, turn off any other printers connected to your computer via USB, or disconnect the USB cable to the printers.

## ↓ Note

- Screens vary according to the operating environment.
- To reinstall the software, restart Windows.

## 📖 Reference

- When reinstalling the software, see p.64 "Confirming the Connection Method".

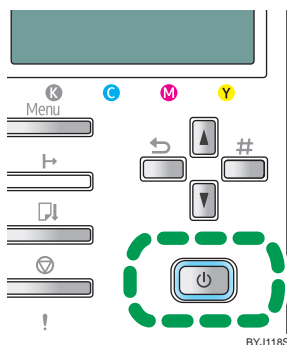
## Uninstalling the Printer Driver

To update the printer driver, uninstall the old printer driver before installing the new one.

## ★ Important

- The Status monitor installed with the current printer driver is uninstalled when the current printer driver is uninstalled.
- Registered custom settings are also deleted. To continue using registered custom settings, save them as custom settings files before uninstalling.

1. Press the printer's [Power] key to turn the printer off.



2. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
3. Click the icon of the printer, and then click [Delete] on the [File] menu.

A confirmation message appears.

4. Click [Yes].

The printer driver is uninstalled.

5. Double-click [My computer].
6. On the [Tools] menu, click [Folder Options...].
7. Click the [View] tab.
8. In the [Advanced Settings:] box, click [Show hidden files and folders], and then deselect the [Hide extension for known file types] check box.
9. Click [OK].
10. On the [Start] menu, click [Search].
11. Click the [All files and folders], and then enter a file name in the [All or part of the file name:] field.  
Enter "RCDAD12K.inf" as the INF name.
12. In the [Look in:] box, select the hard disk on which Windows is installed, and then click [Search].
13. Right-click the file displayed as the search result, and then click [Delete].  
The INF file is uninstalled.
14. After uninstalling the printer driver, restart Windows.

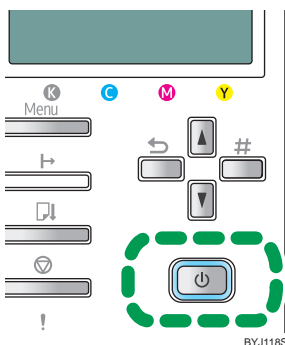
### **E** Reference

- For details about storing registered custom settings, see the printer driver Help.
- For details about updating the printer driver, contact your sales or service representative.

## Deleting Devices

If Windows automatically establishes a USB connection because of an unauthorized device, you can delete the device and any others like it. Be sure not to delete necessary devices. If USB connection is established normally, you do not need to perform this procedure.

1. Press the printer's [Power] key to turn the printer on.



2. On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
3. Click [Performance and Maintenance].

4. Click [System].
5. Click the [Hardware] tab.
6. Click [Device Manager].
7. Right-click [USB Printing Support] or [Product Name], and then click [Uninstall].  
A confirmation message appears.
8. Click [OK].
9. Click [Close].

## Printing Will Not Start

If printing will not start, check whether the power of the printer is on or whether the power can be turned on or not.

If an error occurs when you try printing, change the computer or printer driver settings.

---

### Power Cannot Be Turned On

---

If the [Power] key does not light or does not blink when it is pressed, check if there is something wrong with the power cord or wall outlet.

Check the following:

- Make sure that the power plug is firmly inserted into the wall outlet.
- Check if there is something wrong with the wall outlet. Do this by connecting another electronic product whose operation you are familiar with.

If the above steps do not solve the problem, turn the power off, pull out the power cable, and contact your sales or service representative. See p.314 "Where to Inquire".

## 7

---

### Paper Will Not Feed Even When the Power Is On

---

If printing will not start even when the power is on, check if an error has occurred using the indicators or Status monitor.

#### **An indicator is lit or blinking**

##### **Only the [Power] key is blinking.**

The printer may be receiving data or replenishing its ink. Wait momentarily for the blinking [Power] key to stop and stay lit.

#### **An error message is displayed on the Status monitor.**

Click [User Guide...] to display the page corresponding to the error where you can check how to solve the problem in more detail. See p.255 "Status Monitor Errors".

---

### An Error Occurs

---

If an error occurs when you try printing, change the computer or printer properties settings.

Do the following:

- Check the printer icon name does not exceed 32 alphanumeric characters.  
(If it does, shorten it.)

- Check whether other applications are operating.  
Close all other applications because these could be interfering with the installation. Be sure to close all resident programs also.
- Check the printer properties settings.  
In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Misc.] tab, select the [Change data processing] check box.
- Check whether the latest printer driver is being used.  
If the printer driver being used is not the latest one, update it with the latest version. See p.284 "Checking the Current Printer Driver Version".

# Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally

If the printer is operating but paper will not feed or paper jams multiple times, check the condition of the printer and paper.

## **Paper does not feed smoothly.**

Paper guides are not adjusted properly.

- The paper guides of the paper tray do not match the paper loaded. Adjust the paper guides and load the paper again. See p.45 "Loading Paper".

Paper is not loaded properly.

- The paper is not loaded properly. Load the paper correctly. See p.45 "Loading Paper".

Paper is curled.

- Remove the loaded paper and check if it is curled. If it is, straighten the curl within 2 mm (0.08 inches).

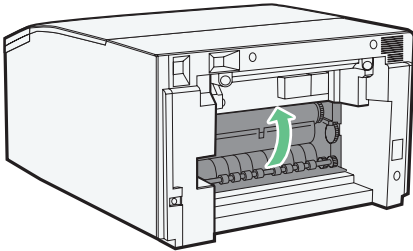
Paper that is not compatible is loaded.

- Remove the loaded paper and replace it with compatible paper. See p.89 "Non-compatible Paper".

## **Paper jams multiple times.**

The guide board is not closed.

- Make sure the guide board is closed. Press the board on both sides until it clicks into place. See p.20 "Guide to Components".



BPR142S

Push the PUSH area on both sides of the guide board until it firmly closes.

Printing densely colored images on both sides.

- When printing images containing areas of solid color that consume a lot of ink, we recommend single-sided printing.

**Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.**

Load the paper again. Remove the paper from the paper tray, fan it well, and tap it on a flat surface such as a desk to even the edges. Check the position of the paper guides of the paper tray, and then load the paper again. See p.85 "Paper Handling Precautions", p.45 "Loading Paper".

**Though a paper jam is cleared, paper does not feed.**

When a paper jam occurs, clear the paper jam, and then press the [Form Feed] key. See p.222 "Using the [Form Feed] Key to Remove Jammed Paper".

**The bypass tray cannot be selected.**

The printer driver cannot detect the bypass tray.

If the bypass tray cannot be detected, open the printer properties dialog box. In [Bypass Tray Unit] on the [Accessories] tab in the printer properties dialog box, check whether the bypass tray is shown as being attached.

**Paper is jammed in the duplex unit.**

The duplex unit is properly locked into position. but not locked.

Attach the duplex unit properly. For details, see p.268 "Duplex Unit Not Detected".

**Note**

- If an error is displayed on the Status monitor, follow the instructions to solve the problem. See p.255 "Status Monitor Errors".

# Paper Jam

This explains how to remove a paper jam.

When a paper jam error appears in the Status monitor, remove the paper from the location indicated.

If you cannot locate paper jams or jammed paper cannot be removed easily, you can check the condition of paper from the top of the printer.

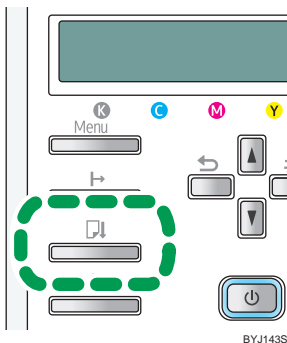
## Reference

- p.32 "Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray"

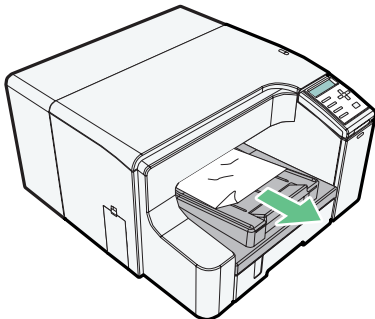
## Using the [Form Feed] Key to Remove Jammed Paper

This section explains how to use the [Form Feed] key to remove jammed paper.

1. Press the [Form Feed] key.



2. Remove jammed paper.



BPR144S

Printing starts.

## Note

- Sometimes, pressing the [Form Feed] key will not remove the jammed paper. If this is the case, pull Tray 1 out and remove the jammed paper manually.



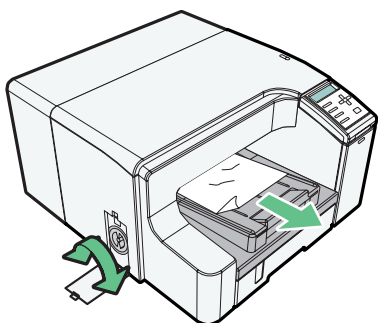
**Reference**

- p.223 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1"

## Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1

Follow the procedure below to remove paper jammed in tray 1.

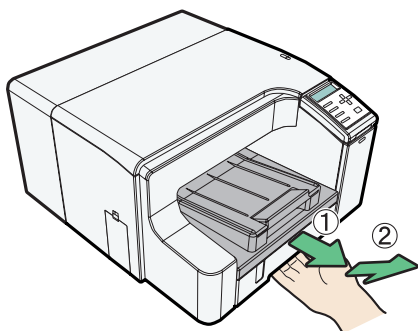
You can feed the jammed paper to output ramp by opening the left cover and turning the paper feed wheel.



BPR145S

If turning the paper wheel does not remove the jammed paper, use the following procedure to remove it:

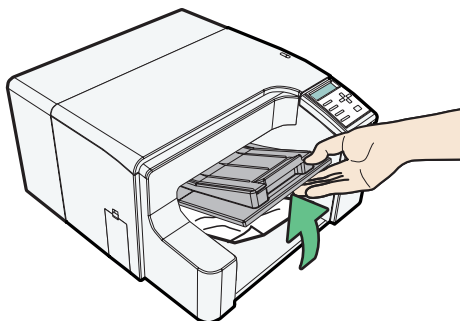
1. Hold the grip on tray 1, lift the tray slightly (①), and then pull it out (②).



BPR183S

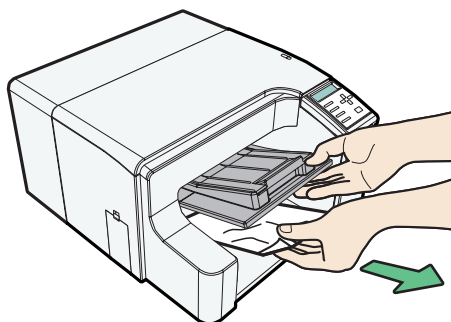
Pull tray 1 completely out. Take care not to drop it.

**2. Open the output ramp.**



BPR184S

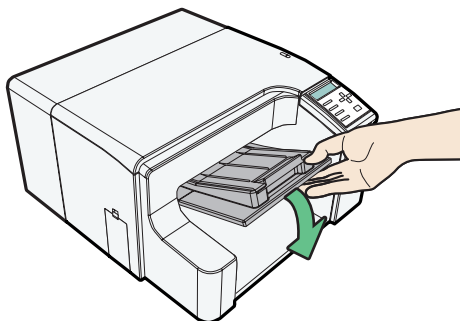
**3. Remove jammed paper.**



BPR146S

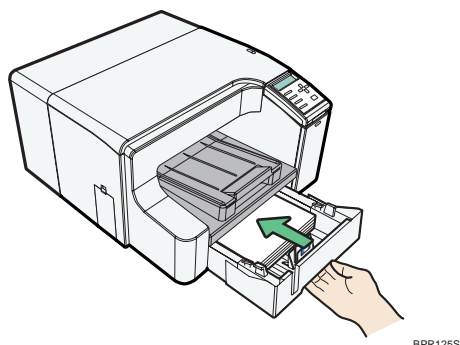
If you cannot remove the jammed paper or it is difficult to remove, the paper may be jammed inside the printer. Examine the paper carefully and remove.

**4. Close the output ramp.**

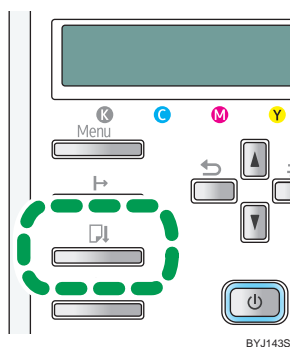


BPR202S

5. Push tray 1 gently in until it stops.



6. Press the [Form Feed] key.



Printing starts.

Blank paper may be delivered after printing resumes.

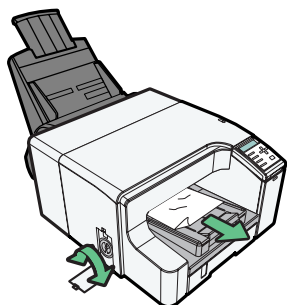
**Reference**

- p.232 "Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board"
- p.220 "Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally"

## Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional)

Follow the procedure below to remove paper jammed in the bypass tray.

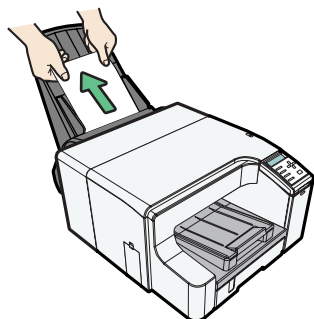
You can feed the jammed paper to output ramp by opening the left cover and turning the paper feed wheel.



BPR147S

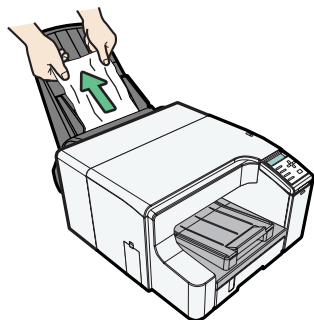
If turning the paper wheel does not remove the jammed paper, use the following procedure to remove it:

**1. Remove any paper in the bypass tray.**



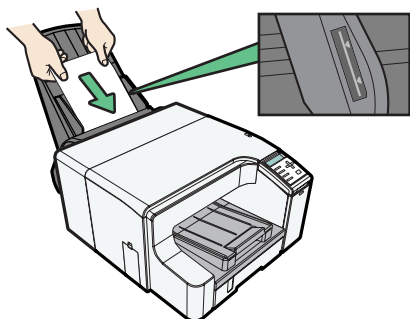
BPR148S

**2. Remove jammed paper.**



BPR149S

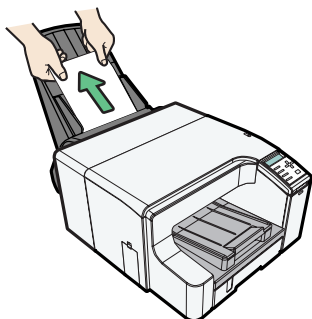
3. Load paper in the bypass tray with the side to be printed on facing up.



BPR126S

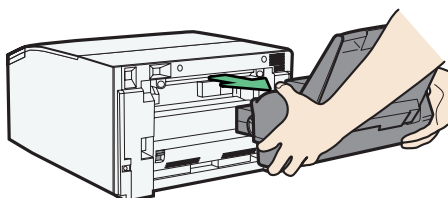
If it is difficult to remove jammed paper, follow the procedure below to remove it.

1. Remove any paper in the bypass tray.



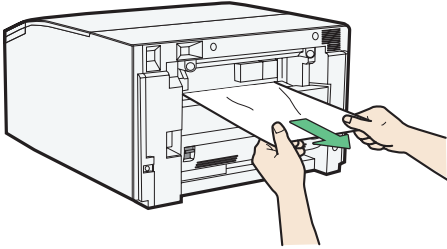
BPR148S

2. Push the bypass tray extension in.
3. Detach the bypass tray.



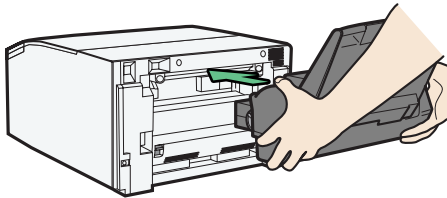
BPR108S

**4. Remove the jammed paper from the rear of the printer.**



BPR188S

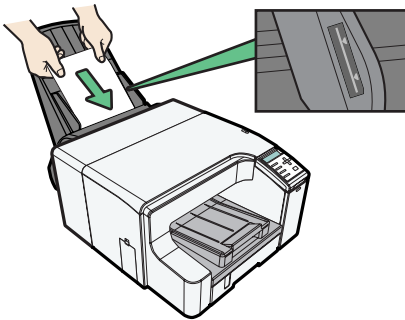
**5. Reattach the bypass tray.**



BPR109S

**6. Pull the bypass tray extension out.**

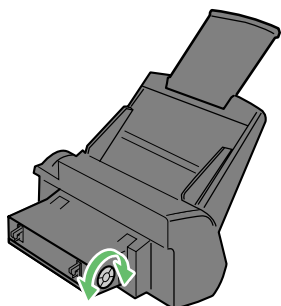
**7. Load paper in the bypass tray with the side to be printed on facing up.**



BPR126S

**↓ Note**

- If you cannot remove the jammed paper using the above procedure, clear the jam from the multi bypass tray.



BPR163S

- Turn the knob on the bypass tray clockwise to eject the jammed paper.
- If this does not eject the paper, turn the knob one-turn counterclockwise, and then turn it clockwise. This will eject the paper.

### Reference

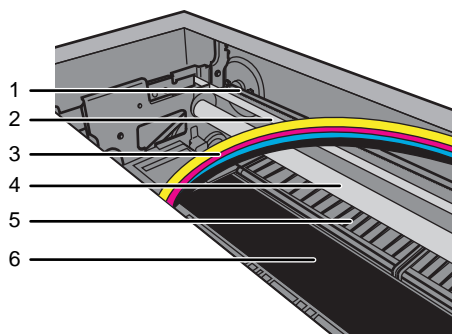
- p.220 "Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally"

## Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover

Follow the procedure below to remove paper jammed under the top cover.

### Important

- If the printer's ink tube is preventing access to the jammed paper, carefully pull the tube to the side. Do not pull the tube upward. Pulling the tube upward will damage the printer.
- Do not touch the feed belt, the transparent black band, print head rail rod, ink tubes, paper pressing board, or toothed rubber belt. Also, take care not to snag any cables or ink tubes with your sleeves.



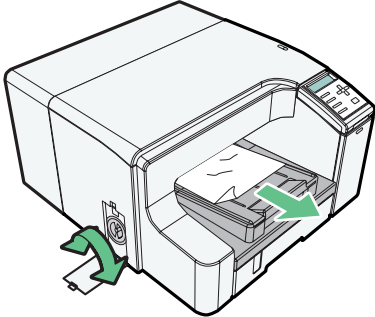
BYJ164S

1. Toothed rubber belt
2. Transparent black band
3. Ink tubes
4. Print Head Rail Rod

**5. Paper pressing board**

**6. Feed belt**

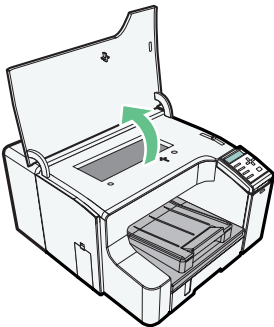
You can feed the jammed paper to output ramp by opening the left cover and turning the paper feed wheel.



BPR145S

If turning the paper wheel does not remove the jammed paper, use the following procedure to remove it:

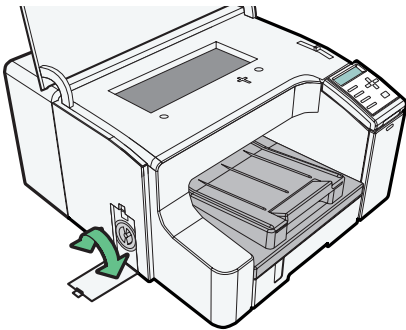
**1. Open the top cover.**



BPR178S

**2. Open the left cover, and then turn the paper feed wheel.**

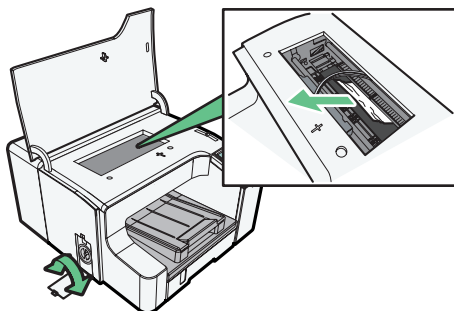
Turn the wheel while looking for the jammed paper through the top cover opening.



BYJ179S



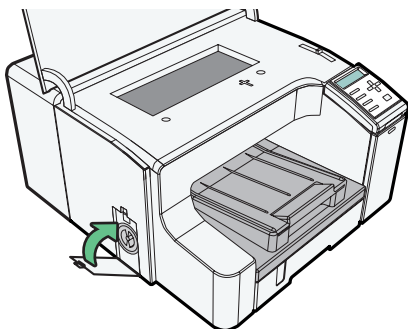
### 3. Remove the jammed paper through the top cover opening.



BPR180S

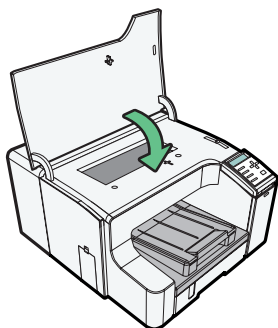
If the carriage has stopped halfway, move it to either end.

### 4. Close the left cover.



BPR181S

### 5. Close the top cover.



BPR182S

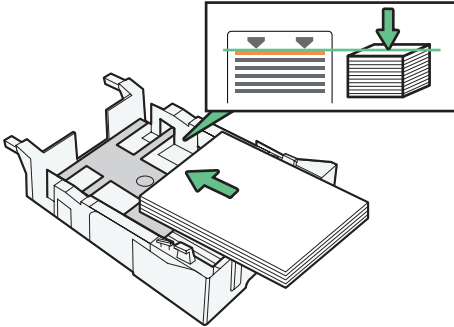
Printing starts.

After completing this procedure, print the nozzle check test pattern to make sure the print head's nozzles are not clogged.

#### ↓ Note

- Before starting a print job, be sure to attach the output ramp.

- Align the paper and reload it in the paper tray. Loading paper over the limit line in the tray may result in a paper jam.



BPR122S

**Reference**

- p.45 "Loading Paper"
- p.164 "Nozzle Check"

## Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board

7

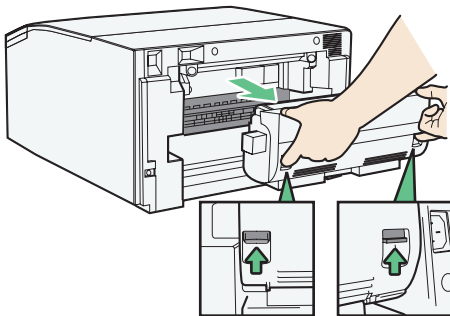
Follow the procedure below to remove paper that is jammed around the guide board.  
The GX e2600 features a rear cover in place of a duplex unit.

**★ Important**

- If the bypass tray is attached to the printer, switch the printer off and detach the duplex unit.

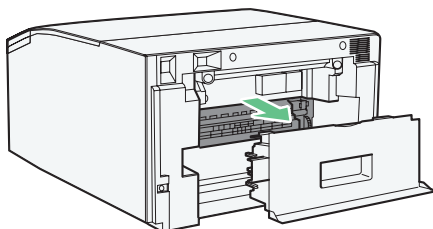
**1. Pressing the catches on both side of the duplex unit, remove the unit.**

Detach the duplex unit completely so you can see the guide board in the recess.



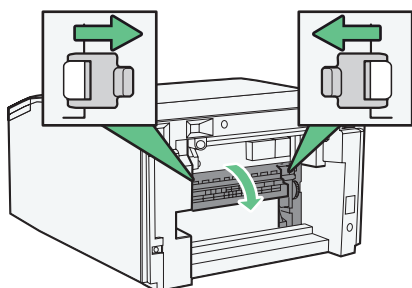
BPR150S

If using the GX e2600, remove the rear cover.



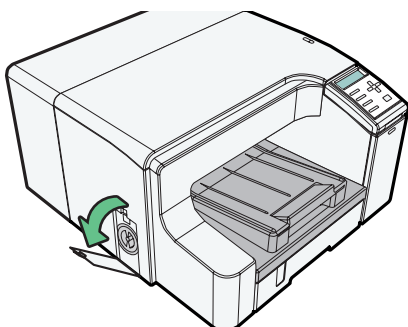
BYJ263S

2. Unlock the guide board by moving the tabs on both sides toward the middle, and then open the guide board.



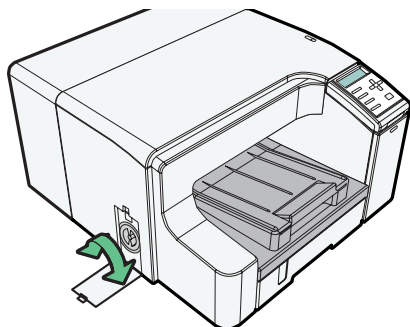
BPR151S

3. Open the left cover.



BPR152S

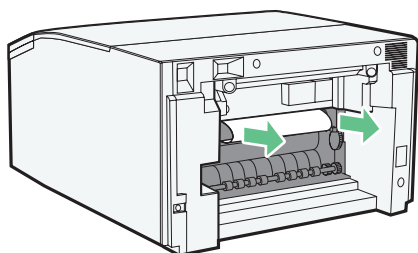
4. Turn the paper feed wheel to release paper from the feed belt.



BPR153S

Release paper from the feed belt to make it removable.

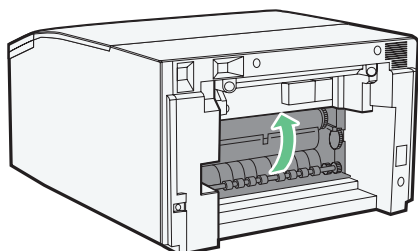
5. Insert your finger between the paper and the feed belt, and then remove the paper slowly.



BPR154S

Do not touch the feed belt.

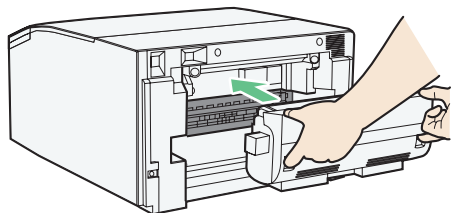
6. Close the guide board.



BPR142S

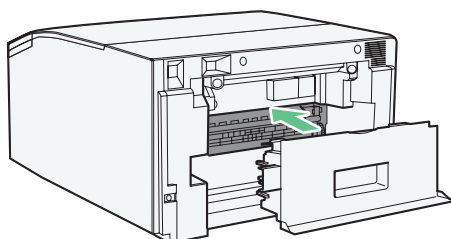
Push the PUSH area on both sides of the guide board until it firmly closes.

7. Without pressing the catches on its sides, push the duplex unit all the way in until it clicks into place.



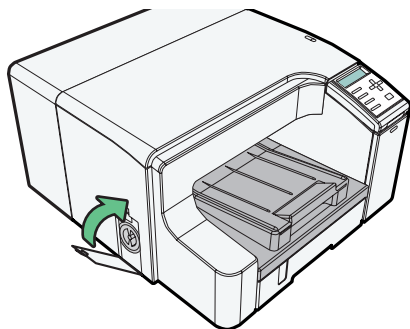
BYJ155S

If using the GX e2600, attach the rear cover.



BYJ262S

8. Close the left cover.



BPR156S

Printing starts.

**Note**

- Depending on how the paper was jammed, printing may resume from the next page, not the one jammed.

**Reference**

- p.220 "Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally"
- p.32 "Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray"

## Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit

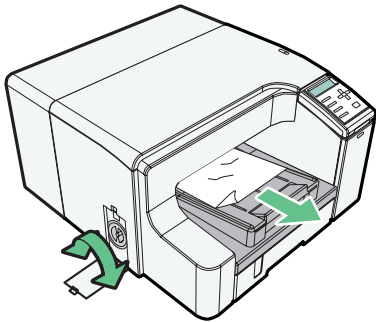
Follow the procedure below to remove paper jammed in the duplex unit.

The GX e2600 is not equipped with a duplex unit.

**★ Important**

- **Make sure the duplex unit is attached properly.**
- **If the bypass tray is attached to the printer, switch the printer off and detach the bypass tray.**

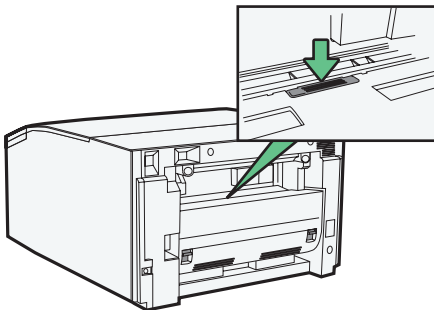
You can feed the jammed paper to output ramp by opening the left cover and turning the paper feed wheel.



BPR145S

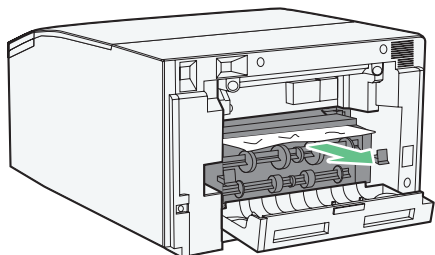
If turning the paper wheel does not remove the jammed paper, use the following procedure to remove it:

- 1. Press the duplex unit cover button at the center of the bypass tray, and then open the duplex unit cover.**



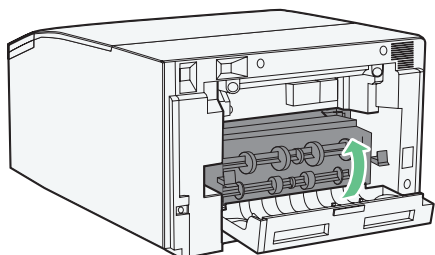
BPR157S

## 2. Remove jammed paper.



BPR158S

## 3. Close the duplex unit cover.



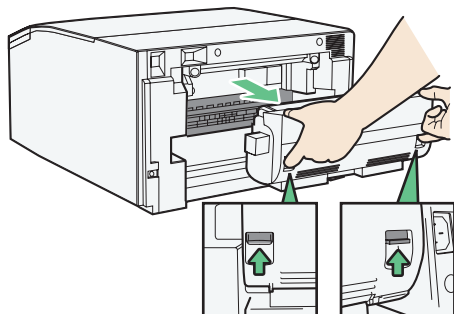
BPR159S

If the bypass tray has been detached, be sure to switch the power off before reattaching the tray.

Printing starts.

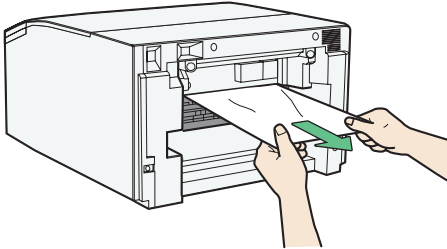
**If it is difficult to remove jammed paper, follow the procedure below to remove it.**

### 1. Pressing the catches on both side of the duplex unit, remove the unit.



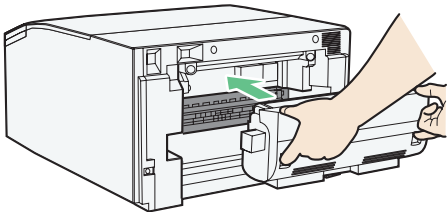
BPR150S

**2. Remove the jammed paper from the rear of the printer.**



BYJ264S

**3. Without pressing the catches on its sides, push the duplex unit all the way in until it clicks into place.**



BYJ155S

If the bypass tray has been detached, be sure to switch the power off before reattaching the tray.

**Note**

- Depending on how the paper was jammed, printing may resume from the next page, not the one jammed.

**Reference**

- p.32 "Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray"

---

## If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper

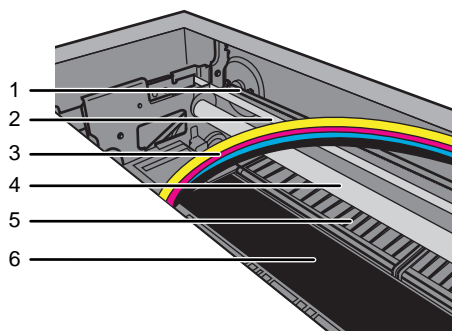
---

This section explains how to remove badly jammed paper that you cannot remove by the usual methods.

**Important**

- If the bypass tray and duplex unit are attached to the printer, switch the printer off and detach the duplex unit.
- Do not touch the feed belt, the transparent black band, print head rail rod, ink tubes, paper pressing board, or toothed rubber belt. Also, take care not to snag any cables or ink tubes with your sleeves.



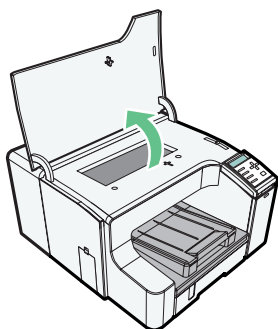


BYJ164S

1. **Toothed rubber belt**
2. **Transparent black band**
3. **Ink tubes**
4. **Print Head Rail Rod**
5. **Paper pressing board**
6. **Feed belt**

- If the printer's ink tube is preventing access to the jammed paper, carefully pull the tube to the side. Do not pull the tube upward. Pulling the tube upward will damage the printer.

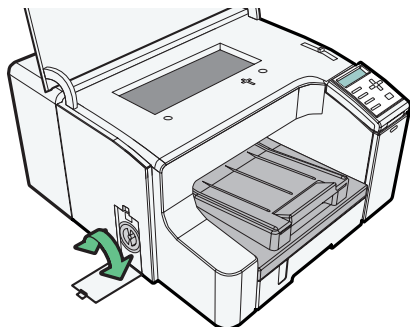
1. **Open the top cover.**



BPR178S

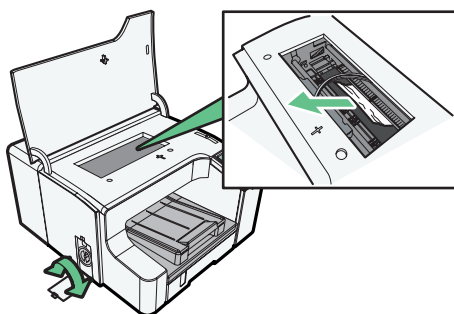
2. **Open the left cover, and then turn the paper feed wheel.**

Turn the wheel while looking for the jammed paper through the top cover opening.

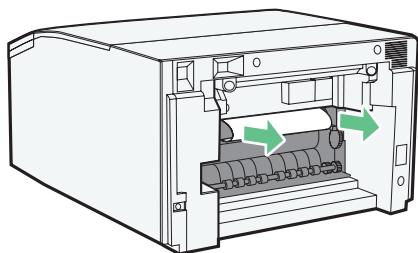


BYJ179S

**3. Remove the jammed paper through the top cover opening or back of the printer.**



BPR180S

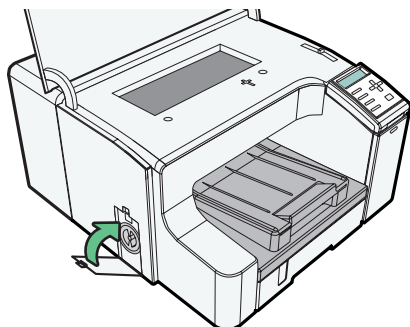


BPR154S

Before removing jammed paper from the back of the printer, remove the duplex unit.

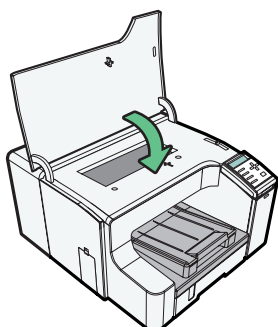
If using a GX e2600, remove the rear cover in place of the duplex unit.

#### 4. Close the left cover.



BPR181S

#### 5. Close the top cover.

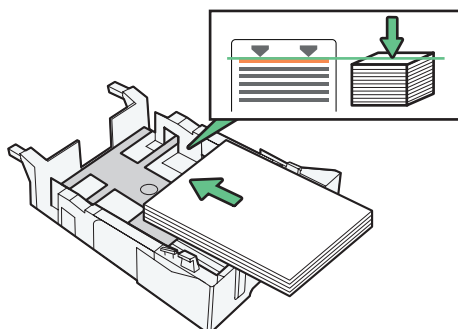


BPR182S

Printing starts.

#### ↓ Note

- Before starting a print job, be sure to attach the output ramp.
- Align the paper and reload it in the paper tray. Loading paper over the limit line in the tray may result in a paper jam.



BPR122S

#### 📖 Reference

- p.232 "Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board"

- p.45 "Loading Paper"

# Print Results Are Not Satisfactory

If print quality is poor, check the printer and printer driver settings for problems. If no problems are apparent, check the print cartridge or other consumables.

## Prints are Unsatisfactory

This section explains how to troubleshoot the printer when printing is uneven (due to the wrong amount of ink being used) or when prints are smudged, smeared, or blotchy.

### Have you printed the nozzle check test pattern?



Print the nozzle check test pattern to check whether the print head nozzles are all ejecting ink properly, and, if necessary, carry out head cleaning or head-flushing. The procedure is as follows:

1. Print the nozzle check test pattern.
2. If the pattern is patchy, clean the print head, print the pattern again, and then check the result.
3. Do not use the printer for 5 to 10 minutes then, print the nozzle check test pattern again, and then check the result.
4. Clean the print head and print the nozzle check test pattern, clean and print a second time, and then check the result.
5. If the pattern is still patchy, flush the print head, print the pattern again, and then check the result.
6. Do not use the printer for 5 to 10 minutes, print the nozzle check test pattern again, and then check the result.
7. If the pattern is still patchy, switch the printer off, do not use it for about 8 hours, switch it back on, print the nozzle check test pattern, and then check the result.

If the pattern is still patchy, contact your sales or service representative.

See p.164 "Nozzle Check", p.166 "Head-cleaning" and p.169 "Head-flushing".


### Does the envelope selector setting match?


Set the envelope selector according to the type of paper. For envelopes, set the lever to the rear position ; for everything else, set the lever to the forward position . See p.276 "Envelope Selector Position Mismatch".

### Has the printer not been used for a long time?


The ink may be dry or the nozzles of the print heads may be clogged. Print the nozzle check test pattern and clean the print heads as necessary. See p.164 "Nozzle Check", p.166 "Head-cleaning".

### Have you changed the envelope selector setting?

Depending on the thickness of the envelopes, changing the envelope selector setting might result in blurred or double lines being printed. If you switch the envelope selector to , be sure to select [Head Position],

as this will position the print heads correctly. If you switch the envelope selector to , be sure to select the [Uni-directional printing only] check box in the printer properties dialog box.

### **Have the print heads been aligned?**

Blurred or double lines indicate the print heads are incorrectly positioned. Resolve this by switching the envelope selector to  and then selecting [Head Position]. If the problem persists, print the nozzle check test pattern and clean the print heads as necessary. See p.170 "Head Position", p.164 "Nozzle Check" and p.166 "Head-cleaning".

### **Is there a problem with the printer's location?**

Make sure that the printer is level. Place the printer in a location where it will not be subject to shaking or excessive force.

### **Have you performed registration?**

Perform registration if the print start point indicates misalignment.

After attaching the paper feed unit, and the bypass tray, you must register where to start printing on paper loaded in each paper tray. See p.174 "Registration".

### **Have you changed the paper feed setting?**

If horizontal lines are printed unaligned, print images are patchy, or a black or white line is printed at regular intervals, print a test pattern, and then adjust the paper feed setting. p.172 "Adj.Paper Feed".

### **Does the paper type setting match?**

Make sure that the paper type setting of the printer driver matches the type of paper loaded.

### **Are you printing on the wrong side of the paper?**

Check which side should be printed on when using inkjet plain paper. If you print on the wrong side, the quality of the printing may be lower and the inside of the printer may get dirty. See p.85 "Paper Handling Precautions", p.82 "Compatible Paper Types"

### **Is the paper being used too thick or thin?**

Check if the paper is compatible. The print heads will rub against paper that is too thick or thin, and this will cause smearing. See p.82 "Loadable Paper Sizes and Quantities".

### **Have you touched the printed side of paper?**

Avoid touching the printed side of paper. Particularly, avoid touching glossy paper that have just been printed because these require longer than normal to dry. Remove them one at a time from the output ramp without touching the printed side, and then let them dry fully. See p.85 "Paper Handling Precautions".

### **Is the paper loaded in the correct orientation?**

Some paper cannot be loaded lengthwise depending on the size of the paper. Check the orientation in which the paper is loaded. See p.82 "Loadable Paper Sizes and Quantities".

---

### **Are you printing densely colored images on both sides of paper?**

When a large amount of ink is used to completely cover a side, one-sided printing is recommended.

---

## **Colors Do Not Match the Displayed Image**

---

If there are differences between colors of the print results and the displayed image, the following questions should be addressed.

### **Has the hue of colors been adjusted?**

Since printed colors and screen colors are produced by different methods, a color printed and a color displayed on a screen can have different hues even though they are the "same" color. Use the color matching function to make the hue of printed colors and displayed colors closer.

### **Has the nozzle check been performed?**

The print heads may be clogged and the amount of ink may not be able to be regulated. Print the nozzle check test pattern and clean the print heads as necessary. See p.164 "Nozzle Check", p.166 "Head-cleaning".

### **Was printing done in black and white?**

Check the color setting of the application and the color print setting of the printer driver.

### **Have the print quality settings been made?**

In the [Print Quality] area, select [Quality priority], or [Speed priority], and then print.

### **Does the paper type setting match?**

Make sure that the paper type setting of the printer driver matches the type of paper loaded.

### **Have you tried printing with inkjet plain paper?**

Try printing with inkjet plain paper. The print results should be clearer.

---

## **Positions Do Not Match the Displayed Image**

---

If the position of printed items differs from the position of displayed items, the following questions should be addressed.



### **Have the settings for page layout been made?**


Check whether page layout settings have been made with the application.

### **Does the paper size setting match?**


Make sure that the paper size selected in the [Printout paper size:] list of the printer properties dialog box matches the size of the paper loaded.

### **Does the envelope selector setting match?**

Set the envelope selector according to the type of paper. For envelopes, set the lever to the rear position ; for everything else, set the lever to the forward position . See p.276 "Envelope Selector Position Mismatch".

Blurred or double lines indicate the print heads are incorrectly positioned. Resolve this by switching the envelope selector to  and then selecting [Head Position].

### **Have the print heads been aligned?**

When bidirectional printing is performed, switch the envelope selector to  and select [Head Position] to align the print heads. If the problem persists, print the nozzle check test pattern and clean the print heads as necessary. See p.170 "Head Position", p.164 "Nozzle Check" and p.166 "Head-cleaning".

### **Have you changed Printable area?**

The problem may be solved by changing [Printable area:] in the printer properties dialog box. On the [Printer Configuration] tab, set [Printable area:] to [Maximum].

### **Have you changed Print Quality?**

In the [Print Quality] area, select the [Uni-directional printing only] check box. Note, however, that this will slow printing down.

### **Is Binding Margins set correctly?**

On the [Edit] tab, in the [Header/Footer/Adjust image position/Binding margins] dialog box, specify [Adjust Image Position] correctly.

---

## **Other Problems**

---

You may eliminate certain problems by changing the printer driver settings as described below:

### **Cannot print certain data properly when using a certain application, or cannot print image data properly.**

- In the [Print Quality] area, select [Quality priority], and then print.
- In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Image Adjustments] tab, under [Dithering], deselect the [Use error diffusion] check box.
- Set [Spool format:] to [RAW] or [EMF] in the [Printer Configuration] tab.
- In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Image Adjustments] tab, under [Image processing priority], deselect the [Adjust photos and images] and [Smooth low resolution images] check boxes.
- In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Misc.] tab, select the [Print as bitmap] check box.
- On the [Printer Configuration] tab, set [Adjust Color Density] to [Darker] or [Lighter], and then print.
- In the [Print Quality-User settings] dialog box, on the [Color Settings] tab, specify [Gray reproduction (Text/Line Art):].



### **Some characters are garbled or missing.**

- In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Misc.] tab, select the [Change methods to extract TrueType fonts] check box.
- In the [Printer Configuration] tab, set [Spool format:] to [EMF]. In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Misc.] tab, select the [Print as bitmap] check box.

### **Some characters are printed faintly or not printed.**

- In the [Print Quality] area, select [Quality priority], and then print.
- In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Image Adjustments] tab, under [Dithering], deselect the [Use error diffusion] check box.
- On the [Printer Configuration] tab, set [Spool format:] to [RAW] or [EMF].
- On the [Printer Configuration] tab, select the [Increase bold with font size] check box.
- In the [Print Quality-User settings] dialog box, on the [Color Settings] tab, specify [Gray reproduction (Text/Line Art):].
- To print text in black, in the [Print Quality-User settings] dialog box, on the [Color Settings] tab, select the [K (Black) for text only] check box.

### **Printing is slow and takes time, which delays release of the application.**

- In the [Print Quality] area, select [Speed priority] or [High speed], and then print.
- In the [Printer Configuration] tab, set [Spool format:] to [EMF].
- In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Image Adjustments] tab, under [Image processing priority], deselect the [Adjust photos and images] and [Smooth low resolution images] check boxes.
- Close the resident application.

### **Printing stops halfway.**

View the status monitor to check whether an error has occurred. See p.255 "Status Monitor Errors".

To print on pre-printed or pre-punched paper, select the [Use preprinted/prepunched paper] check box in the [Printer Configuration] tab.

### **Cannot carry out Layout print for Excel sheets.**

In the printer properties dialog box, on the [Advanced Options] tab, select the [Increase auto-keep settings for applications] check box.

### **How can I make the Print mode change automatically according to the status of envelope selector?**

To automatically do single-sided printing when the envelope selector is set to the envelope position, on the [Printer Configuration] tab, select the [When the envelope selector is set to Envelope Mode, use uni-directional printing only] check box.

**How can I prevent ink transfer between printed sheets during duplex printing?**

On the [Printer Configuration] tab, in the [Sheet-dry Print Delay...] dialog box, change [Print delay time:].

**Ink smudges and characters are not properly formed when printing white text on a black background.**

In the [Print Quality] area, select [Quality priority], and then print.

---

## Checking the Consumables

---

If you cannot find anything wrong with the printer or printer driver, check the consumables.

**Is an old Print cartridge being used?**

Print cartridges should be used up before their expiry date, preferably within six months of being removed from their packaging.

**Is a genuine Print cartridge being used?**

Using a cartridge other than a genuine Print cartridge or using a cartridge refilled with ink will lower the print quality and could cause a breakdown. Use a genuine Print cartridge. See p.315 "Recommended Consumables".

## If a Message Appears during Installation

Message number 58 or 34 indicates the printer driver cannot be installed using Auto Run. Uninstall and then reinstall the printer driver.

# Error & Status Messages on the Control Panel

This section explains what the messages that appear on the control panel mean and what to do when a particular message appears.

Depending on the "Auto Continue" and "Env.Slctr.Alert" settings specified on the System menu, some of the following messages might not appear.

## Reference

- See p.182 "Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu)"

---

## Control Panel Error Messages

---

### Cannot recover error page(s) / FormFeed to print remaining

When the printer resumes printing after the paper jam has been cleared, some page(s) has/have been missed.

To print the remaining pages after the missed page(s), press the [Form Feed] key. To delete the print job, press the [Job Reset] key.

See p.279 "Cannot Recover Error Page".

### Cannot use High Temp. / Power Off On

The temperature is abnormally high.

Switch the printer off and then on. If the message reappears, contact your service representative.

See p.275 "Out of Printable Temperature Range".

### Cannot use Low Temp. / Power Off On

The temperature is abnormally low.

Switch the printer off and then on. If the message reappears, contact your service representative.

See p.275 "Out of Printable Temperature Range".

### Change Setting Tray #

The size of paper in the selected tray does not match the specified paper size.

Load the tray with paper of the specified size, and then change the paper size setting for the tray on the control panel. Alternatively, press the [Form Feed] key, select a tray containing paper of the specified size, and then print. To cancel the print job, press the [Job Reset] key.

See p.255 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 1)", p.257 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Bypass Tray)".

### Change Settings Tray #

The type of paper in the selected tray does not match the specified paper type.

Load the tray with paper of the specified type, and then change the paper type setting for the tray on the control panel. Alternatively, press the [Form Feed] key, select a tray containing paper of the specified type, and then print. To cancel the print job, press the [Job Reset] key.

See p.255 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 1)", p.257 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Bypass Tray)".

### **Close Duplex Unit Cover**

The duplex unit cover is open. Close the duplex unit cover.

See p.264 "Cover Open".

### **Close Top Cover or Rear Cover**

The top cover or rear cover is open. Close the top cover or rear cover.

See p.264 "Cover Open".

### **Close Top Cover or Duplex Unit / Cover correctly**

The top cover, left cover, or duplex unit cover is open. Close the open cover, or reinstall/reset the duplex unit correctly.

See p.264 "Cover Open".

### **ERR(XXX) Power Off On / Call Service if error reoccurs**

An error has occurred.


Switch the printer off and then on. If the message reappears, contact your service representative.

See p.314 "Where to Inquire".

### **Energy Saver**

The printer is in Energy Saver mode. The printer is ready for use.

### **Envelop. Selector position error / Reset E.Selector or FormFeed**

The position of the envelope selector and the specified paper type do not match. This message appears also if the envelope selector is set to the  (rear) position while maintenance is carried out. Be sure to set the envelope selector to the right position.

See p.276 "Envelope Selector Position Mismatch".

### **Guide Board is open / Close the Guide Board**

The guide board is open. Close the guide board.

### **Hardware Problem Ethernet Board**

An error in the Ethernet port (ethernet board) network function has occurred.

See p.276 "Network Interface Error".

### **Ink Collector is not set / Set the Ink Collector Unit**

The ink collector unit has not been installed correctly. Reset the ink collector unit correctly.

See p.272 "Ink Collector Unit Not Detected".

### **Ink Collector Unit is full / Replace Ink Collector Unit**

The ink collector unit is full. Replace the ink collector unit.

See p.201 "Replacing an Ink Collector Unit".

### **Ink depleted**

The ink has run out. Change the indicated print cartridge.

See p.195 "Replacing a Print Cartridge".

### **Left Cover is open / Close the Left Cover**

The left cover is open. Close the left cover.

See p.264 "Cover Open".

### **Load Paper:Tray# or Form Feed**

The selected tray has run out of paper.

Reload the tray. Alternatively, press the [Form Feed] key, select a different tray, and then print. To cancel the print job, press the [Job Reset] key.

See p.255 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 1)", p.257 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Bypass Tray)".

### **Low Ink**

The ink runs out. Make sure you have new print cartridges on hand.

See p.314 "Where to Inquire".

### **Maintenance failed**

Head cleaning or head flushing has failed.

The error is cleared when the following occur:

- The printer receives another print job
- Press the [#Enter] key

See p.279 "Maintenance Failed".

### **Maintenance in process...**

The printer is cleaning or flushing its print head. Wait a moment.

### **Offline**

The printer is offline. To print, put the printer online.

### **Open Front Cover / Replace Ink Crtg**

The ink in the indicated print cartridge has run out. Change the indicated print cartridge.

See p.195 "Replacing a Print Cartridge".

**Panel Locked Cannot use**

You have pressed a locked key. Unlock the key.

See p.193 "Restricting Printer Functions".

**Paper Misfeed / Press Form Feed**

The printer failed to feed paper from the specified paper tray. Press the [Form Feed] key to feed the paper.

See p.222 "Using the [Form Feed] Key to Remove Jammed Paper".

**Paper Misfeed Bypass Tray / Check Paper Press Form Feed**

Paper has jammed in the bypass tray. Clear the jam.

See p.225 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional)".

**Paper Misfeed Tray 1 / Remove Misfeed**

Paper has jammed in Tray 1. Clear the jam.

See p.223 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1".

**Prepare new Ink Collector Unit**

The ink collector unit is almost full. Make sure you have a new ink collector on hand.

If a print cartridge starts running out of ink when the ink collector unit is almost full, the alert indicator will flash and a message informing you of the cartridge's low ink level will appear on the control panel. To prevent job delay due to a full ink collector unit, always have a new ink collector unit ready.

See p.314 "Where to Inquire".

**Processing...**

The printer is printing.

**Ready**

The printer is able to print.

**Remove Misfeed Duplex Unit / Use Feed Wheel in Left Cover**

Paper has jammed in the duplex unit. Clear the jam.

See p.236 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit".

**Remove Misfeed Open Top Cover / Use Feed Wheel in Left Cover**

Paper has jammed under the top cover. Clear the jam.

See p.229 "Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover".

**Remove Misfeed Top/Rear Cover / Use Feed Wheel in Left Cover**

There is paper still jammed inside the printer.

Remove any jammed paper.

See p.232 "Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board" and p.238 "If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper".

### **Reset Bypass Tray correctly**

The bypass tray has not been installed correctly. Reset the bypass tray correctly. p.32 "Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray".

### **Reset Cartridge**

No print cartridge has been installed. Install the print cartridge correctly.

See p.266 "Cover Open / Print Cartridge(s) Not Detected".

### **Reset Duplex Unit correctly**

The duplex unit has not been installed correctly. Reset the duplex unit correctly.

See p.268 "Duplex Unit Not Detected".

### **Resetting Job...**

The printer is reinitializing a print job.

Wait a moment.

### **Right Front Cover is open / Close Right Front Cover**

The right front cover is open. Close the print cartridge cover.

See p.266 "Cover Open / Print Cartridge(s) Not Detected".

### **Setting change...**

The printer is changing its settings. Wait a moment.

### **Temp. alert Please wait...**

The printer is too hot or cold at start-up. Wait until "Ready" appears on the control panel.

### **Waiting...**

Wait a moment.

### **Note**

- If this does not eliminate the problem, contact your service representative.



---

# Status Monitor Errors

If an error occurs with the printer, Status Monitor displays an error message. Click [User Guide...] to display the page corresponding to the error where you can check how to solve the problem in more detail.

Depending on the "Auto Continue" and "Env.Slctr.Alert" settings specified on the System menu, some of the following messages might not appear.

## Reference

- See p.182 "Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu)"

---

## Status Monitor Does Not Open

---

If the Status monitor does not open for a shared printer, the following questions should be addressed.

### Are the share settings correct?

Check the share settings of the printer. The printer driver must also be installed on the client computer. See p.68 "Setting Up a Server" and p.69 "Setting Up a Client Computer".

---

## No Response from Printer

---

Follow the procedure below to check the port settings and the connection between the printer and computer.

1. Check that the power of the printer is on.
2. Make sure that the computer and printer are properly connected using a USB cable.
3. Open the printer properties dialog box.
4. Click the [Ports] tab.
5. Check that USB is selected in the [Print to the following port:] list.

## Note

- If you want to connect the printer to the network, check the operating environment, and then change the port setting. For details about configuring the port, see p.75 "Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port", p.76 "Using the Standard TCP/IP Port", and p.78 "Using the LPR Port".

---

## No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 1)

---

Tray 1 is empty or the paper in it is not loaded properly. Do one of the following:

- Load the tray.
- Print by Form Feed (Change the tray).
- Cancel the print job.

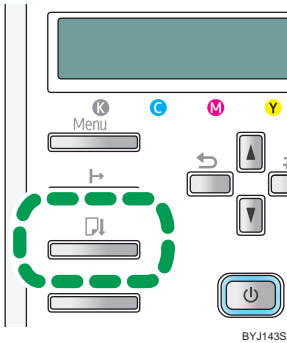
**Reference**

- To load the tray, see p.45 "Loading Paper".

### Printing by Form Feed

Press the [Form Feed] key, select the tray, and then print by Form Feed.

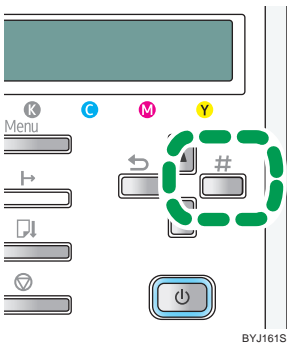
1. Press the [Form Feed] key.



2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper tray, and then press the [#Enter] key.

Print: Tray 1 ?:  
A4 (210 x 297)

Print: Tray 1 ?:  
Plain Paper

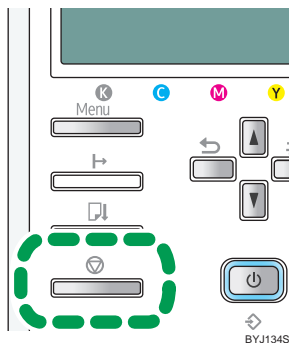


Printing starts.

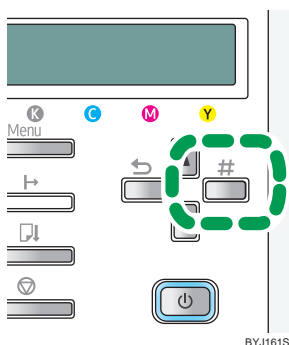
### Canceling the Print Job

Cancel the print job.

### 1. Press the [Job Reset] key.



### 2. Press the [#Enter] key.



### 3. Press the [#Enter] key.

## No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Bypass Tray)

There is no paper in the bypass tray or the paper is not loaded properly. Do one of the following:

- Loading paper (Press the [#Enter] key).
- Cancel the print job.

### Reference

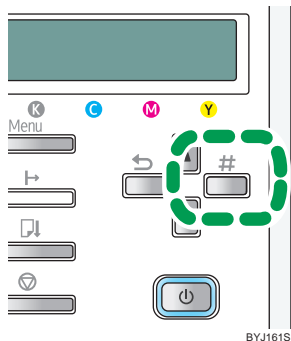
- See p.32 "Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray".

## Loading Paper

Load paper in the bypass tray, and then press the [#Enter] key to begin printing.

### 1. Load paper in the bypass tray.

2. Press the [#Enter] key.



Printing starts.

**Reference**

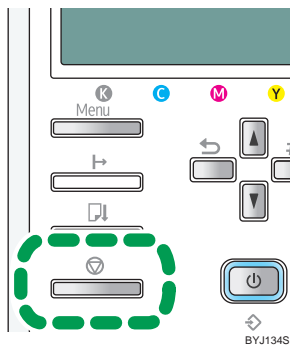
- To load paper, see p.45 "Loading Paper".

## Canceling the Print Job

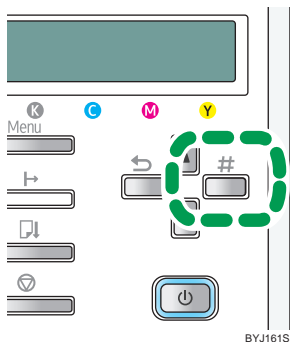
Cancel the print job.

7

1. Press the [Job Reset] key.



2. Press the [#Enter] key.



3. Press the [#Enter] key.

## Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Tray 1)

The tray is not loaded with paper of the correct size or type. Do one of the following:

- Change the paper settings.
- Print by Form Feed (Change the tray).
- Cancel the print job.

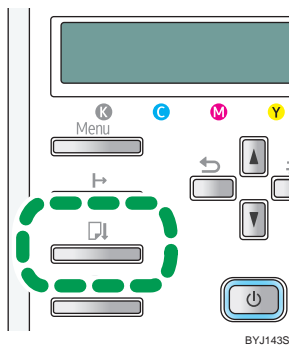
### Reference

- To change the paper settings, see p.92 "Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)".

## Printing by Form Feed

Press the [Form Feed] key, select the tray, and then print by Form Feed.

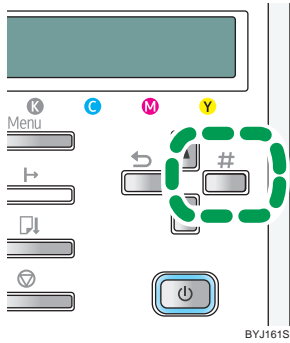
1. Press the [Form Feed] key.



2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper tray, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Print: Tray 1 ?:  
A4 (210 x 297)
```

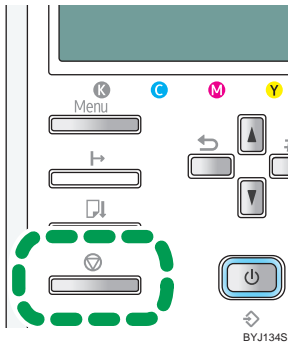
```
Print: Tray 1 ?:  
Plain Paper
```



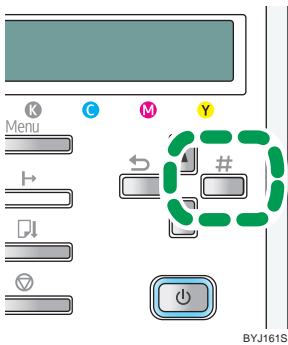
### Canceling the Print Job

Cancel the print job.

1. Press the [Job Reset] key.



2. Press the [#Enter] key.



3. Press the [#Enter] key.

### Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Bypass Tray)

The tray is not loaded with paper of the correct size or type. Do one of the following:

- Change the paper settings.
- Print by Form Feed (Change the tray).
- Cancel the print job.

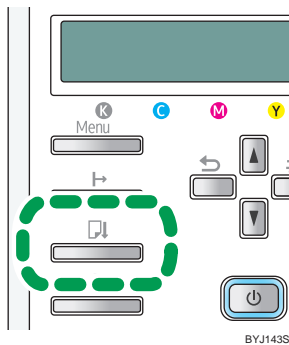
### Reference

- To change the paper settings, see p.92 "Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)".

## Printing by Form Feed

Press the [Form Feed] key, select the tray, and then print by Form Feed.

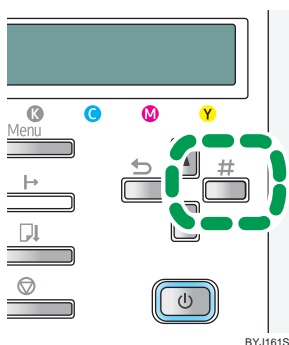
### 1. Press the [Form Feed] key.



### 2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper tray, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Print: Tray 1 ?:  
A4 (210 x 297)
```

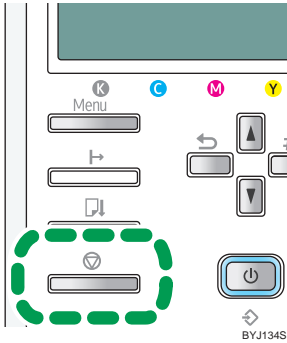
```
Print: Tray 1 ?:  
Plain Paper
```



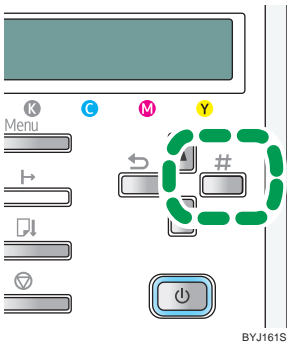
## Canceling the Print Job

Cancel the print job.

1. Press the [Job Reset] key.



2. Press the [#Enter] key.



3. Press the [#Enter] key.

## Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Auto Tray Select)

The automatically detected tray is not loaded with paper of the correct size or type. Do one of the following:

- Change the paper settings.
- Print by Form Feed (Change the tray).
- Cancel the print job.

### Reference

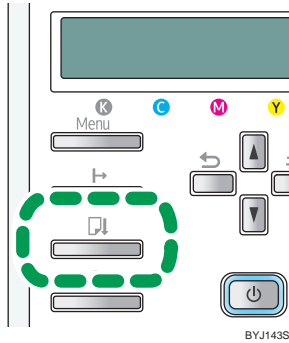
- To change the paper settings, see p.92 "Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)".



## Printing by Form Feed

Press the [Form Feed] key, select the tray, and then print by Form Feed.

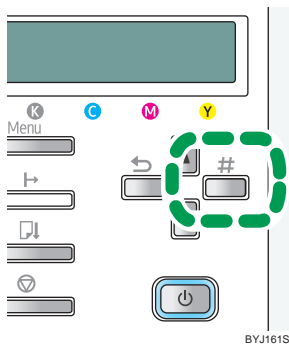
1. Press the [Form Feed] key.



2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper tray, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Print: Tray 1 ?:  
A4 (210 x 297)
```

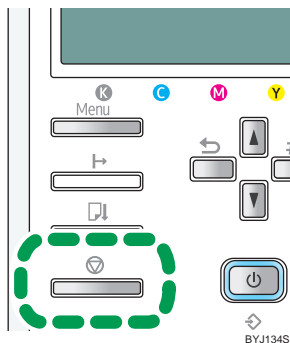
```
Print: Tray 1 ?:  
Plain Paper
```



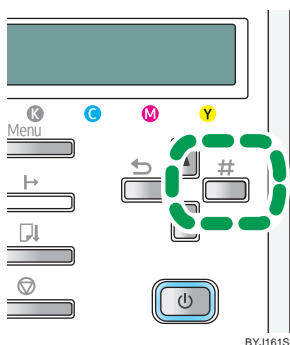
## Canceling the Print Job

Cancel the print job.

**1. Press the [Job Reset] key.**



**2. Press the [#Enter] key.**



**3. Press the [#Enter] key.**

---

## Cover Open

---

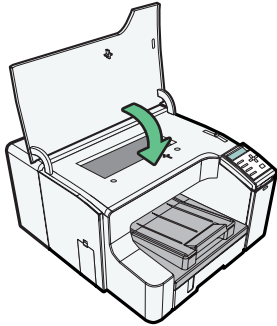
A cover is open. Make sure all covers are fully closed.

If the cover is already closed, open and then reclose it.

Follow the procedure below to close the cover.

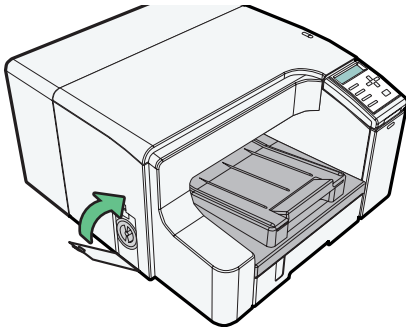
## 1. Close the cover.

### Top cover



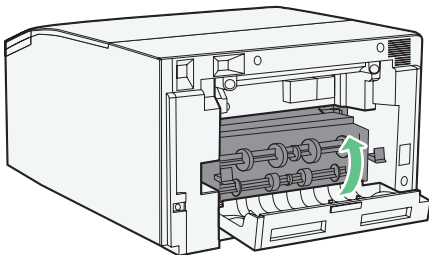
BPR182S

### Left cover



BPR156S

### Duplex unit cover



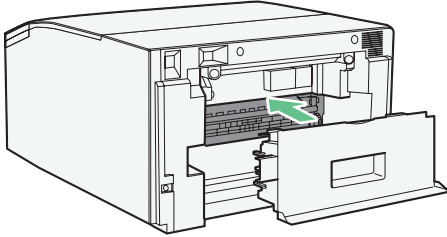
BPR159S

If the bypass tray is attached to the printer, switch the printer off and detach the bypass tray.

Check that the duplex unit is correctly attached and the duplex unit cover is closed.

The GX e2600 is not equipped with a duplex unit.

### Rear Cover

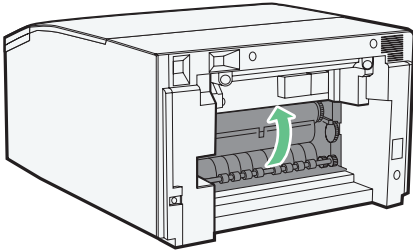


BYJ262S

Only the GX e2600 has a rear cover.

**Note**

- There is a guide board in the recess behind the duplex unit. If the guide board is open, close it.



BPR142S

**Reference**

- p.32 "Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray"
- p.20 "Guide to Components"

---

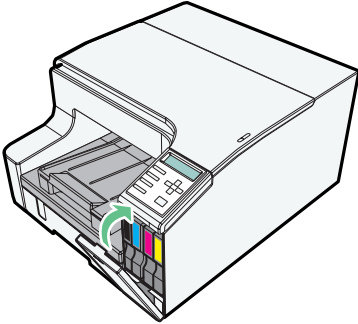
### Cover Open / Print Cartridge(s) Not Detected

---

The right front cover is open. Close the right front cover. Alternatively, the print cartridges are not installed or are installed incorrectly. Install the print cartridges correctly.

If the cover is open:

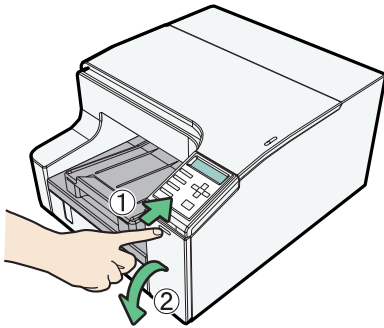
1. Close the right front cover.



BPR115S

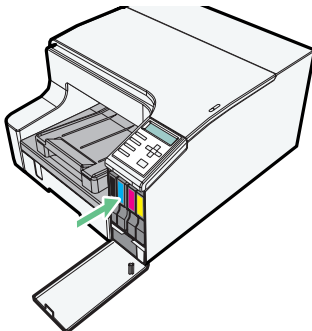
If the print cartridges are not installed or are installed incorrectly:

1. While pressing the recessed area (①) of the right front cover, open the cover (②).



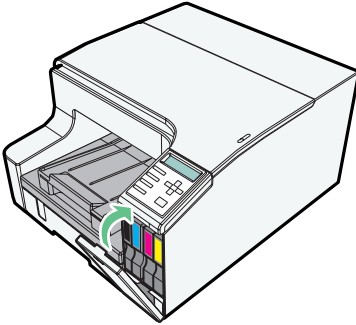
BPR113S

2. Push in the cartridge.



BPR141S

3. Close the right front cover.



BPR115S

**Note**

- If the error persists, remove the print cartridge and then reinstall it. Do this once only.
- If there is a problem with the print cartridge, try installing a new cartridge.

## Duplex Unit Not Detected

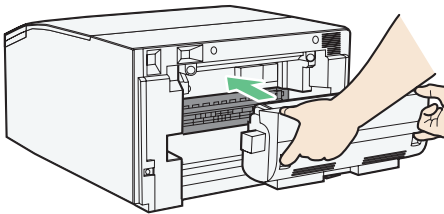
The duplex unit is not attached correctly. Follow the procedure below to attach the duplex unit correctly.

The GX e2600 is not equipped with a duplex unit.

**Important**

- If the bypass tray is attached to the printer, switch the printer off and detach the bypass tray.

1. Without pressing the catches on its sides, push the duplex unit all the way in until it clicks into place.



BYJ155S

**Reference**

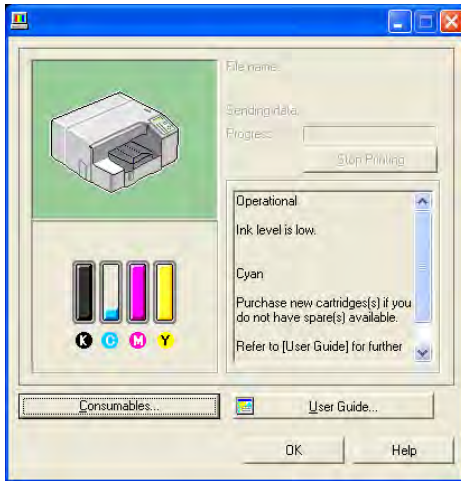
- p.32 "Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray"

## Cartridge Almost Empty

One of the print cartridges is almost empty. Check which color print cartridge will soon have to be replaced, and then have a new cartridge handy.

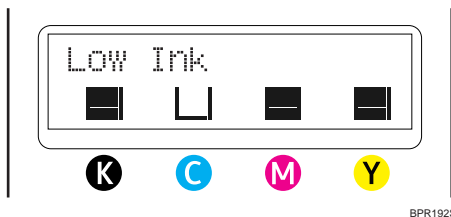
### Checking ink colors

- Checking using the Status monitor



The illustration above indicates the cyan print cartridge is almost empty.

### Checking the cartridge replacement indicators of the printer control panel



The illustration above indicates the cyan print cartridge is almost empty.

#### Note

- The amount of remaining ink shown in the cartridge replacement indicator is for reference only and may differ from the actual amount. Also, cartridges can become empty without a low ink warning appearing.
- From left to right, the cartridge replacement indicators display the status of the black (K), cyan (C), magenta (M), and yellow (Y) Print cartridges.
- With glossy paper, if you print an image that needs a lot of ink, the printer may stop printing before the print is finished. An example of such an image is one containing a single large area of solid color, or one made up almost entirely of a few such areas.

- Do not carry out head cleaning or head flushing. If you do, the ink may run out.
- If you turn the power off and then back on, the printer will send the ink in the print cartridge to the printer. During this, the ink in the print cartridge may run out.

**Reference**

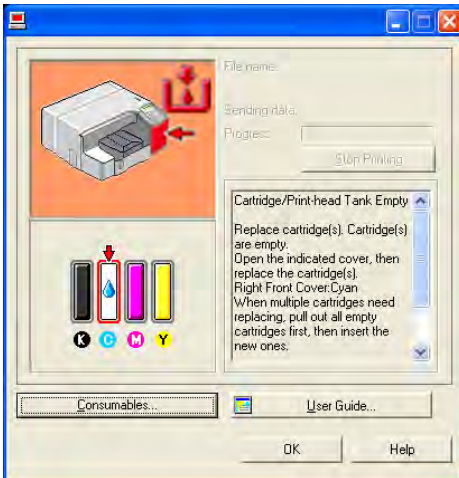
- p.107 "Using the Status Monitor"

## Cartridge Empty

The ink is completely depleted. Printing cannot be performed. Replace the Print cartridge.

### Checking ink colors

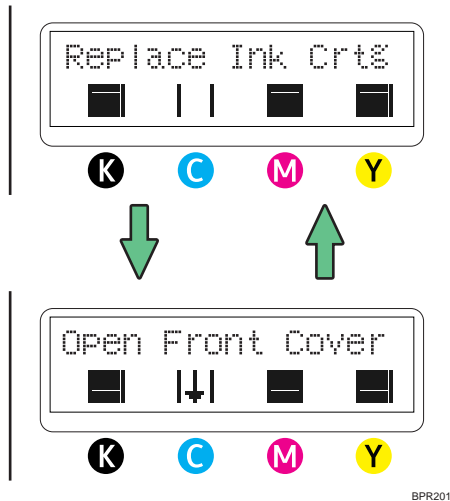
- Checking using the Status monitor



The illustration above indicates the cyan Print cartridge has completely run out.



## Checking the cartridge replacement indicators of the printer control panel



The illustration above indicates the control panel is indicating that the cyan Print cartridge has completely run out.

### ↓ Note

- From left to right, the cartridge replacement indicators display the status of the black (K), cyan (C), magenta (M), and yellow (Y) Print cartridges.
- Under this condition, the printer cannot carry out head cleaning or head flushing.
- If the ink runs out during printing, the printer may eject blank or partially printed sheets.

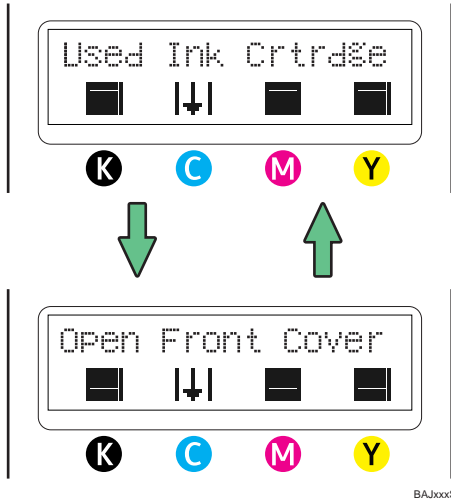
### 📖 Reference

- p.195 "Replacing a Print Cartridge"
- p.107 "Using the Status Monitor"

## Used Cartridge

The installed print cartridge has run out of ink. Printing cannot be performed. Replace the Print cartridge.

### Checking the cartridge replacement indicators of the printer control panel



The illustration above indicates the cyan print cartridge is empty.

#### ↓ Note

- Under this condition, the printer cannot carry out head cleaning or head flushing.
- From left to right, the cartridge replacement indicators display the status of the black (K), cyan (C), magenta (M), and yellow (Y) Print cartridges.
- Cartridges that are no longer usable for printing reserve a small quantity of ink for maintenance usage. Make sure you do not install an empty print cartridge by mistake.
- Print cartridges should be used up before their expiry date, preferably within six months of being removed from their packaging.

#### 📖 Reference

- p.195 "Replacing a Print Cartridge"
- p.107 "Using the Status Monitor"

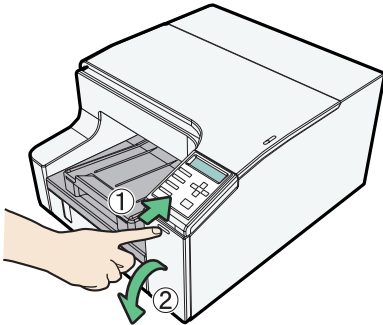
---

## Ink Collector Unit Not Detected

---

The ink collector unit is not attached correctly. Follow the procedure below to attach the ink collector unit correctly.

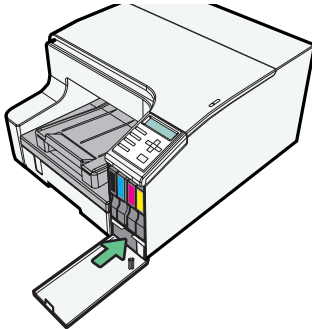
1. While pressing the recessed area (①) of the right front cover, open the cover (②).



BPR113S

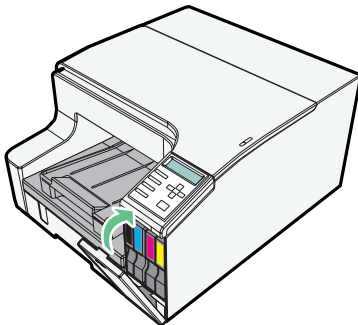
2. Attach the ink collector unit by pushing it in until it clicks. Take care not to spill the ink.

Remove the ink collector unit only when necessary.



BPR162S

3. Close the right front cover.



BPR115S

If the message reappears, contact your service representative.

#### **E** Reference

- p.314 "Where to Inquire"

---

## Ink Collector Unit Almost Full

---

The ink collector unit is almost full. Have a new ink collector unit handy.

### Checking using the printer's control panel

```
Prepare new Ink  
Collector Unit
```

#### ↓ Note

- If a print cartridge starts running out of ink when the ink collector unit is almost full, the alert indicator will flash and a message informing you of the cartridge's low ink level will appear on the control panel. To prevent job delay due to a full ink collector unit, always have a new ink collector unit ready.

#### 📖 Reference

- p.314 "Where to Inquire"

---

## Ink Collector Unit Full

---

The ink collector unit is full. To print, you must replace the ink collector unit.

### Checking using the printer's control panel

```
Ink Collector  
Unit is full
```

```
Replace Ink  
Collector Unit
```

#### 📖 Reference

- p.201 "Replacing an Ink Collector Unit"

---

## Used Ink Collector Unit

---

A used ink collector unit has been installed. To print, you must replace the ink collector unit.

### Checking using the printer's control panel

```
Used Ink Collect  
Unit is set
```

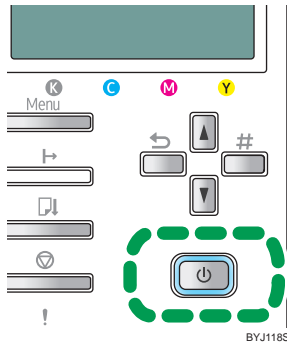
#### 📖 Reference

- p.201 "Replacing an Ink Collector Unit"

## Out of Printable Temperature Range

Follow the procedure below to relocate the printer when the temperature inside the printer is inappropriate, extremely high or low, for printing.

### 1. Turn the printer off.



### 2. Place the printer in a 10 to 32°C (50 to 89.6°F) environment.

### 3. Turn the printer on.

#### ↓ Note

- If humidity is more than 54%, the high end of the appropriate temperature range will be lower than usual.
- Even after the power is turned on, the printer may remain in the standby mode until it acclimates to the room temperature. If this happens, wait until the [Power] key stops blinking and stays lit.

#### 📖 Reference

- For details about what conditions the printer can be used under (ambient temperature and humidity range), see p.37 "Checking the Computer and Installation Area".
- See p.205 "Moving".

## Printer Error

An error has occurred in the printer. Turn the power off once, and then turn it back on.

#### ↓ Note

- If the printer is relocated from a cold area to a warm area or the printer is placed in a room where the temperature varies greatly, condensation may form inside the printer causing errors. If this happens, perform the decondensation procedure.

#### 📖 Reference

- For details about de-condensation, see p.180 "De-condensation".

- If the error still does not clear after the printer acclimates to room temperature and the power is turned back on, contact your sales or service representative.

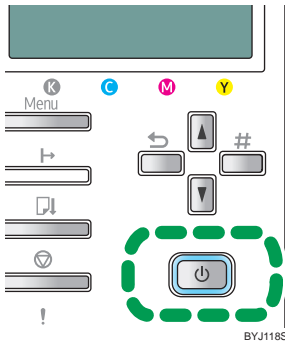
---

## Network Interface Error

---

An error in the Ethernet port network function has occurred. Do the following:

**1. Turn the printer off.**



**2. Turn the printer on.**

If the message reappears, contact your service representative.

**Reference**

- p.314 "Where to Inquire"

---

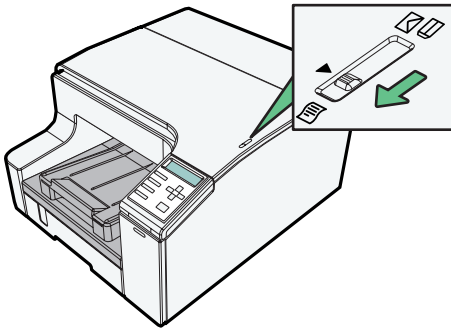
## Envelope Selector Position Mismatch

---

The envelope selector is in the wrong position or the printer driver settings are wrong. Set the envelope selector to the right position or change the printer driver settings. Alternatively, press the [Form Feed] key, select a tray containing paper of the required size, and then print. To cancel the print job, press the [Job Reset] key.

## Check the position of the envelope selector

1. For envelopes, set the lever to the rear position ; for everything else, set the lever to the forward position .

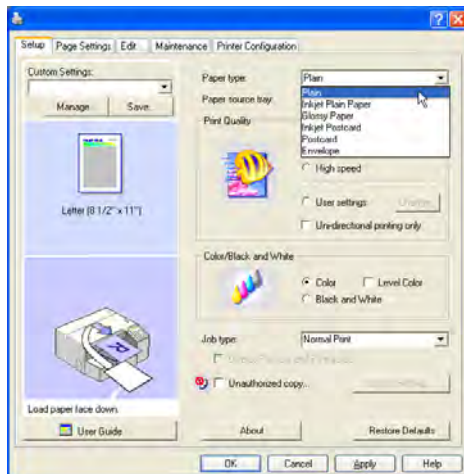


BPR137S

## Check the printer driver settings

1. In the application, open the printer properties dialog box.
2. Click the [Setup] tab.
3. Check the [Paper type:] setting.

Select the paper type from the [Paper type:] dropdown list. For envelopes, select [Envelope].

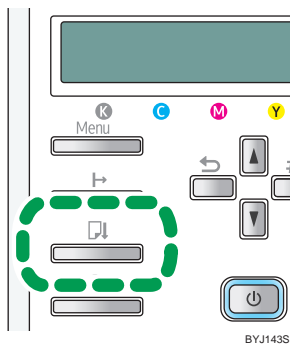


4. Click [OK].

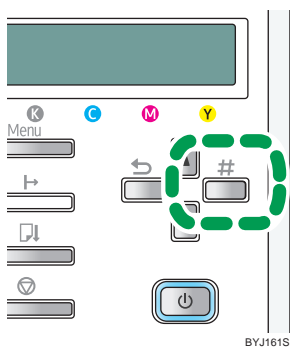
## Printing by Form Feed

Press the [Form Feed] key, and then print.

**1. Press the [Form Feed] key.**



**2. Press the [#Enter] key.**



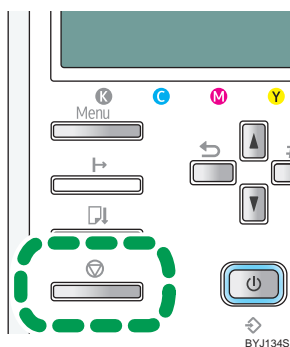
7

## Canceling the Print Job

---

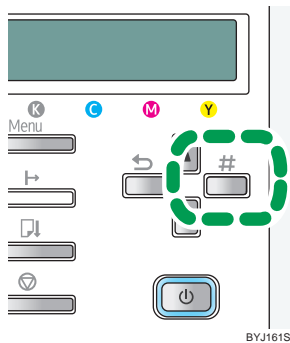
Cancel the print job.

**1. Press the [Job Reset] key.**





## 2. Press the [#Enter] key.



## 3. Press the [#Enter] key.

---

### Maintenance Failed

---

Head cleaning or head flushing has failed.

The error is cleared when the following occur:

- The printer receives another print job
- Press the [#Enter] key

7

---

### Cannot Recover Error Page

---

When the printer resumes printing after a paper jam has been cleared, some pages might be missing from the print job. If this happens, do one of the following:

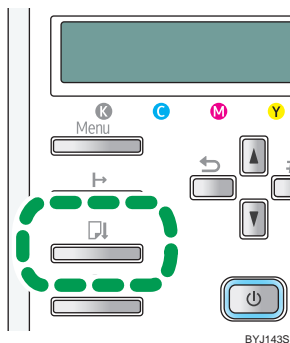
- Print by Form Feed (The printer prints the remaining pages following the missed page[s])
- Cancel the print job.

### Printing by Form Feed

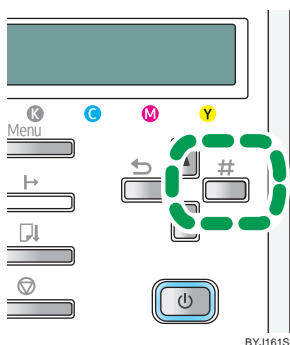
---

Press the [Form Feed] key, and then print.

**1. Press the [Form Feed] key.**



**2. Press the [#Enter] key.**



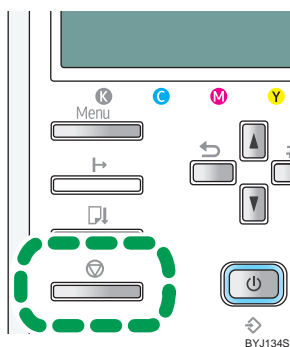
7

## Canceling the Print Job

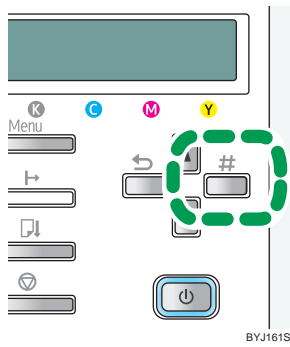
---

Cancel the print job.

**1. Press the [Job Reset] key.**



2. Press the [#Enter] key.



3. Press the [#Enter] key.



# 8. Appendix

---

## Updating the Firmware

To update the printer and network interface board firmware, download the latest firmware from the Web site and installing it.

### ↓ Note

- To check the current firmware version, print the system configuration page from the [List/Test Print] menu.

### 📖 Reference

- p.63 "Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu)"

## Checking the Current Printer Driver Version

Follow the procedure below to check the version of the printer driver currently installed.

1. **Open the printer properties dialog box.**
2. **Click the [Setup] tab.**
3. **Click [About].**

The [About] dialog box appears.

4. **Check the version.**
5. **Click [OK].**

# Software on the CD-ROM

This section describes the CD-ROM supplied with the printer.

## Files

The following is a list of the files on the CD-ROM.

File Name
SETUP.EXE
RPCS Raster Printer Driver for Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2008
PCL 5c Printer Driver for Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2008 (GX e3350N only)
PCL 6 Printer Driver for Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2008 (GX e3350N only)
SmartDeviceMonitor for Client
ICM Color Profiles for Printer
Manuals (HTML files)

## RPCS Raster Printer Drivers

This section gives the file locations of the different RPCS raster printer drivers and their system requirements.

### File Location

The drivers are in the following folders on the supplied CD-ROM.

- RPCS raster printer driver for Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2008  
**Drivers\Rpcs\_r\XP\_VISTA\DISK1**

### System Requirements for the Printer Drivers

- Computer  
 PC/AT-compatible computer with USB interface
- Operating Systems  
 Windows 2000/XP/Vista or Windows Server 2003/2008
- Display Resolution  
 Minimum SVGA 800 × 600 pixels

**Note**

- The printer drivers do not support clustering technology under Windows 2000 and Windows Server 2003/2008.
- For details about using the printer driver, see the printer driver Help.

---

## PCL Printer Drivers (GX e3350N only)

---

This section gives the file locations of the different PCL 5c printer drivers and their system requirements. These drivers allow your computer to communicate with this printer via a printer language.

### File Location

The Drivers are in the following folders on the supplied CD-ROM.

- PCL 5c printer driver for Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2008  
`Drivers\Pc15c\XP_VISTA\xxxx\disk1`
- PCL 6 printer driver for Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2008  
`Drivers\Pc16\XP_VISTA\xxxx\disk1`

### System Requirements for the Printer Drivers

- Computer  
PC/AT-compatible computer with USB interface
- Operating Systems  
Windows 2000/XP/Vista or Windows Server 2003/2008
- Display Resolution  
Minimum SVGA 800 × 600 pixels

**Note**

- "xxxx" in the file location will be the name of the printer driver's supported language.
- The printer drivers do not support clustering technology under Windows 2000 and Windows Server 2003/2008.
- For details about using the printer driver, see the printer driver Help.

---

## SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

---

This section explains the functions and location of SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is software with the following functions. It is recommended that you install it on any computer you wish to use the printer with.



- Under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, and Windows Server 2003/2008, you can print over a peer-to-peer TCP/IP network.
- You can monitor the printer status over a TCP/IP network.

**File Location**

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is in the following folder on the supplied CD-ROM.

**Network\Devmon\Client\Disk1**

**Note**

- See "p.108 "Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client"", or the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

**Reference**

- For details about installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, see p.75 "Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port".

---

**Manuals (HTML files)**

---

This section gives the location of the manuals.

**File Location**

The manuals are in the following folders on the supplied CD-ROM.

**MANUAL\_HTML**

# Cautions to Take When Using in a Network

---

## Using DHCP

---

This printer can be used in a DHCP environment. In a DDNS environment, the printer name can simultaneously be registered with a DNS server.

### ↓ Note

- Supported DHCP server operating systems are: Windows 2000 Server, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and UNIX standard.
- The IP address acquired from DHCP can be checked on the configuration page. For details about printing a configuration page, see "Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu)".
- When there are multiple DHCP servers, make the same reservation for all. This printer uses information from the DHCP server that responds first.

### 📖 Reference

- p.63 "Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu)"

# Electromagnetic Interference

If another electronic device is placed next to the printer, each will influence the other negatively. In the case of a television or radio, noise may be generated. If this happens, do the following:

- Move the television or radio as far as possible from the printer.
- Change the position of the antenna of the television or radio.
- Use a different wall outlet on a different circuit.

# Specifications

Specifications of the printer and options are listed.

## Printer Body

### Print speed

Measurements according to the manufacturer's measurement system

Black and white: 29.0 ppm

Full color: 29.0 ppm

Depending on the operating environment, printing may take longer than normal.

### Print direction

Supports bidirectional, minimum distance printing

### Print resolution

Max 1200 × 1200 dpi equivalent

### Nozzles

Black: 192 nozzles

Cyan, magenta, and yellow: 192 nozzles per color

### Paper sizes (Tray 1: standard)

Standard paper size: A4<sup>□</sup>, A5<sup>□</sup>, A6<sup>□</sup>, B5 JIS<sup>□</sup>, Letter (8 1/2 × 11)<sup>□</sup>, Legal(8 1/2 × 14)<sup>□</sup>, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2<sup>□</sup>, Executive (7 1/4 × 10 1/2)<sup>□</sup>, 8 × 13<sup>□</sup>, 8 1/2 × 13<sup>□</sup>, 8 1/4 × 13<sup>□</sup>, 16K<sup>□</sup>, Com10 Envelope (4 1/8 × 9 1/2)<sup>□</sup>, Monarch Envelope (3 7/8 × 7 1/2)<sup>□</sup>, C6 Envelope (114 × 162)<sup>□</sup>, C5 Envelope (162 × 229)<sup>□</sup>, DL Envelope (110 × 220)<sup>□</sup>

Custom paper sizes: 139.7-356 mm (5.50-14.01 inch) (length) × 88-216 mm (3.46-8.50 inch) (width)

### Paper sizes (Duplex Unit) (GX e3300N/GX e3350N only)

Standard paper size: A4<sup>□</sup>, A5<sup>□</sup>, A6<sup>□</sup>, B5 JIS<sup>□</sup>, Letter (8 1/2 × 11)<sup>□</sup>, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2<sup>□</sup>, Executive (7 1/4 × 10 1/2)<sup>□</sup>, 16K<sup>□</sup>

### Paper type

Plain paper

Recycled paper

Color paper

Inkjet plain paper

Glossy paper (Duplex printing is not supported.)

Envelope (Duplex printing is not supported.)

**Paper weight**

Tray 1/ optional tray: 60-157 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16.0-42.0 lb.)

**Paper capacity**

Tray 1: 250 sheets

**Maximum paper capacity**

350 sheets (with the optional tray installed)

**Output ramp capacity**

100 sheets

The capacity may be less depending on the images printed.

**Power source**

GX e2600/GX e3300N

100-240V: 50/60Hz 1.0-0.6A (when fully equipped)

GX e3350N

100-120V: 50/60Hz 1.0A (when fully equipped)

220-240V: 50/60Hz 0.6A (when fully equipped)

**Power consumption**

Average power consumption while printing:

36 W or less (not including options)

Energy Saver mode:

GX e2600

less than 1.5 W (100-120V)

less than 2 W (220-240V)

GX e3300N

less than 2 W (100-120V)

less than 2.5 W (220-240V)

GX e3350N

less than 3.4 W

To avoid any power consumption, disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

(Unplug the power plug only after making sure the [Power] key indicator is off.)

**Operating environment**

Temperature: 10 to 32°C (50 to 89.6°F)

Humidity: 15-80% RH (maximum wet-bulb temperature: 25°C (77°F))

Printing may stop to protect the printer for conditions outside those described above.

**Storage environment**

Temperature: 1 to 40°C (33.8 to 104°F)

Humidity: 5-80% RH

**External dimensions**

(W × D × H) 420 × 485 × 259 mm (16.5 × 19.1 × 10.4 inches)

(W × D × H) 420 × 707 × 452 mm (16.5 × 27.8 × 13.4 inches) (when fully equipped)

**Weight**

Approximately 13.6 kg (30.0 lb.) (printer body with consumables)

Approximately 16.1 kg (35.5 lb.) (when fully equipped)

**Noise emission<sup>\*1</sup>****Sound Power Level**

	Main unit only
During Printing	Quality priority: 59.5 dB(A) Speed priority: 59.5 dB(A)
Standby	40 dB(A) or less

**Sound Pressure Level<sup>\*2</sup>**

	Main unit only
During Printing	Quality priority: 52.8 dB(A) Speed priority: 52.8 dB(A)
Standby	34 dB(A) or less

\*1 The preceding measurements made in accordance with ISO7779 are actual values.

\*2 Measured at the position of a bystander.

**Interface**

USB 2.0 high speed

Ethernet (10BASE-T, 100BASE-TX)\*

\* Not provided with the GX e2600.

**Printer language**

GX e2600/GX e3300N: RPCS Raster

GX e3350N: RPCS Raster, PCL

## Option (Bypass tray)

### Multi Bypass Tray Type BY1000

#### Paper sizes

A4, A5, A6, B5 JIS, Letter(8 1/2 × 11), Legal(8 1/2 × 14), 5 1/2 × 8 1/2, Executive (7 1/4 × 10 1/2), 8 × 13, 8 1/2 × 13, 8 1/4 × 13, 16K, Com10 Envelope(4 1/8 × 9 1/2), Monarch Envelope (3 7/8 × 7 1/2), C6 Envelope(114 × 162), C5 Envelope(162 × 229), DL Envelope (110 × 220)

Custom paper sizes: 127-1295.4 mm (5-51 inch) (length) × 55-216 mm (2.17-8.50 inch) (width)

#### Paper type

Plain paper

Recycled paper

Color paper

Inkjet plain paper

Glossy paper

Envelope

Thick

#### Paper weight

52-255 g/m<sup>2</sup> (14.0-68.0 lb.)

#### Paper capacity

100

#### Note

- Under the PCL driver, the available custom size is 139.7-355.9 mm (5.50-14.01 inch) (Vertical) × 55.0-216.0 mm (2.17-8.50 inch) (Horizontal).

# List of Printer Driver Functions (Windows/Macintosh)

The following tables list the functions available under Mac OS X and their Windows printer driver equivalents.

## Paper source tray

Windows	Mac OS X
Tray 1	Tray 1
Bypass Tray	Bypass Tray
Auto Tray Select	Auto Tray Select

## Paper type

Windows	Mac OS X
Plain	Plain
Inkjet Plain Paper	Inkjet Plain Paper
Glossy Paper	Glossy Paper
Inkjet Postcard	Inkjet Postcard
Postcard	Postcard
Envelope	Envelope
Thick	Thick

## Original size

Windows	Mac OS X
A0	-
A1	-
A2	-
A3	-
A4	A4
A5	A5



Windows	Mac OS X
A6	A6
B1 JIS	-
B2 JIS	-
B3 JIS	-
B4 JIS	-
B5 JIS	B5 JIS
B6 JIS	B6 JIS
Letter	Letter (US Letter)
Legal	Legal (US Legal)
12" × 18"	-
5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "	5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "
11" × 17"	-
Reply-paid Postcard	Reply-paid Postcard
Executive	Executive
8" × 13"	F/GL
8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 13"	Foolscap
8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 13"	Folio
8K	-
16K	16K
Com10 Env.	Com10 Env.
Monarch Env.	Monarch Env.
C6 Env.	C6 Env. (C6 Envelope)
C5 Env.	C5 Env. (C5 Envelope)
DL Env.	DL Env. (DL Envelope)
Custom Paper Size	Custom Paper Size

The sizes shown in the brackets ( ) for Mac OS X are the sizes shown on the printer driver.

### Printout paper size

Windows	Mac OS X
A4	A4
A5	A5
A6	A6
B5 JIS	B5 JIS
B6 JIS	B6 JIS
Letter	Letter (US Letter)
Legal	Legal (US Legal)
5 1/2" × 8 1/2"	Statement
Reply-paid Postcard	Reply-paid Postcard
Executive	Executive
8" × 13"	F/GL
8 1/2" × 13"	Foolscap
8 1/4" × 13"	Folio
16K	16K
Com10 Env.	Com10 Env.
Monarch Env.	Monarch Env.
C6 Env.	C6 Env. (C6 Envelope)
C5 Env.	C5 Env. (C5 Envelope)
DL Env.	DL Env. (DL Envelope)
Custom Size	Custom Size

The sizes shown in the brackets ( ) for Mac OS X are the sizes shown on the printer driver.

**Original orientation**

Windows	Mac OS X
Portrait	Portrait (This function is provided by the operating system.)
Landscape	Landscape (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Collate**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Reverse order printing**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Rotate by 180 degrees**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Centering**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Job type**

Windows	Mac OS X
Normal Print	Unavailable
Send to Job Binding...	
Save as Overlay Data...	

**Print to file**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)	Available (Rendered as PDF, PostScript, This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Print quality**

Windows	Mac OS X
Quality priority	Unavailable (Specify the Resolution, the number of path, and the scan direction. Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, specify the paper type in combination with the print quality.)
Speed priority	
High speed	

**Registering frequently used settings**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Print quality (User settings)**

Windows	Mac OS X
High quality	Unavailable (Specify the Resolution, the number of path, and the scan direction. Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, specify the paper type in combination with the print quality.)
Quality priority	
Speed priority	
High speed	

**Dithering**

Windows	Mac OS X
Automatic	-
Photographic	Photographic
Text	Text
Thin lines	Use error diffusion

**Use error diffusion**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available

**Color profile**

Windows	Mac OS X
Optimize color	-
Off	Off
Presentation	Presentation
Photographic	Photographic
Text	Text

**Gray reproduction**

Windows	Mac OS X
Automatic	Unavailable
K (Black) for text only	
CMY + K	
CMY + K for images only	

**Color balance**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Brightness**

Windows	Mac OS X
-50 ~ 50	Unavailable

**Contrast**

Windows	Mac OS X
-50 ~ 50	Unavailable

**Saturation**

Windows	Mac OS X
-50 ~ 50	Unavailable

**Color balance: Cyan**

Windows	Mac OS X
-50 ~ 50	Unavailable

**Color balance: Magenta**

Windows	Mac OS X
-50 ~ 50	Unavailable

**Color balance: Yellow**

Windows	Mac OS X
-50 ~ 50	Unavailable

**Use ICM**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Use ICM: ICM method**

Windows	Mac OS X
By host system	Unavailable
By printer driver	

**Use ICM: ICM intent**

Windows	Mac OS X
Graphics (Saturation)	Unavailable
Pictures (Perceptual)	
Proof (Relative Colorimetric)	
Match (Absolute Colorimetric)	

**Use ColorSync**

Windows	Mac OS X
Unavailable	Unavailable

**Print as bitmap**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Change data processing**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Separate into CMYK, then print in designated color only**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Fit to paper size**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.) (for version 10.4 and later)

**Scale**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Directional Magnification**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Layout**

Windows	Mac OS X
2 pages per sheet (2-up) (left→right) (Top→Bottom)	2 pages per sheet (2-up) (left→right) (Top→Bottom) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
2 pages per sheet (2-up) (right→left)	2 pages per sheet (2-up) (right→left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In rows running left to right)	4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In rows running left to right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In rows running right to left)	4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In rows running right to left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In columns starting on the left)	4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In columns starting on the left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In columns starting on the right)	4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In columns starting on the right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
-	6 pages per sheet (6-up) (In rows running left to right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
-	6 pages per sheet (6-up) (In rows running right to left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
-	6 pages per sheet (6-up) (In columns starting on the left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
-	6 pages per sheet (6-up) (In columns starting on the right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In rows running left to right)	9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In rows running left to right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)



Windows	Mac OS X
9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In rows running right to left)	9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In rows running right to left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In columns starting on the left)	9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In columns starting on the left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In columns starting on the right)	9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In columns starting on the right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In rows running left to right)	16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In rows running left to right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In rows running right to left)	16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In rows running right to left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In columns starting on the left)	16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In columns starting on the left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In columns starting on the right)	16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In columns starting on the right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Draw border**

Windows	Mac OS X
Dashed line	-
-	Single Hairline (This function is provided by the operating system.)
-	Single Thin Line (This function is provided by the operating system.)
-	Double Hairline (This function is provided by the operating system.)
-	Double Thin Line (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Poster**

Windows	Mac OS X
1 page into 2 sheets	Unavailable
1 page into 4 sheets	
1 page into 9 sheets	

**Duplex**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available (Unavailable on the GX e2600)	Available (Unavailable on the GX e2600)

**Adjust Image Position: Direction**

Windows	Mac OS X
Left	Long-edged Binding
Right	-
Top	Short-edged Binding

**8**

**Adjust Image Position: Top/Left margin**

Windows	Mac OS X
0 - 50mm	Unavailable

**Create margin**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Booklet**

Windows	Mac OS X
Booklet 1 -Open to left	Unavailable
Booklet 1 -Open to right	
Booklet 2 -Open to left	
Booklet 2 -Open to right	

**Specifying the long edge of custom-size paper**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Specifying the short edge of custom-size paper**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Margin settings for custom-size paper**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Registering custom paper sizes**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Watermarks: Text**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Watermarks: Bitmap**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Overlay**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Header/Footer**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Economy Color**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Color Ink Saving**

Windows	Mac OS X
Unavailable	Available

**Sheet-dry print delay in duplex**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available (Unavailable on the GX e2600)	Available (Unavailable on the GX e2600)

**Mixed Original Orientations**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Do not print blank pages**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available

**Reduce automatically to fit specified paper size**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available (A4 only)	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.) (for version 10.4 and later)

**Use preprinted/prepunched paper**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Measurement Unit**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Uni-directional printing only**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Display Preview and Print screen**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Unauthorized Copy Control**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Custom Settings**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**When the envelope selector is set to Envelope Mode, use uni-directional printing only**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available

**Density for plain paper printing**

Windows	Mac OS X
Light	Unavailable
Standard	
Dark	

### Environment Settings

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

### Printable area

Windows	Mac OS X
Regular	Unavailable
Enlarged	
Maximum	

# Information about Installed Applications

## expat

Use of the software installed on this product, including the controller (hereinafter "software") and the expat Version 1.95.2 application software (hereinafter "expat 1.95.2"), is subject to the following conditions:

The product manufacturer provides warranty and support to the software of the product including expat 1.95.2 and the product manufacturer allows the initial developer of expat 1.95.2 to be free from these obligations.

Copyright © 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd  
and Clark Cooper

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

### ↓ Note

- Information on expat 1.95.2 is available at:  
<http://expat.sourceforge.net/>

## MD5

Copyright (c) 1991-2, RSA Data Security, Inc. Created 1991. All rights reserved.

License to copy and use this software is granted provided that it is identified as the "RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing this software or this function.

License is also granted to make and use derivative works provided that such works are identified as "derived from the RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing the derived work.

RSA Data Security, Inc. makes no representations concerning either the merchantability of this software or the suitability of this software for any particular purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty of any kind.

These notices must be retained in any copies of any part of this documentation and/or software.

---

## NetBSD

---

### Copyright Notice of NetBSD

For all users to use this product:

This product contains NetBSD operating system:

For the most part, the software constituting the NetBSD operating system is not in the public domain; its authors retain their copyright.

The following text shows the copyright notice used for many of the NetBSD source code. For exact copyright notice applicable for each of the files/binaries, the source code tree must be consulted.

A full source code can be found at <http://www.netbsd.org/>.

Copyright © 1999, 2000 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:  
This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of The NetBSD Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE NETBSD FOUNDATION, INC. AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.



## Authors Name List

---

All product names mentioned herein are trademarks of their respective owners.

The following notices are required to satisfy the license terms of the software that we have mentioned in this document:

- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan R. Stone for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Manuel Bouyer.
- This product includes software developed by Charles Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Charles M. Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Christopher G. Demetriou.
- This product includes software developed by Tools GmbH.
- This product includes software developed by Terrence R. Lambert.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Glass and Charles Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Theo de Raadt.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone and Jason R. Thorpe for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Christos Zoulas.
- This product includes software developed by Christopher G. Demetriou for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Paul Kranenburg.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Glass.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Winning Strategies, Inc.
- This product includes software developed by Frank van der Linden for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Frank van der Linden
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Jason R. Thorpe.
- The software was developed by the University of California, Berkeley.
- This product includes software developed by Chris Provenzano, the University of California, Berkeley, and contributors.

---

## Original SSLeay License

---

Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)

All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com).

The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed.

If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used.

This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

"This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)"

The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the rouines from the library being used are not cryptographic related :-).

4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement:

"This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT

LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence [including the GNU Public Licence.]

---

## **TCP/IP**

---

Elmic System's KASAGO TCP/IP is installed for TCP/IP of this product.

Copyright© Elmic Wescom, Inc. 2005

---

## **JPEG LIBRARY**

---

- The software installed on this product is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

---

## **IPS™ print language emulations**

---

Copyright© 1987-2006 Zoran Corporation. All rights reserved.

## Where to Inquire

For inquiries, contact your sales or service representative.

## Recommended Consumables

Consumables recommended for this printer are listed.

Purchase necessary consumables before your supply runs out.

For information about consumables, contact your sales or service representative.

- Print cartridges
- Ink Collector Unit

## Option and Consumables

The following option can be used with the printer:

- Multi Bypass Tray BY1000

You can also feed paper from the bypass tray.

 **Note**

- For information about option and consumables, contact your service representative.

# INDEX

## A

About the Web Browser Help.....	128
About This Product.....	9
Adj. Paper Feed.....	172
Alert indicator.....	23
An Error Occurs.....	218
Attaching the Multi Bypass Tray BY1000.....	41
Attaching the Options.....	41
Authors Name List.....	311

## B

Basic Printing Procedure.....	141
Before Installing the Software (Network Connection).....	57
Before Installing the Software (USB).....	53
Bypass tray.....	32
Bypass tray extension.....	32

## C

Canceling a Print Job from the Computer.....	144
Canceling a Print Job on a Macintosh.....	144
Canceling Printing.....	103
Canceling Printing from the Status Monitor.....	103
Canceling printing from the Taskbar.....	104
Canceling Printing Using the [Job Reset] Key of the Printer.....	103, 145
Canceling the Print Job.....	256, 258, 260, 262, 263
Cannot Recover Error Page.....	279
Cartridge Almost Empty.....	269
Cartridge Empty.....	270
Cartridge replacement indicator.....	23
Cautions to Take When Using in a Network.....	288
Changing the Host Interface menu.....	73
Changing the Paper Input Menu.....	92
Changing the PCL Menu.....	190
Changing the Printer Settings.....	115
Changing the System Menu.....	187
Check the power source.....	39
Checking the Computer and Installation Area.....	37
Checking the Computer to be Connected.....	39
Checking the Consumables.....	248

Checking the Current Printer Driver Version.....	284
Checking the Number of Printed Pages from the Control Panel.....	161
Checking the Printer Status.....	114
Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel.....	63
Checking the Remaining Ink.....	195
Checking the Supplied Items and Unpacking the Printer.....	40
Checking the Version of the Printer Driver.....	156
Checking whether Bidirectional Communication is Working.....	151
Checking Your Computer Environment.....	209
Cleaning.....	204
Cleaning the Power Cable Plug.....	204
Colors Do Not Match the Displayed Image.....	245
Compatible Paper Sizes for the Duplex Unit.....	86
Compatible Paper Types.....	82
Conditions for Bidirectional Communication.....	97
Confirming Installation.....	209
Confirming the Connection Method.....	64
Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (Network Connection).....	57
Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (USB Connection).....	53
Connecting the Printer via the Network.....	57
Connecting the Printer via USB.....	53
Control Panel.....	23, 250
Correct Orientation of Preprinted Paper When Loaded in the Bypass Tray.....	87
Correct Orientation of Preprinted Paper When Loaded in the Tray 1.....	86
Counter Menu.....	161
Cover Open.....	264
Custom Setting.....	95

## D

Data In indicator.....	23
De-condensation.....	180
Deleting Devices.....	216
Description for the Specified Model.....	15
Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray.....	32
Dialog Boxes for Printer Settings.....	138
Disclaimer.....	11
Display.....	23

Displaying Help from the Print dialog.....	153
Displaying Mac Help.....	153
Displaying the [Maintenance Utility].....	139
Displaying the Counter.....	161
Displaying the Page Setup dialog.....	139
Displaying the Print dialog.....	139
Displaying the Printer Driver Settings Dialog Boxes.....	138
Displaying the Printer Status.....	107, 111, 151
Displaying the Status Monitor.....	151
Displaying Top Page.....	113
Disposing.....	207
Duplex Unit.....	23
Duplex Unit Not Detected.....	268

## E

Electromagnetic Interference.....	289
Enter key.....	23
Envelope selector.....	20
Envelope Selector Position Mismatch.....	276
Envelopes.....	82
Error.....	250
Escape key.....	23
Ethernet port.....	23
expat.....	309

## F

Feed.....	220
Files.....	158, 285
Form Feed key.....	23

## G

Glossy paper.....	82
Guide board.....	21
Guide to Components.....	20

## H

Handling Print Cartridges.....	199
Hardware.....	131
Head Position.....	170
Head-cleaning.....	166
Head-flushing.....	169
Host Interface Menu.....	71
How to Use User Guide.....	17

## I

If a Message Appears during Installation.....	249
If Bidirectional Communication is Disabled.....	97
If Test Print Fails.....	214
If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper.....	238
Important Notice.....	102
Information about Installed Applications.....	309
Ink.....	197, 266, 269, 270
Ink Collector Unit.....	21
Ink Collector Unit Almost Full.....	274
Ink Collector Unit Full.....	274
Ink Collector Unit Not Detected.....	272
Inkjet plain paper.....	82
Install.....	66, 75, 81
Installing the DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	81
Installing the Drivers for Network Connection.....	74
Installing the PCL or RPCS Raster Printer Driver (Network).....	75
Installing the PCL or RPCS raster printer driver (USB).....	66
Installing the Print Cartridges.....	42
Installing the Printer Driver under Mac OS X.....	133
Installing User Guide.....	16
Interpreting the Configuration Page.....	63
Introduction.....	9
IPS print language emulations.....	313

## J

Job Reset.....	103
Job Reset key.....	23
JPEG LIBRARY.....	313

## L

Left cover.....	20
Legal Prohibition.....	9
List of Printer Driver Functions.....	294
List/Test Print Menu.....	63
Loadable Paper Sizes and Quantities.....	82
Loading paper.....	45
Loading Paper.....	257
Loading Paper into Bypass Tray (optional).....	50
Loading Paper into Tray 1.....	46



Loading Paper Larger than A4/Letter (tray 1).....	47
Loading Precautions.....	85
Locking the Keys.....	193

## M

Machine Body.....	20
Machine Rear.....	21
Maintenance Failed.....	279
Maintenance Menu.....	163
Making Printer Settings Using the Control Panel.....	27
Manuals.....	159, 287
Manuals for This Printer.....	13
MD5.....	309
Menu.....	114
Menu Chart.....	27
Menu key.....	23
Messages.....	250
Monitoring and Configuring the Printer.....	150
Moving.....	205
Moving a Long Distance.....	205
Moving a Short Distance.....	205
Multi Bypass Tray BY1000.....	32
Multi-tab.....	95

## N

NetBSD.....	310
Network Interface Error.....	276
No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Bypass Tray).....	257
No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 1).....	255
No Response from Printer.....	255
No-Fuss Head Cleaning.....	167
Non-compatible paper.....	89
Notes on the Installation (Network Connection).....	61
Notes on the Installation (USB Connection).....	54
Notes on/Limitations of Printing Using a Mac.....	146
Notifying the Printer Status by E-mail.....	115
Nozzle Check.....	164

## O

Online key.....	23
-----------------	----

Opening from an Application.....	96
Opening from Printer Status Error Messages.....	19
Opening from the CD-ROM.....	19
Opening from the Icon.....	18
Opening from the Printer Driver.....	18
Opening from the Start Menu.....	18
Opening Help.....	153
Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box.....	95
Opening the Printing Preferences Dialog Box.....	95
Operating System.....	131
Option (Bypass tray).....	293
Option and consumables.....	316
Options.....	32
Original SSLeay License.....	312
Other Problems.....	246
Out of Printable Temperature Range.....	275
Output ramp.....	20
Output ramp extension.....	20

## P

Paper.....	82
Paper feed wheel.....	21
Paper Handling Precautions.....	85
Paper Input Menu.....	92
Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally.....	220
Paper Jam.....	222
Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (AutoTray Select).....	262
Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Bypass Tray).....	260
Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Tray 1).....	259
Paper Storage Precautions.....	87
Paper Type Precautions.....	88
Paper Will Not Feed Even When the Power Is On.....	218
PCL Menu.....	188
PCL Printer Drivers (GX e3350N only).....	286
Performing Maintenance using the Control Panel.....	163
Plain paper.....	82
Plugging in the Power Cord and Turning the Power On.....	44
Positions Do Not Match the Displayed Image.....	245

Power Cannot Be Turned On.....	218	Removing the User Guide.....	19
Power inlet.....	21	Replacing a Print Cartridge.....	195, 197
Power key.....	23	Replacing an Ink Collector Unit.....	201
Preparing for Printing.....	132	Restricting Printer Functions.....	193
Print cartridge.....	20	Right front cover.....	20
Print Cartridge(s) Not Detected.....	266	RPCS Raster Printer Drivers.....	158, 285
Print results are not satisfactory.....	243	<b>S</b>	
Printable area.....	90	Selecting the Control Panel Language.....	191
Printer Body.....	290	Selecting the Printer Driver Language.....	105
Printer Driver.....	66, 75	Setting the Date and Time.....	177
Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed.....	212	Setting Up a Client Computer.....	69
Printer Error.....	275	Setting Up a Server.....	68
Printer Properties Dialog Box.....	95, 99, 138	Setting Up the Hardware.....	37
Printing.....	99	Sharing the Printer.....	68
Printing a Configuration Page.....	51	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	81, 108, 286
Printing a document using [Data security for copying].....	100	SNMP.....	129
Printing a Document Using [Mask type].....	100	Software Cannot Be Installed.....	209
Printing by Form Feed.....	256, 259, 261, 263	Software on the CD-ROM.....	158, 285
Printing on Paper in a Paper Tray.....	142	Specifications.....	290
Printing on Various Paper Types.....	141	Specifying Settings on [Accessories] Tab.....	97
Printing Will Not Start.....	218	Specifying Settings on the Control Panel.....	59
Printing with the Bypass Tray.....	143	Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel.....	182
Prints are Unsatisfactory.....	243	Specifying the Client Computer Settings.....	110
<b>Q</b>		Specifying the Interface and Network Settings using the Printer's Control Panel.....	71
Quick Install for Network.....	61, 209	Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel.....	92
Quick Install for USB.....	54, 209	Specifying the Print Server.....	109
<b>R</b>		Specifying the Printer Settings on a Macintosh.....	134
Rear Cover.....	21	Specifying the Settings for Monitoring the Printer... ..	110
Receiving Notification of Print Job Status via the Status Monitor.....	107	Status Monitor.....	103, 255
Recommended consumables.....	315	Status Monitor Does Not Open.....	255
Recommended Functions.....	35	Status Monitor Errors.....	255
Registration.....	174	Symbols.....	16
Removing paper jammed around the guide board.....	232	System Menu.....	182
Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit.....	236	System Requirements.....	131
Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional).....	225	<b>T</b>	
Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1.....	223	TCP/IP.....	75, 313
Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover.....	229	The area where the printer is to be placed.....	37
		Thick paper.....	82

---

Top cover.....	20
Trademarks.....	9
Tray 1.....	20
Troubleshooting.....	155, 250
Two Types of Printer Properties Dialog Box.....	95

## U

---

Unauthorized Copy Control.....	100
Uninstalling.....	215
Uninstalling the Printer Driver.....	156, 215
Unlocking the Keys.....	193
up arrow, down arrow keys.....	23
Updating the Firmware.....	283
Updating the Printer Driver.....	156
USB Connection is not Automatically Detected.....	212
USB slot.....	21
Used Cartridge.....	271
Used Ink Collector Unit.....	274
User's Notes.....	11
Using as the Windows Network Printer.....	79
Using DHCP.....	288
Using Notification via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	109
Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	108
Using the [Form Feed] Key to Remove Jammed Paper.....	222
Using the LPR Port.....	78
Using the Printer via a USB Connection from a Macintosh.....	134
Using the Printer via Network Connection from a Macintosh.....	135
Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port.....	75
Using the Standard TCP/IP Port.....	76
Using the Status Monitor.....	107
Using Web Browser.....	112

## V

---

Vent.....	21
-----------	----

## W

---

Wheel.....	32
When Not Using for a Long Period of Time.....	208
Where to Inquire.....	314

---

MEMO

---

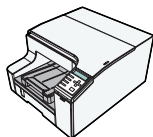
MEMO

---

MEMO



**GelSprinter GX e2600/GX e3300N/GX e3350N** User Guide

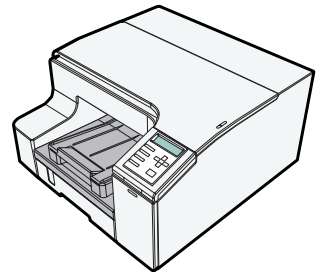






# GelSprinter GX e5550N

## User Guide



- 
- 1** Read This First
  - 2** Preparing for Printing
  - 3** Printer Driver
  - 4** Monitoring and Configuring the Printer
  - 5** Using the Printer with a Macintosh
  - 6** Maintaining
  - 7** Troubleshooting
  - 8** Appendix



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

## 1. Read This First

---

About This Product.....	9
Introduction.....	9
Legal Prohibition.....	9
Trademarks.....	9
Disclaimer.....	11
User's Notes.....	11
Manuals for This Printer.....	13
How to Read This Manual.....	15
Description for the Specified Model.....	15
Symbols.....	16
Installing User Guide.....	16
How to Use User Guide.....	17
Removing the User Guide.....	19
Guide to Components.....	20
Machine Body.....	20
Machine Rear.....	21
Control Panel.....	22
Making Printer Settings Using the Control Panel.....	25
Options.....	30
Paper Feed Unit TK1110.....	30
Multi Bypass Tray BY1000.....	31
Recommended Functions.....	33

## 2. Preparing for Printing

---

Setting Up the Hardware.....	35
Checking the Computer and Installation Area.....	35
Checking the Supplied Items and Unpacking the Printer.....	37
Attaching the Options.....	39
Installing the Print Cartridges.....	40
Plugging in the Power Cord and Turning the Power On.....	42
Loading Paper.....	44
Printing a Configuration Page.....	54
Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (USB Connection).....	56

---

Before Installing the Software (USB).....	56
Quick Install for USB.....	57
Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (Network Connection).....	60
Before Installing the Software (Network Connection).....	60
Quick Install for Network.....	63
Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu).....	65
Interpreting the Configuration Page.....	65
Confirming the Connection Method.....	66
Installing the PCL or RPCS Raster Printer Driver (USB).....	68
Sharing the Printer.....	70
Specifying the Interface and Network Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Host Interface Menu).....	73
Changing the Host Interface Menu.....	75
Installing the Drivers for Network Connection.....	76
Installing the PCL or RPCS Raster Printer Driver (Network).....	77
Installing the DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client .....	82
Paper.....	84
Compatible Paper Types.....	84
Loadable Paper Sizes and Quantities.....	84
Paper Handling Precautions.....	87
Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu).....	94
Changing the Paper Input Menu.....	94
<b>3. Printer Driver</b>	
<hr/>	
Two Types of Printer Properties Dialog Box.....	97
Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box.....	97
Opening the Printing Preferences Dialog Box.....	97
Opening from an Application.....	98
Specifying Settings on [Accessories] Tab.....	99
Conditions for Bidirectional Communication.....	99
If Bidirectional Communication is Disabled.....	99
Printing.....	101
Unauthorized Copy Control.....	102
Canceling Printing.....	104

---

Canceling Printing from the Status Monitor.....	104
Canceling Printing Using the [Job Reset] Key of the Printer.....	104
Canceling Printing from the Taskbar.....	105
Selecting the Printer Driver Language.....	106

#### **4. Monitoring and Configuring the Printer**

---

Using the Status Monitor.....	109
Receiving Notification of Print Job Status via the Status Monitor.....	109
Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	110
Using Notification via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	111
Specifying the Settings for Monitoring the Printer.....	112
Displaying the Printer Status.....	113
Using Web Browser.....	114
Displaying Top Page.....	114
Menu.....	116
Checking the Printer Status.....	116
Changing the Printer Settings.....	116
Notifying the Printer Status by E-mail.....	117
About the Web Browser Help.....	129
SNMP.....	130

#### **5. Using the Printer with a Macintosh**

---

System Requirements for Macintosh.....	131
Operating System (for Macintosh).....	131
Hardware (for Macintosh).....	131
Preparing for Printing (for Macintosh).....	132
Installing the Printer Driver under Mac OS X.....	133
Installing the Printer Driver on a Macintosh.....	133
Specifying the Printer Settings on a Macintosh.....	134
Printer Properties Dialog Box on a Macintosh.....	137
Dialog Boxes for Printer Settings on a Macintosh.....	137
Displaying the Printer Driver Settings Dialog Boxes on a Macintosh.....	137
Printing with a Macintosh.....	140
Basic Printing Procedure for Macintosh.....	140
Printing on Various Paper Types with a Macintosh.....	140

---

Canceling a Print Job on a Macintosh.....	144
Monitoring and Configuring the Printer (for Macintosh).....	146
Displaying the Printer Status on a Macintosh.....	147
Checking whether Bidirectional Communication is Working on a Macintosh.....	147
Displaying the Status Monitor on a Macintosh.....	147
Opening Help on a Macintosh.....	149
Displaying Help from the Print dialog on a Macintosh.....	149
Displaying Mac Help.....	149
Maintaining (for Macintosh).....	150
Troubleshooting (for Macintosh).....	151
Updating the Printer Driver on a Macintosh.....	152
Checking the Version of the Printer Driver on a Macintosh.....	152
Uninstalling the Printer Driver from a Macintosh.....	152
Software on the CD-ROM for Macintosh.....	154
Files for Macintosh.....	154
RPCS Raster Printer Drivers for Macintosh.....	154
Manuals (HTML files) for Macintosh.....	155

## 6. Maintaining

---

Checking the Number of Printed Pages using the Control Panel (Counter Menu).....	157
Displaying the Counter.....	157
Performing Maintenance using the Control Panel (Maintenance Menu).....	159
Nozzle Check.....	160
Head-cleaning.....	162
Head-flushing.....	165
Head Position.....	166
Adj.Paper Feed.....	168
Registration.....	170
Setting the Date and Time.....	173
De-condensation.....	176
Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu).....	178
Changing the System Menu.....	182
Specifying PCL Settings using the Control Panel (PCL Menu).....	184
Changing the PCL Menu.....	186

---

Selecting the Control Panel Language.....	187
Restricting Printer Functions.....	189
Locking the Keys.....	189
Unlocking the Keys.....	189
Replacing a Print Cartridge.....	191
Checking the Remaining Ink.....	191
Replacing a Print Cartridge.....	193
Handling Print Cartridges.....	195
Replacing an Ink Collector Unit.....	197
Cleaning.....	200
Cleaning the power Cable Plug.....	200
Moving.....	201
Moving a Short Distance.....	201
Moving a Long Distance.....	201
Disposing.....	203
When Not Using for a Long Period of Time.....	204

## 7. Troubleshooting

---

Software Cannot Be Installed.....	205
Confirming Installation.....	205
Checking Your Computer Environment.....	205
Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed.....	207
USB Connection is not Automatically Detected.....	208
If Test Print Fails.....	209
Uninstalling.....	210
Uninstalling the Printer Driver.....	210
Deleting Devices.....	211
Printing Will Not Start.....	213
Power Cannot Be Turned On.....	213
Paper Will Not Feed Even When the Power Is On.....	213
An Error Occurs.....	213
Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally.....	215
Paper Jam.....	217
Using the [Form Feed] Key to Remove Jammed Paper.....	217

---

Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1 .....	218
Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 2/Tray 3 (optional).....	220
Removing Paper Jammed in the Rear Unit (optional).....	222
Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional).....	223
Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover.....	227
Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board.....	230
Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit.....	234
If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper.....	237
Print Results Are Not Satisfactory.....	241
Prints are Unsatisfactory.....	241
Colors Do Not Match the Displayed Image.....	243
Positions Do Not Match the Displayed Image.....	243
Other Problems.....	244
Checking the Consumables.....	246
If a Message Appears during Installation.....	247
Error & Status Messages on the Control Panel.....	248
Control Panel Error Messages.....	248
Status Monitor Errors.....	254
Status Monitor Does Not Open.....	254
No Response from Printer.....	254
No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 1).....	254
No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 2/Tray 3).....	256
No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Bypass Tray).....	258
Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Tray 1).....	260
Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Tray 2/Tray 3).....	261
Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Bypass Tray).....	263
Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Auto Tray Select).....	265
Cover Open.....	267
Cover Open / Print Cartridge(s) Not Detected.....	269
Duplex Unit Not Detected.....	271
Rear Unit of Optional Tray Not Detected.....	271
Cartridge Almost Empty.....	272
Cartridge Empty.....	273



---

Used Cartridge.....	274
Ink Collector Unit Not Detected.....	275
Ink Collector Unit Almost Full.....	277
Ink Collector Unit Full.....	277
Used Ink Collector Unit.....	277
Out of Printable Temperature Range.....	278
Printer Error.....	278
Network Interface Error.....	279
Envelope Selector Position Mismatch.....	279
Maintenance Failed.....	282
Cannot Recover Error Page.....	282

## 8. Appendix

---

Updating the Firmware.....	285
Checking the Current Printer Driver Version.....	286
Software on the CD-ROM.....	287
Files.....	287
RPCS Raster Printer Drivers.....	287
PCL Printer Drivers.....	288
SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	288
Manuals (HTML files).....	289
Cautions to Take When Using in a Network.....	290
Using DHCP.....	290
Electromagnetic Interference.....	291
Specifications.....	292
Printer Body.....	292
Option (Paper Feed Unit).....	294
Option (Bypass tray).....	295
List of Printer Driver Functions (Windows/Macintosh).....	296
Information about Installed Applications.....	311
expat.....	311
MD5.....	311
NetBSD.....	312
Original SSLeay License.....	314

---

TCP/IP.....	315
JPEG LIBRARY.....	315
IPSTM print language emulations.....	315
Where to Inquire.....	316
Recommended Consumables.....	317
Option and Consumables.....	318
<b>INDEX</b> .....	319

# 1. Read This First

---

## About This Product

This section tells you about the product.

1

---

### Introduction

---

This manual describes detailed instructions on the operation and notes about the use of this machine. To get maximum versatility from this machine, all operators are requested to read this manual carefully and follow the instructions. Please keep this manual in a handy place near the machine.

For safe and correct use, please be sure to read the Safety Information in the "Safety Information" that comes with this machine before using the machine.

---

### Legal Prohibition

---

Do not copy or print any item for which reproduction is prohibited by law.

Copying or printing the following items is generally prohibited by local law:

bank notes, revenue stamps, bonds, stock certificates, bank drafts, checks, passports, driver's licenses.

The preceding list is meant as a guide only and is not inclusive. We assume no responsibility for its completeness or accuracy. If you have any questions concerning the legality of copying or printing certain items, consult with your legal advisor.

---

### Trademarks

---

Microsoft, Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe, Flash, Macromedia and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

PCL is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Monotype is a registered trademark of Monotype Imaging, Inc.

UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries, licensed exclusively through X/Open Company Limited.

Netscape is a registered trademark of Netscape Communication Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.

AppleTalk, ColorSync, Mac OS, Macintosh, and Power Mac are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Intel and Intel Core are registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

PowerPC is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States and other countries.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

- The product names of Windows 2000 are as follows:
  - Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional
  - Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Server
  - Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Advanced Server
- The product names of Windows XP are as follows:
  - Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional
  - Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition
  - Microsoft® Windows® XP Media Center Edition
  - Microsoft® Windows® XP Tablet PC Edition
- The product names of Windows Vista are as follows:
  - Microsoft® Windows Vista® Ultimate
  - Microsoft® Windows Vista® Business
  - Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Premium
  - Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Basic
  - Microsoft® Windows Vista® Enterprise
- The product names of Windows Server 2003 are as follows:
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Standard Edition
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Enterprise Edition
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Web Edition
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Datacenter Edition
- The product names of Windows Server 2003 R2 are as follows:
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Standard Edition
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Enterprise Edition
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Datacenter Edition
- The product names of Windows Server 2008 are as follows:
  - Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise  
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Datacenter  
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 for Itanium-based Systems  
Microsoft® Windows® Web Server 2008  
Microsoft® Windows® HPC Server 2008  
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard without Hyper-V™  
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise without Hyper-V™  
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Datacenter without Hyper-V™

---

## Disclaimer

---

Contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

For good print quality, the supplier recommends that you use genuine print cartridges from the supplier.

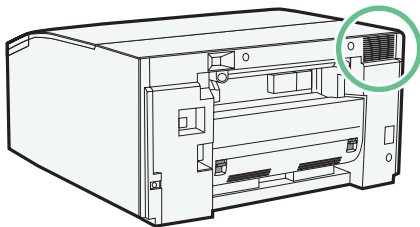
The supplier shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that might result from the use of parts other than genuine parts from the supplier with your office products.

---

## User's Notes

---

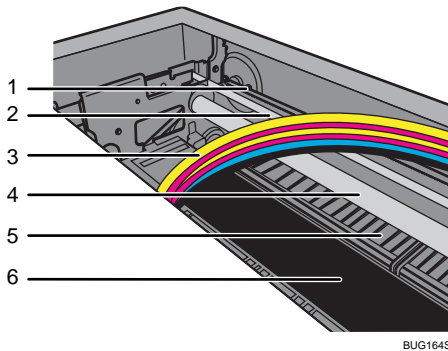
- High temperatures inside the printer can cause a breakdown. Do not lean anything against the vent or block it in any way.



BUG100S

- Warm air from the vent is normal and not a cause for concern.
- Do not leave the left, top, or right front cover open. If you do, dust or other matter might get inside the printer, and this will reduce print quality.
- During printing, do not move the printer or open its covers.
- Do not open the left, top, or right front cover during printing. If you do, printing will stop.

- During printing, do not pull out a paper tray. Printing will stop and the paper will jam.
- Do not touch the feed belt, the transparent black band, print head rail rod, ink tubes, paper pressing board, or the toothed rubber belt. Also, take care not to snag any cables or ink tubes with your sleeves.



BUG164S

- 1. Toothed rubber belt**
- 2. Transparent black band**
- 3. Ink tubes**
- 4. Print head rail rod**
- 5. Paper pressing board**
- 6. Feed belt**

- Take care not to let paper clips and other foreign objects fall inside the printer.
- After you install the print cartridge and switch the printer on for the first time, the print head priming process will begin. This process sometimes clogs the print head. If this happens, perform the head cleaning procedure.
- During printing, do not turn off the power or unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- During printing, do not subject the printer to external shock such as that caused by tapping paper on it.
- When not using the printer, turn off the power.
- You can place up to 20 kg (44.1 lb.) of evenly spread weight on the printer. Do not place any concentrated weight of more than 5 kg (11.1 lb.) on the printer.
- Do not place unsteady objects on the printer. If they fall, they will cause injury to users and/or damage to the printer.
- This printer has a nominal operational life of 5 years if used normally for 12 hours a day to produce up to 3,300 A4 prints a month. Exceeding these limits may reduce the operational life. The operational life also depends on the environment in which the printer is used.
- "Total Counter" displays the number of pages printed. Use "Total Counter" to estimate the number of pages that can be printed within the printer's remaining operational life. The printer's operational life is calculated based on the number of pages that it can print on plain paper in [Speed priority] mode.

- This printer is designed to have an operational life of 5 years or be good for 200,000 pages.
- Depending on your printing document, the ink collector unit may fill up sooner than normal.  
An "Ink Collector almost full" message appears shortly before the ink collector unit is full. Although the printer remains usable until the unit is completely full, contact your sales or service representative as early as possible (charge incurred).
- Print cartridges should be used up before their expiry date, ideally within six months of being removed from their packaging.
- Cartridges that are no longer usable for printing reserve a small quantity of ink for maintenance usage.
- Print cartridges and supplies comply with the manufacturer's safety specifications. To ensure safety and reliability, use genuine print cartridges and supplies.
- Single-sided copies are printed at higher density than duplex-printed copies.
- For print quality and consistency, this printer always uses all the available ink colors (black, cyan, yellow, and magenta) to produce print images. Even if your print image is black and white or [Black and White] is selected in the printer properties dialog box, all ink colors will still be used.
- Printing stops if one of the print cartridges becomes empty. If a cartridge containing a color ink such as cyan, yellow, or magenta becomes empty, you cannot print, even in black/white. If a message prompting you to change the print cartridge appears, change the cartridge as soon as possible.
- Printing hundreds of copies in a single day might cause the print head to clog the following day. If this happens, perform the head cleaning procedure.
- This printer performs regular automatic maintenance, after and during printing, to ensure consistent print quality. Maintenance is also performed when printing begins after a period of disuse.
- Color ink may be used even if you print all-black text or if you specify black and white printing. It may also be used for print head cleaning and refreshing, which are done to maintain printer performance.
- If the printer will not be used for a long time, turn its power off, disconnect the USB cable, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet. Because the printer consumes a lot of ink for maintenance and print head cleaning when switched on after a long period of inactivity, we recommended you use the printer at least once a month.
- Do not move the printer while it is powered. Even when it is off, make sure the printer is on a level surface and safe from shock and vibration.
- Do not switch the printer off while it is busy. Make sure the printer is idle before switching it off.
- Condensation can form inside the printer if it is moved from a cold place to a warm place. Allow any condensation to fully evaporate by not switching the printer on for at least an hour after moving it.

---

## Manuals for This Printer

---

Read the appropriate manual according to what you want to do.

## **Quick Installation Guide**

This guide briefly explains how to unpack and install the printer.

## **User Guide (HTML)**

This guide, which is on the CD-ROM, explains in detail how to use the printer.

The guide explains how to make network and printer driver settings, and how to make and check printer settings using a Web browser and other utilities.

The guide also contains troubleshooting procedures, such as those related to printing and paper jams, and important information about types of paper and replacing consumables.

We recommend you install this guide on your computer so you can refer to it easily.

## **Safety Information**

This booklet contains important information about using the machine safely and correctly. Be sure to read this before using the machine.



# How to Read This Manual

Be sure to read this section before anything else.

- This guide uses Windows XP procedures for its examples. Procedures and screens might vary depending on the operating system you are using.

The color samples in this manual may differ slightly from the colors of actual copies.

Some illustrations in this manual might be slightly different from the machine.

Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer.

Depending on which country you are in, certain units may be optional. For details, please contact your local dealer.

This printer supports the PCL and RPCS Raster printer drivers.

1

## Description for the Specified Model

In this manual, the following items explain about the machine for the specified models:

**-22, -27**

Information under these numbers is applicable to J018-22 and J018-27 models. You can identify the model code by checking the label on the rear of the machine.

Read if you purchase this model.

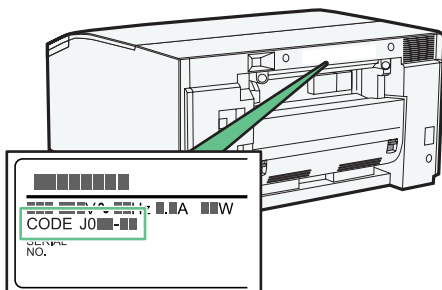
**-17**

Information under this number is applicable to J018-17 model. You can identify the model code by checking the label on the rear of the machine.

Read if you purchase this model.

### ↓ Note

- You can identify the machine's model code by checking the label on the rear of the machine as shown.



BUG101S

---

## Symbols

---

The following set of symbols is used in this manual.

### **Important**

Indicates points to pay attention to when using the machine, and explanations of likely causes of paper misfeeds, damage to originals, or loss of data. Be sure to read these explanations.

### **Note**

Indicates supplementary explanations of the machine's functions, and instructions on resolving user errors.

### **Reference**

This symbol is located at the end of sections.

It indicates where you can find further relevant information.

[ ]

Indicates the names of keys and buttons.

---

## Installing User Guide

---

Follow the procedure below to install User Guide only.

If you installed the software when performing [Quick Install for USB] or [Quick Install for Network], there is no need to install it again here.

### **Important**

- The following explanation uses Windows XP as an example. Procedures under other operating systems may differ.
- Screens vary according to the operating environment.

#### **1. Start Windows, and insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

Quit all other applications currently running.

After inserting the CD-ROM, the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] dialog box appears. If it does not, double-click the CD-ROM drive icon under [My Computer] or [Explorer], and then double-click [SETUP.EXE].

#### **2. Select a language for the interface, and then click [OK].**

#### **3. Click [User Guide].**

#### **4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].**

#### **5. Confirm the location in which you want to install User Guide, and then click [Next >].**

To change the installation location, click [Change...].

6. Confirm the program folder in which you want to install User Guide, and then click [Next >].

7. Click [Install].

Installation starts.

During installation, a message asking whether you want to create a desktop shortcut icon is displayed. Click [Yes] or [No] as appropriate.

8. When installation is complete, click [Finish].

#### Reference

- To use the printer, the printer driver must be installed. See p.68 "Installing the PCL or RPCS Raster Printer Driver (USB)".

---

## How to Use User Guide

---

User Guide (on the provided CD-ROM) includes detailed information about this printer and a troubleshooting guide.

Use one of the browsers below to display User Guide.

- Windows:  
Microsoft Internet Explorer Version 4.01 SP2 or later
- MacOS  
Microsoft Internet Explorer Version 5 or later

When using Safari, a simplified User Guide is displayed.

To view the video files of User Guide, Adobe Flash Player (Macromedia Flash Player 5 or later) plug-in is required.

### **When using screen reader software or when you cannot install Adobe Flash Player (Macromedia Flash Player 5 or later) plug-ins**

When using screen reader software to listen to User Guide or when video files cannot be displayed because Flash plug-ins cannot be installed, click [For screen reader] to display User Guide version optimized for screen reader software.

Use the button in the upper right window to change the screen.

### **When using a non-recommended browser**

When using Internet Explorer 3.02 or Netscape Navigator 4.05 or later versions, a simplified User Guide is displayed.

#### Note

- If the simplified User Guide does not automatically appear, in the CD-ROM's [unv] folder, open index.htm.

## Opening from the Icon

---

This section explains how to open User Guide from the desktop icon.

1. **Double-click the User Guide icon on your desktop.**



The browser opens, and then User Guide appears.

## Opening from the [Start] Menu

---

This section explains how to open User Guide from the Windows Start menu.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs], point to [Product Name], and then click [Product Name User Guide].**

The browser opens, and then User Guide appears.

### ↓ Note

- Depending on the settings made during installation, menu folder names may differ.

## Opening from the Printer Driver

---

This section explains how to open User Guide from the printer driver.

1. **In the printer properties dialog box, click [User Guide] on the [Setup] tab.**

The browser opens, and then User Guide appears.

## Opening from the CD-ROM

---

This section explains how to open User Guide from the supplied CD-ROM.

1. **Start Windows, and insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

After inserting the CD-ROM, the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] dialog box appears. If it does not, double-click the CD-ROM drive icon under [My Computer] or [Explorer], and then double-click [SETUP.EXE].

2. **Select a language for the interface, and then click [OK].**
3. **Click [Browse User Guide].**

The browser opens, and then User Guide appears.

---

## Opening from Printer Status Error Messages

---

This section explains how to open User Guide when Printer Status error message is displayed.

1. The Status monitor displays an error message if a problem occurs.
2. Click [User Guide].

The browser opens, and then User Guide appears.

Open User Guide from here if a problem occurs while using the printer.

---

## Removing the User Guide

---

Follow the procedure below to remove the User Guide installed on your computer.

### Removing the User Guide using its [Uninstall] function

1. On [Start] menu, point to [All Programs].
2. Point to the installed [Product name], and then click [Uninstall User Guide].
3. Follow the instructions that appear to remove the User Guide.

### Removing the User Guide using [Add/Remove Programs]

1. On [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
2. Click [Add or Remove Programs].
3. Select the installed [Product name User Guide], and then click [Remove].
4. Follow the instructions that appear to remove the User Guide.

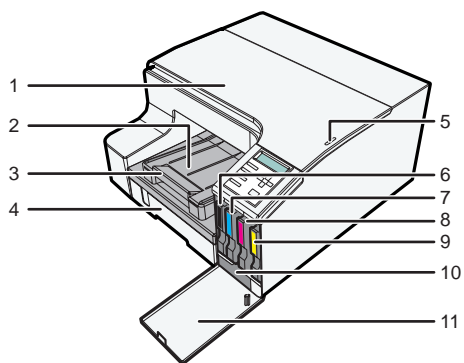
# Guide to Components

The names and functions of parts of the printer body, control panel, and options are explained.

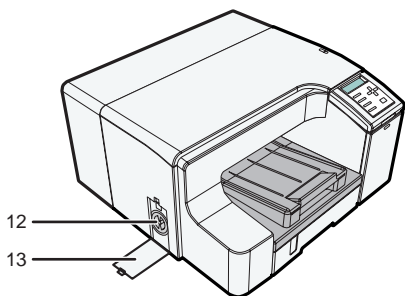
1

## Machine Body

This is a front view of the printer.



BUG102S



BUG103S

### 1. Top Cover

Normally, keep this cover closed. If you cannot locate paper jams, or jammed paper cannot be removed easily, you can check the condition of paper from the top of the printer.

### 2. Output Ramp

Prints are delivered on the output ramp.

### 3. Output Ramp Extension


Pull out when using large paper to keep the printed paper from falling.

### 4. Tray 1

Load paper here.

If you want to print on paper larger than A4 or letter size, pull the tray extension out.

**5. Envelope Selector**

For envelopes, set the lever to the rear position ; for everything else, set the lever to the forward position .

**6. Print Cartridge (black)****7. Print Cartridge (cyan)****8. Print Cartridge (magenta)****9. Print Cartridge (yellow)****10. Ink Collector Unit****11. Right Front Cover**

During normal usage, keep this cover closed. Open this cover only when you need to install or replace an ink cartridge or the ink collector unit.

**12. Paper Feed Wheel**

Use to wind out paper jammed around the guide board.

**13. Left Cover**

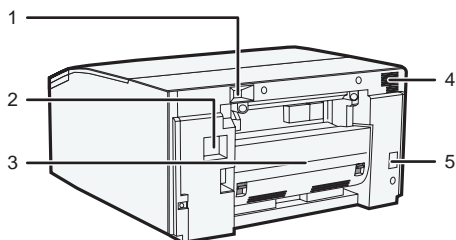
Normally, keep this cover closed. Open this cover when you need to turn the paper feed wheel.

---

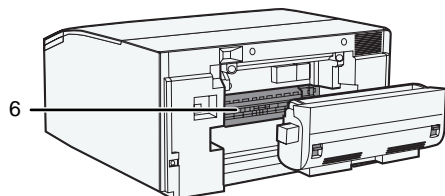
## Machine Rear

---

This is a rear view of the printer.



BUG104S



BUG105S

**1. USB slot**

Connect the USB cable from the computer here.

**2. Ethernet port**

Use a network interface cable to connect the printer to a network.

**3. Duplex Unit**

Turns the paper over when performing duplex printing.

**4. Vent**

Air is vented here to prevent the inside of the printer from getting too warm. Do not lean anything against the vent or block it in any way. If the inside of the printer gets too warm, a breakdown could occur.

**5. Power inlet**

Plug the power cord.

Plug one end of the power cord into the printer's power inlet and the other end into a wall outlet.

Connect the grounding wire attached to the power plug directly to a grounding terminal.

**6. Guide board**

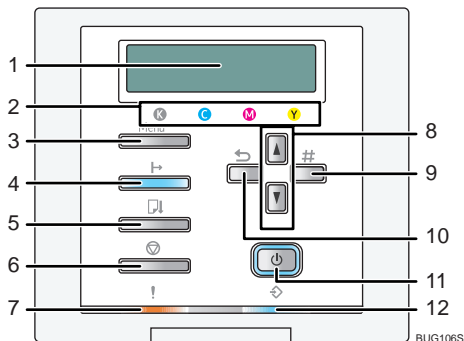
To remove paper that has jammed inside the printer, open the guide board by removing the duplex unit.

---

## Control Panel

---

The illustrations in this manual show the **-22, -27** model. The **-17** model may differ slightly from the illustrated model.



**1. Display**

Displays current printer status and error messages.

**2. Cartridge replacement indicator**

Each color corresponds to a print cartridge. From the left, the colors show the status of the black (K), cyan (C), magenta (M), and yellow (Y) cartridges.

**3. [Menu] key**

Press this key to make and check the current printer settings.



**4. [Online] key**

Indicates whether the printer is online or offline. Press this to switch between online and offline.

When the lamp is lit, the printer is online, enabling data reception from the host computer.

When the lamp is unlit, the printer is offline, disabling data reception from the host computer.

Press to return to the ready condition.

**5. [Form Feed] key**

When the printer is offline, press this to print all data left in the printer's input buffer.

You can use this to force the printer to print data received in the online status when the paper size or type does not match the actually set size or type.

If a message prompting you to remove the jammed paper by pressing the [Form Feed] key appears, press this key.

**6. [Job Reset] key**

When the printer is online, press this key to cancel an ongoing print job.

**7. Alert indicator**

Lights up whenever a printer error occurs. A red light indicates an error has occurred that makes printing impossible; blinks red to indicate a possible error during printing.

If the red light is on, follow the instructions that appear on the display.

**8. [▲][▼] keys**

Use these keys to increase or decrease values on the display when making settings.

Keep the key pressed to quicken scrolling, and increase or decrease values on the display in units of 10.

To apply this function: under [Maintenance], set [Key Repeat] to [On].

When the printer is online and the "Ready" message is displayed on the control panel, press the [▼] key to clean the cyan, magenta, yellow, and black print heads ([-17] only).

**9. [#Enter] key**

Press this key to execute menu items selected on the display.

**10. [Escape] key**

Press this key to return to the previous condition on the display.

**11. [Power] key**

- Press to turn the power on and off.
- To turn the power on, press and hold down the [Power] key for one second until it lights.
- After the power is turned on, the [Power] key will flash until the printer is ready for printing, at which point the key will stop flashing and remain lit.
- When the power is turned off, the key will blink slowly until the printer has completely shut down at which point the key will be dark.
- ⏻ means "standby". To avoid any power consumption, disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

**12. Data In indicator**

Blinks when the printer is receiving data from a computer or when the printer is carrying out maintenance. The Data In indicator is lit if there is data to be printed.

### Reference

- For details about the Key Repeat, see p.159 "Performing Maintenance using the Control Panel (Maintenance Menu)".

# 1

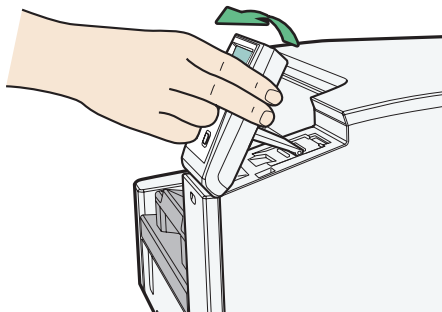
## Adjusting the Angle of the Control Panel

You can adjust the angle of the control panel for easier usage.

Use the following procedure to adjust the angle of the control panel.

### Raising the Control Panel

1. Raise the control panel by carefully pulling it upward and forward.

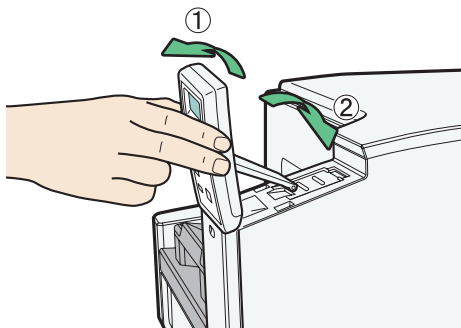


BPR189S

2. Insert the stopper on the back of the control panel into one of the grooves beneath.

### Lowering the Control Panel

1. Carefully pull the control panel slightly forward (①).



BPR190S

2. Lower the control panel (②).

### Note

- You can set the tilt to one of three angles.

# Making Printer Settings Using the Control Panel

This section explains how to change the default settings of the printer and provides information about the parameters included in each menu. For details about procedures and settings, see the information under in [Reference](#).

1

## Counter

Menu
Show Counter
Print

## Paper Input

Menu
Tray Paper Size
Paper Type
Aut.Tray Select
Tray Priority

## List/Test Print

Menu
Config. Page
Color Demo Page
Error Log
PCL Config. Page

## Maintenance

Menu
Nozzle Check
Head-cleaning
Head-flushing

Menu
Head Position
Adj. Paper Feed
Registration
Date/Time
Key Repeat
Dry-delay (Exit)
Dry-delay (Dup)
Paper Feed Test
De-condensation

## System

Menu
Prt. Err Report
Auto Continue
Sub Paper Size
Energy Saver
Notify by Email
Memory Usage
Unit of Measure
Page Size
Paper Type
Preprinted Ppr
Copies
Duplex
Blank Pg. Print

Menu
Tray Switching
Uni-direct.Prt.
Density
Color Mode
Recycl.Ppr.Mode
Env.Slctr.Alert
Pg Recov. Error
Ink C.U. Space

**Host Interface**

Menu
I/O Timeout
Network Setup
USB Setting

**PCL Menu**

Menu
Orientation
Form Lines
Font Source
Font Number
Point Size
Font Pitch
Symbol Set
Courier Font
Ext. A4 Width

Menu
Append CR to LF
Resolution
Black Printing

## Language

Menu
Japanese
English
German
French
Italian
Dutch
Danish
Swedish
Norwegian
Spanish
Finnish
Portuguese
Czech ([-22, -27] only)
Polish ([-22, -27] only)
Hungarian ([-22, -27] only)

### Reference

- p.157 "Checking the Number of Printed Pages using the Control Panel (Counter Menu)"
- p.94 "Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)"
- p.65 "Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu)"
- p.159 "Performing Maintenance using the Control Panel (Maintenance Menu)"

- p.178 "Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu)"
- p.73 "Specifying the Interface and Network Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Host Interface Menu)"
- p.184 "Specifying PCL Settings using the Control Panel (PCL Menu)"
- p.187 "Selecting the Control Panel Language"
- p.189 "Restricting Printer Functions"

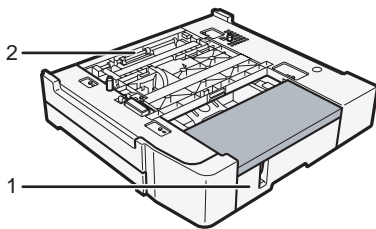
# Options

This section explains the names and functions of the various available options.

1

## Paper Feed Unit TK1110

This optional tray can hold 500 sheets.



BUG221S

### 1. Tray 2/Tray 3

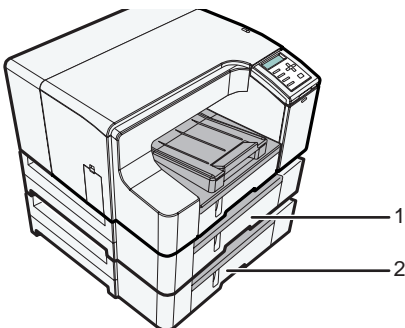
Load paper here.

If you want to print on paper larger than A4 or letter size, pull the tray extension out.

### 2. Rear Unit

The rear unit should be removed when a paper jam occurs in the paper feed unit.

Up to two paper feed units can be attached.



BUG232S

### 1. Tray 2

When two paper feed units are attached, the upper tray is referred to as tray 2.

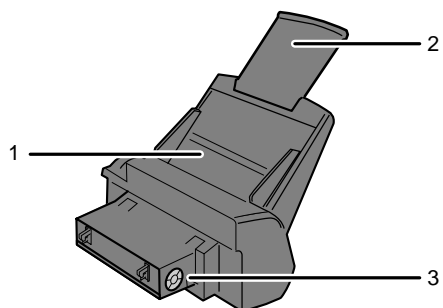
### 2. Tray 3

When two paper feed units are attached, the lower tray is referred to as tray 3.



## Multi Bypass Tray BY1000

Use this tray to feed in sheets manually.



BPR107S

### 1. Bypass tray

Load paper here.

### 2. Bypass tray extension

Pull this out according to the paper size.

### 3. Wheel

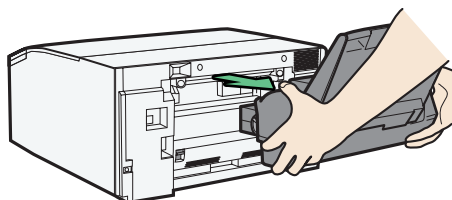
Use this to wind out paper that became jammed after being fed in from the bypass tray.

## Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray

To clear a paper jam, you might have to detach the bypass tray.

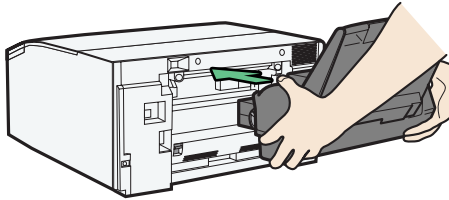
This section explains how to detach and reattach the bypass tray.

1. Remove any paper in the bypass tray.
2. Push the bypass tray extension in.
3. Detach the bypass tray.



BUG106S

#### 4. Reattach the bypass tray.



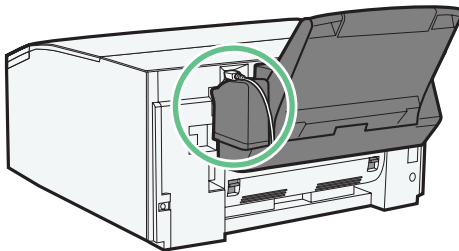
BUG109S

#### 5. Pull the bypass tray extension out.

#### 6. Load paper in the bypass tray.

#### ↓ Note

- After attaching the paper feed unit, you must register where to start printing on paper loaded in the paper feed unit.
- When you attach the bypass tray, take care not to trap the USB cable.



BUG198S

- When you detach and reattach the bypass tray, switch the printer off.

#### 📖 Reference

- For details about registering where to start printing on paper loaded in the paper feed unit, see p.170 "Registration".

---

# Recommended Functions

This section lists useful and recommended functions.

## **Automatically selecting the tray for printing**

See p.94 "Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)".

## **Copy-guard of printed documents for preventing information leaks**

See p.101 "Printing".

## **Notifying the printer status by e-mail on an occasion such as if the printer runs out of paper or paper is jammed**

See p.117 "Notifying the Printer Status by E-mail".



# 2. Preparing for Printing

---

## Setting Up the Hardware

This section explains how to install the printer.

---

### Checking the Computer and Installation Area

---

The printer's location should be carefully chosen because environmental conditions greatly affect its performance.

#### The area where the printer is to be placed

---

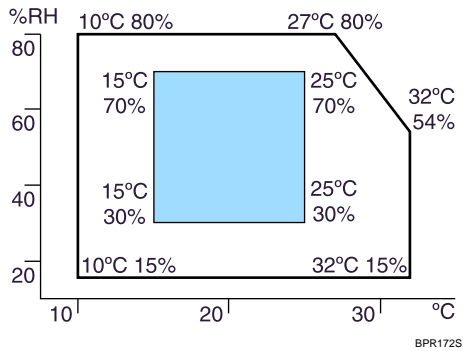
**★ Important**

- To avoid malfunctions, position the machine away from the following:
  - direct sunlight
  - flow of air from air conditioners or heaters
  - radios, televisions, or other electronic devices
  - areas of high/low temperature and high/low moisture
  - humidifying appliances
  - oil stoves and ammonia-emitting appliances (such as diazo copiers)

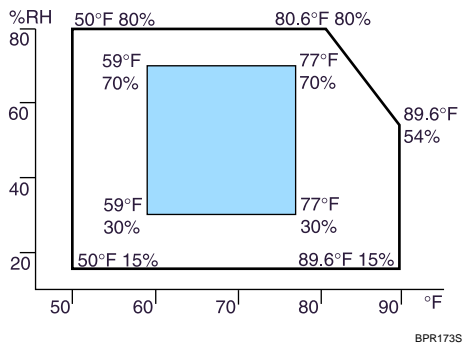
Choose a flat, stable area to install the machine.

- The surface should be level within two degrees, left to right and front to back.
- To prevent condensation, install the machine in an area where temperature and humidity conditions do not exceed those indicated in the diagram below.
- The machine may cease to print if these limitations are exceeded.

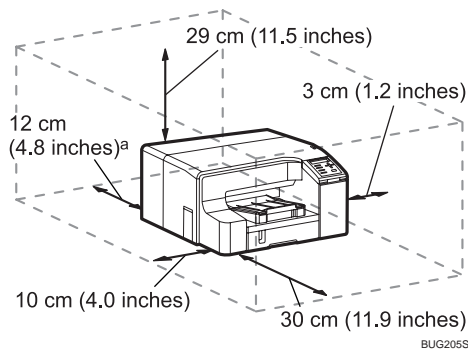
**-22, -27**



**-17**



- White area: Permissible Range
  - Blue area: Recommended Range
- The diagram below shows the ideal clearance for loading paper, replacing print cartridges, and removing jammed paper



a. If you attach the bypass tray (option), provide additional clearance of 29 cm (11.5 inches).

## Check the power source

### **WARNING**

- Keep the machine away from humidity and dust. Otherwise a fire or an electric shock might occur.
- Place the machine on a strong and level surface. Otherwise, the machine might fall and cause personal injury.
- If you use the machine in a confined space, confirm that there is a continuous flow of air.
- Only connect the machine to the power source described on this sheet.
- Avoid multi-wiring.
- Connect the power cord directly into a wall outlet and never use an extension cord.
- Do not damage, break or make any modifications to the power cord. Do not place heavy objects on it. Do not pull it hard nor bend it more than necessary. These actions could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Do not plug or unplug the power cord with your hands wet. Otherwise, an electric shock might occur.
- Make sure the wall outlet is near the machine and freely accessible so that in event of an emergency it can be unplugged easily.

The power requirements of this machine are as follows:

- 100-120 V: 50/60 Hz 1.2 A
- 220-240 V: 50/60 Hz 0.6 A

## Checking the Computer to be Connected

To use this printer, computers must meet the following specifications:

- PC/AT-compatible computer with USB or network interface
- Operating system: Windows 2000/ XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2008
- 80-100MB or more available hard disk space

### **Note**

- To operate this printer, your computer must have at least the amount of memory necessary to run its operating system.

## Checking the Supplied Items and Unpacking the Printer

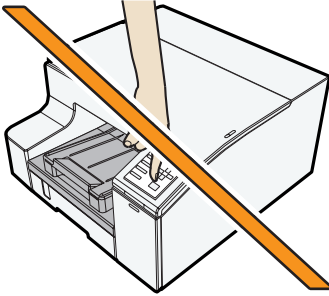
### **CAUTION**

- The machine weighs around 15.5 kg (34.2 lb) (29.9 kg (65.9 lb) with options installed).

- Careless handling and over exertion when lifting can result in breakage and/or injury.

**★ Important**

- Do not turn the machine on until you have read how to do so.



BUG1115

2

Open the box and take out all supplied items. Check that all the following items are present:

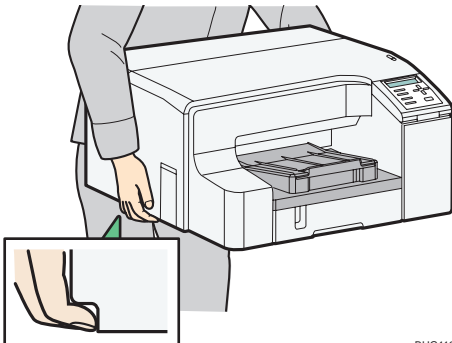
- Power Cord
- Starter cartridge - Cyan
- Starter cartridge - Magenta
- Starter cartridge - Yellow
- Starter cartridge - Black
- Quick Installation Guide
- Safety information
- CD-ROM; User Guide is included on this.

**1. Take off the protective covering.**

**2. Remove the plastic bag.**

**3. Lift the printer and move it to the place where you want to install it.**

Grip the indented area at the base of the printer's sides, as shown. Lift and carry the printer slowly and carefully.



BUG1125



#### 4. Remove the orange tape from the printer body.

##### ↓ Note

- We recommend you keep the box, so you can use it again when relocating the printer.
- Remove all the orange tape, except the tape around the power cord.
- USB and LAN cables are not supplied.

## 2

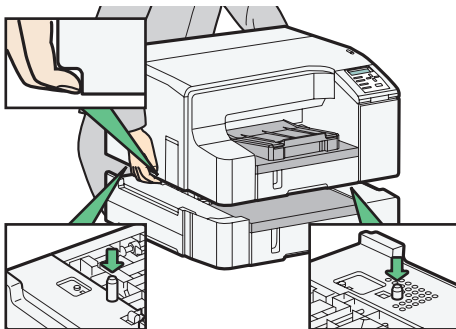
## Attaching the Options

### Attaching the Paper Feed Unit TK1110

#### ⚠ CAUTION

- The machine weighs around 15.5 kg (34.2 lb) (29.9 kg (65.9 lb) with options installed).
- Careless handling and over exertion when lifting can result in breakage and/or injury.

1. Make sure the printer's power cord is unplugged.
2. Take the paper feed unit out of its box.
3. Position the paper feed unit close to the printer.
4. Remove the orange tape from the paper feed unit.
5. Align the connecting parts of the printer and paper feed unit, and then lower the printer onto the paper feed unit.



BUG227S

After attaching the paper feed unit, you must register where to start printing on paper loaded in the paper feed unit.

##### ↓ Note

- Align the paper feed unit and printer using their corners.
- When the printer is placed on top of the paper feed unit, installation is complete.
- Do not tilt the printer.

- Be careful not to trap your fingers.
- Up to two paper feed units can be attached.
- To install two paper feed units, put the upper paper feed unit (tray 2) on the lower paper feed tray (tray 3) first, and then lower the printer onto the upper paper feed unit (tray 2).

**Reference**

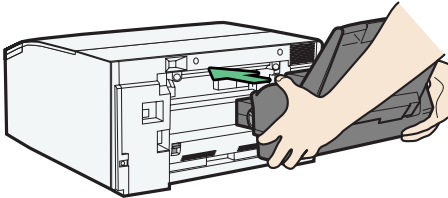
- For details about registering where to start printing on paper loaded in the paper feed unit, see p. 170 "Registration".

2

### Attaching the Multi Bypass Tray BY1000

---

1. Make sure the printer's power cord is unplugged.
2. Take the bypass tray out of its box.
3. Remove the orange tape from the bypass tray.
4. Fully insert the bypass tray.



BUG109S

5. When using the bypass tray, pull out its extension and adjust the side guides according to the size of the loaded paper.

After attaching the paper feed unit, you must register where to start printing on paper loaded in the paper feed unit.

**Reference**

- For details about registering where to start printing on paper loaded in the paper feed unit, see p. 170 "Registration".

---

### Installing the Print Cartridges

---

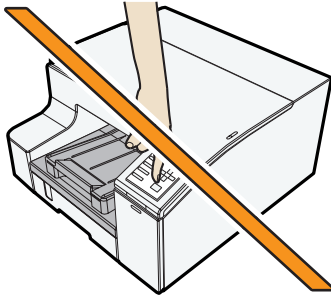
**CAUTION**

- If ink comes into contact with your eyes, rinse immediately in running water. For other symptoms, consult a doctor.

- If ink is ingested, induce vomiting by drinking a strong saline solution. Consult a doctor immediately.
- If your skin comes into contact with ink, wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water.
- Keep the ink or ink container out of reach of children.

**★ Important**

- Do not turn the machine on until you have read how to do so.



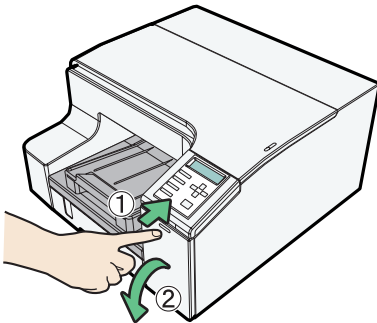
BUG111S

- Be sure to install the unused print cartridge that is supplied. Installing any other cartridge could result in incomplete ink filling and malfunction.

**1. Remove the packaging from the print cartridges.**

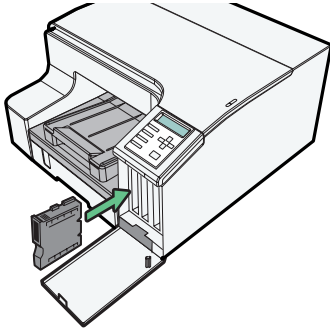
Do not touch the ink supply ports or silicon substrates of print cartridges.

- 2. While pressing the recessed area (①) of the right front cover, open the cover (②).**



BUG113S

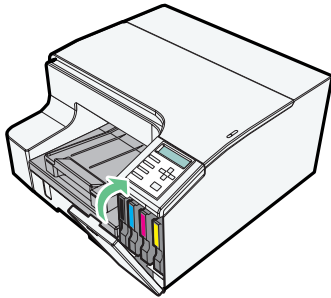
**3. Check the orientation of each cartridge, and then install them gently.**



BUG114S

Install in the following order from the left: black, cyan, magenta, and yellow.

- 4. Push in each cartridge.**
- 5. Repeat steps 3 to 4 for all four cartridges.**
- 6. Close the right front cover.**



BUG115S

---

## Plugging in the Power Cord and Turning the Power On

---

Before connecting the printer to a computer, connect the printer's power cord and switch the printer on.

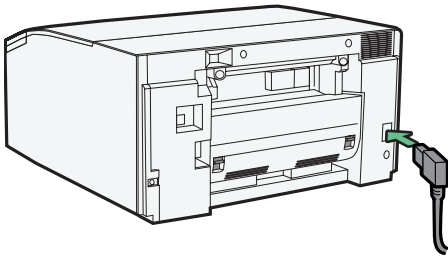
**⚠ WARNING**

- Only connect the machine to the power source described on this sheet.
- Avoid multi-wiring.
- Connect the power cord directly into a wall outlet and never use an extension cord.
- Do not damage, break or make any modifications to the power cord. Do not place heavy objects on it. Do not pull it hard nor bend it more than necessary. These actions could cause an electric shock or fire.

- Do not plug or unplug the power cord with your hands wet. Otherwise, an electric shock might occur.

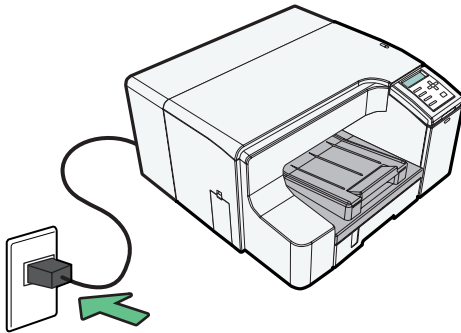
**★ Important**

- Do not handle the machine while the cartridge is being filled. Ink filling begins when the machine's power is switched on. Until the "Loading Ink..." message disappears from the control panel.
1. Remove the orange tape from around the power cord.
  2. Plug the power cord fully into the printer.



BUG116S

3. Plug the power cord fully into the wall outlet.

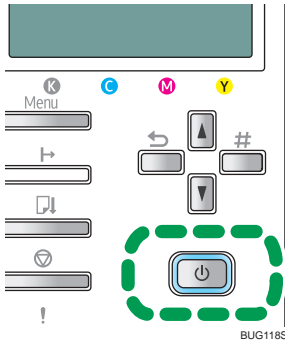


BUG117S

The surface should be level within two degrees.

Make sure the power cord is not trapped under the printer.

**4. Press the [Power] key.**



The printer starts feeding ink into its print-heads (taking approximately 10 minutes).

Make sure the "Ready" message is displayed on the control panel.

Do not switch off the power of the machine during this period. Make sure the plug is not removed from the wall outlet.

You might hear a clicking sound while the print heads are filling. This is not a malfunction. It will stop after a while.

---

## Loading Paper

---

Load paper into the paper tray.

Normally, load paper into tray 1.

**Note**

- Load paper with the paper grain parallel to the feed direction.

### Loading Paper into Tray 1

---

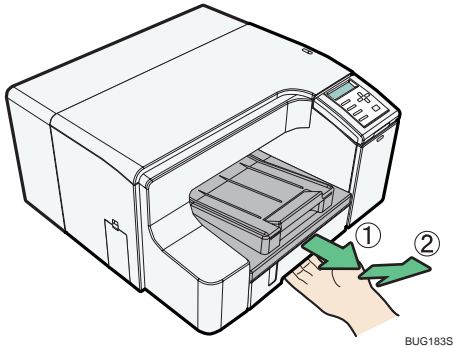
Follow the procedure below to load paper into tray 1.

A4/Letter size paper is loaded here.

**Important**

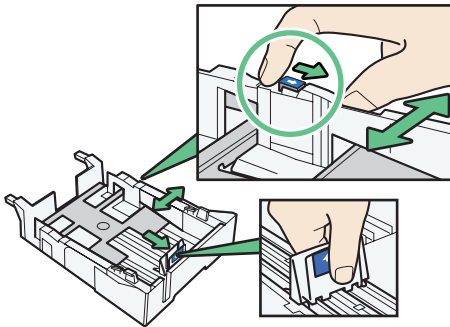
- Load A4/Letter size paper in  orientation.

1. Hold the Tray 1 grip, pull the tray halfway out, lift it slightly (①), and then pull it out further (②).



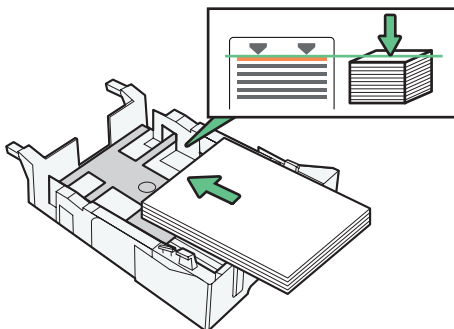
Pull tray 1 completely out. Take care not to drop it.

2. While squeezing the catch on the paper guide, slide the guide so it is positioned according to the paper size.

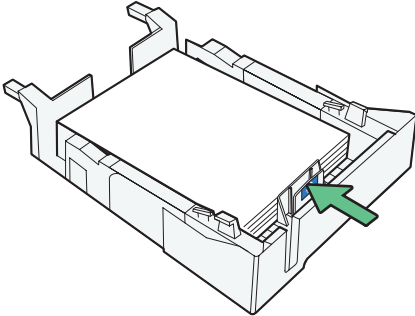


Beforehand, make sure to squeeze the front end paper guide, and then expand the guide.

3. Load paper with the print side face down but not over the limit mark.

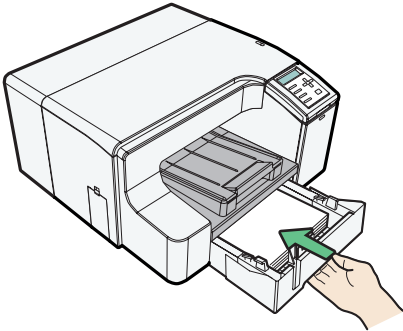


4. Squeeze the front end paper guide, and then slide it to meet the edge of the paper.



BPR123S

5. Push tray 1 gently in until it stops.



BUG125S

### Loading Paper Larger than A4/Letter (Tray 1)

---

Follow the procedure below to use the paper tray extension for paper larger than A4/Letter size, such as Legal size paper.

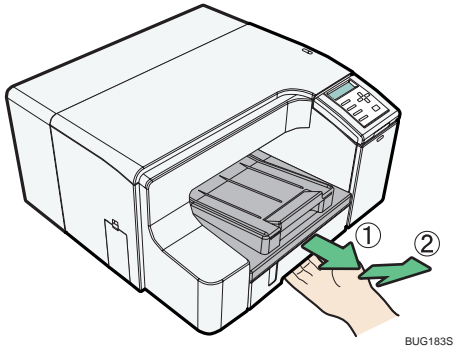
Legal size paper is loaded here.

**★ Important**

- Load Legal size paper in  orientation.

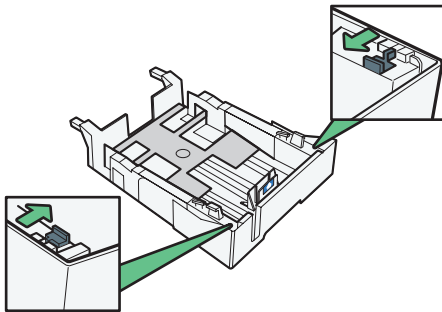


1. Hold the Tray 1 grip, pull the tray halfway out, lift it slightly (①), and then pull it out further (②).

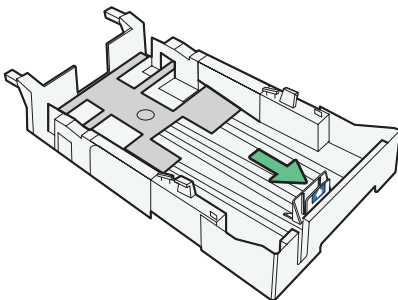


Pull tray 1 completely out. Take care not to drop it.

2. Slide the tabs on both sides of the tray's interior to the unlocked position.

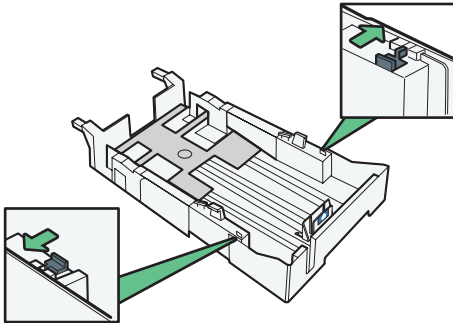


3. Pull out the paper tray extension.



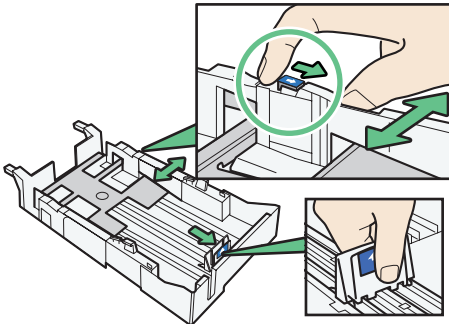
2

4. Slide the tabs back into place to lock the paper tray extension into position.



BPR168S

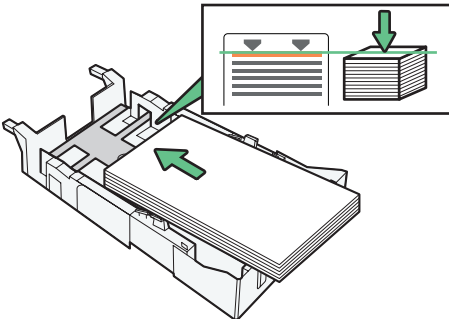
5. While squeezing the catch on the paper guide, slide the guide so it is positioned according to the paper size.



BPR169S

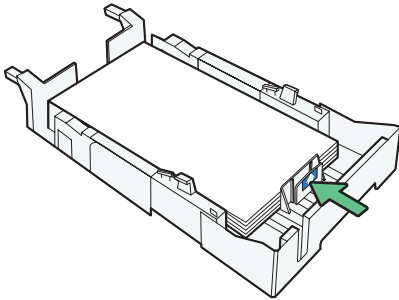
Do not use the paper tray extension for A4 (Letter) size paper or smaller paper. Use it only for long paper.

6. Load paper with the print side face down but not over the limit mark.



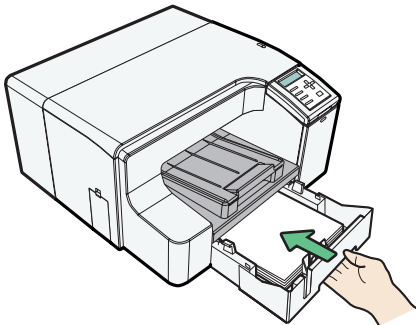
BPR170S

7. Squeeze the front end paper guide, and then slide it to meet the edge of the paper.



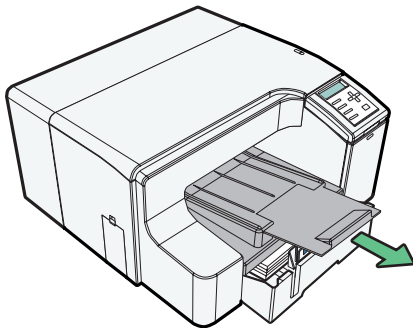
BPR171S

8. Push tray 1 gently in until it stops.



BUG174S

9. Pull out the output ramp extension.



BUG175S

## Loading Paper into Tray 2/Tray 3

Follow the procedure below to load paper into tray 2/tray 3.

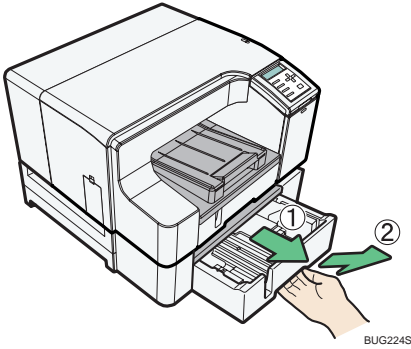
You can load plain paper and inkjet plain paper in tray 2/tray 3.

A4/Letter size paper is loaded here.

**★ Important**

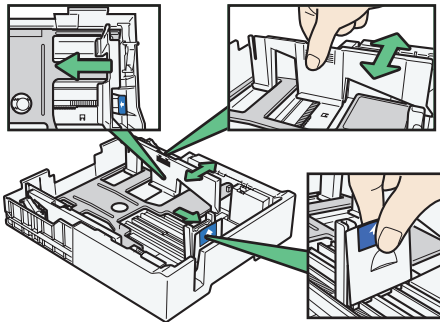
- Load A4/Letter paper in  orientation.

1. Hold the Tray 2/Tray 3 grip, pull the tray halfway out, lift it slightly (①), and then pull it out further (②).



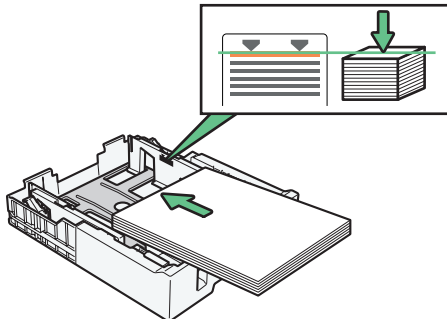
Pull tray 2/tray 3 completely out. Take care not to drop it.

2. While squeezing the catch on the paper guide, slide the guide so it is positioned according to the paper size.

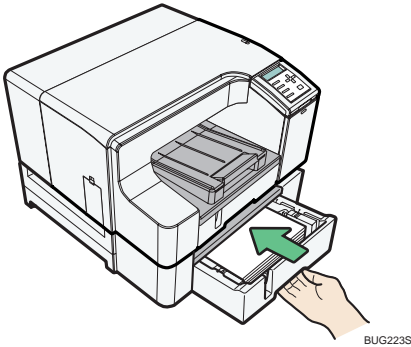


Beforehand, make sure to squeeze the front end paper guide, and then expand the guide.

3. Load paper with the print side face down but not over the limit mark.



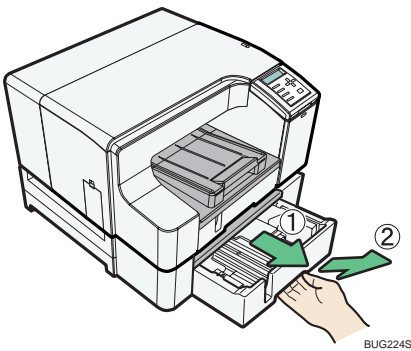
4. Push tray 2/tray 3 gently in until it stops.



### Loading Paper Larger than A4/Letter (Tray 2/Tray 3)

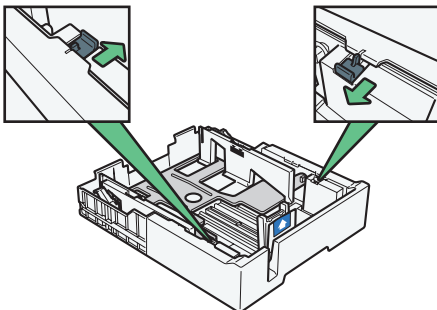
Follow the procedure below to use the paper tray extension for paper larger than A4/Letter size, such as Legal size paper.

1. Hold the Tray 2/Tray 3 grip, pull the tray halfway out, lift it slightly (①), and then pull it out further (②).

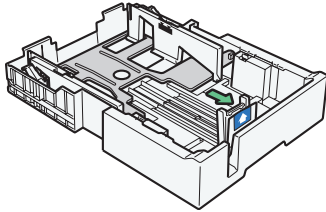


Pull tray 2/tray 3 completely out. Take care not to drop it.

2. Slide the tabs on both sides of the tray's interior to the unlocked position.

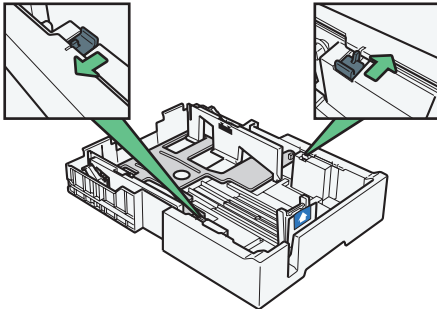


**3. Pull out the paper tray extension.**



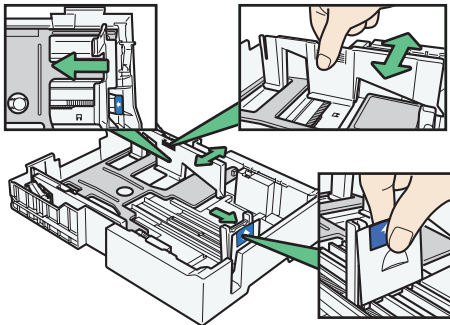
BUG236S

**4. Slide the tabs back into place to lock the paper tray extension into position.**



BUG237S

**5. While squeezing the catch on the paper guide, slide the guide so it is positioned according to the paper size.**

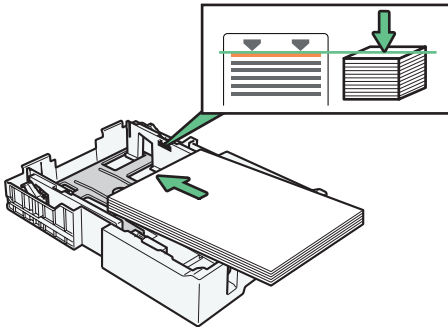


BUG238S

Do not use the paper tray extension for A4 (Letter) size paper or smaller paper. Use it only for long paper.

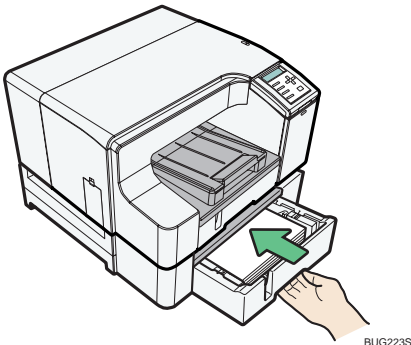
Beforehand, make sure to squeeze the front end paper guide, and then expand the guide.

6. Load paper with the print side face down but not over the limit mark.



BUG239S

7. Push tray 2/tray 3 gently in until it stops.



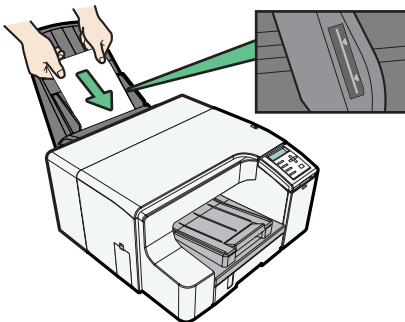
BUG223S

### Loading Paper into Bypass Tray (optional)

Follow the procedure below to load paper into bypass tray.

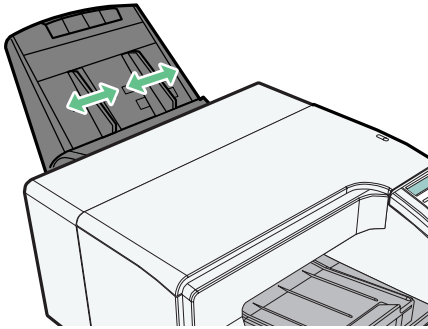
A4/Letter size paper is loaded here.

1. Pull the bypass tray extension out all the way.
2. Load paper in the bypass tray with the side to be printed on facing up.



BUG126S

Before loading narrow paper, position the side paper guides according to the paper size.



BUG176S

## Printing a Configuration Page

After setting up the hardware and before connecting the printer to a computer, make a test print by printing the configuration page.

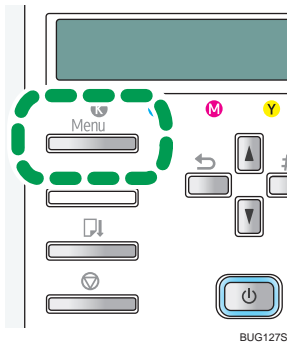
Printing the configuration page as a test print primes the print heads and allows you to check that the printer is functional.

You can also use the configuration page to check the printer's configuration and system settings.

### ★ Important

- The configuration page is printed on A4 or Letter (8 1/2" × 11") size paper, so load them in the same paper tray.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



BUG127S

2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [List/Test Print], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:  
List/Test Print
```

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Config. Page], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
List/Test Print:  
Config. Page
```



The configuration page is printed.

The List/Test Print menu screen returns on completion of printing.

Check whether the print-head nozzles are clogged up or not by printing a nozzle check test pattern.

#### **4. Hold the [Power] key down until the printer shuts down.**

If you are connecting the printer to a computer via USB, proceed to p.56 "Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (USB Connection)".

If you are connecting the printer to a network, proceed to p.60 "Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (Network Connection)".

#### **Reference**

- For details about printing a nozzle check test pattern, see p.160 "Nozzle Check".
- For details about the items on the configuration page, see p.65 "Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu)".

# Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (USB Connection)

After setting up the hardware and making a test print, connect the printer to your computer. This section explains how to connect the printer to a computer using a USB cable, and how to install the software using "Quick Install".

### Reference

- For details about the connection method, see p.66 "Confirming the Connection Method".
- For details about the installing the printer driver only, see p.68 "Installing the PCL or RPCS Raster Printer Driver (USB)".

---

## Before Installing the Software (USB)

---

Before installing the software, connect the printer to your computer using a USB cable.

### Note

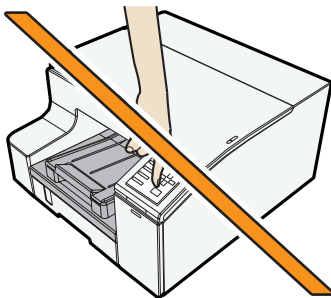
- Even if the computer that you are connecting the printer to via USB is networked, you can still connect the printer and computer according to the procedure explained in this section. For details about sharing the printer, see p.70 "Sharing the Printer".

## Connecting the Printer via USB

---

### 1. Make sure the printer is off.

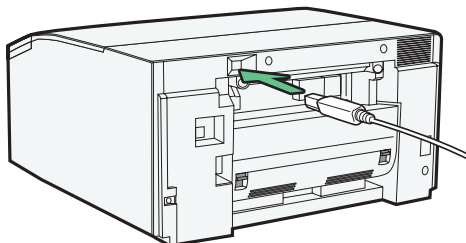
Do not turn the printer on until you have read how to do so.



BUG111S

### 2. Turn on the power of the computer, and start Windows.

3. Remove the seal on the USB slot located on the rear of the printer, and then insert the USB cable's hexagonal (type B) plug firmly into the slot.



BUG128S

4. Insert the USB cable's rectangular (type A) plug firmly into the computer's USB slot.

**Note**

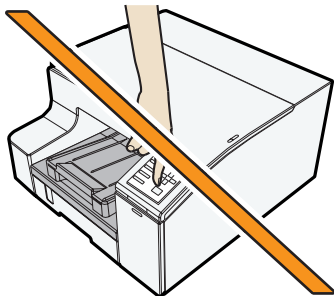
- Insert the USB cable's plug with the USB mark facing down.
- Make sure that the USB cable is fully inserted.
- Make sure the USB cable is connected properly, especially when the bypass tray is attached to the printer, because the tray makes connecting the cable difficult.

## Quick Install for USB

Follow the procedure below to install the printer driver and User Guide.

**Important**

- Do not turn the printer on until you have read how to do so.



BUG111S

- Only administrators can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.

### Notes on the Installation (USB Connection)

If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Software Installation] , [Hardware Installation] or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears:

1. Click [Yes], [Continue Anyway] or [Install this driver software anyway] to continue the installation.

If the [Found New Hardware Wizard] dialog box appears:

1. Click [Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)], and then click [Next >].
2. Click [Include this location in the search], and then click [Browse].
3. Browse to "DRIVERS" on the CD-ROM, and then click [OK]. Select the folder appropriate for your operating system.

Be sure to clear the [Search remove media (floppy, CD-ROM...)] check box.

For details about the files stored on the CD-ROM labeled, see p.287 "Software on the CD-ROM".

#### 1. Start Windows, and insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

Quit all applications currently running.

When you start Windows, the "Add New Hardware Wizard" may appear. If this happens, click [Cancel]. Check again that the power is off.

#### 2. Select a language for the interface, and then click [OK].

#### 3. Click [Quick Install for USB].

#### 4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].

#### 5. Check that the power of the printer is off, and then click [Next >].

#### 6. Check again that the power of the printer is off, and then click [Next >].

Check that the dialog box below appears.

If the [Software Installation] or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears, see "Notes on the Installation".

#### 7. Make sure that the computer and printer are properly connected, and then press the [Power] key.

Installation starts.

If the connection to the computer was not confirmed, make the port settings again after installation is complete.

If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Found New Hardware Wizard] or [Hardware Installation] dialog box appears, see "Notes on the Installation".

#### 8. Select whether or not to open the printer status monitor automatically, and then click [Next >].

**9. Check the installation result, and then click [Next >].**

Install User Guide.

**10. Click [Finish].**

The printer driver and User Guide are now installed.

If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Found New Hardware Wizard] or [Hardware Installation] dialog box appears, see "Notes on the Installation".

**↓ Note**

- After inserting the CD-ROM, the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] dialog box appears. If it does not, double-click the CD-ROM drive icon under [My Computer] or [Explorer], and then double-click [Setup.exe].
- When installation is complete, the User Guide icon appears on your desktop.
- If a message prompting you to restart the computer appears, restart the computer.
- Confirm the printer driver is correctly installed by checking the printer's [Power] key is lit, and then performing a test print.

# Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (Network Connection)

After setting up the hardware and making a test print, connect the printer to your computer. This section explains how to connect the printer to a computer via Ethernet cable, and how to use "Quick Install".

## Reference

- For details about the connection method, see p.66 "Confirming the Connection Method".
- For details about the installing the printer driver only, see p.76 "Installing the Drivers for Network Connection".

## Before Installing the Software (Network Connection)

Connect the printer and computer via Ethernet cable. Then, on the printer's control panel, specify the printer's network settings according to the network environment, and then install the software.

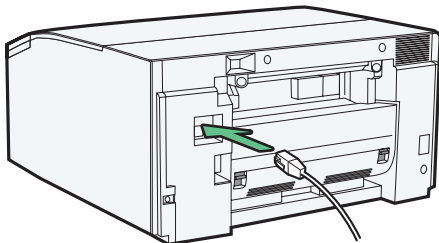
## Connecting the Printer via the Network

Be sure to install all necessary network equipment, such as hubs, etc. before connecting the Ethernet cable to the printer.

You can connect a 10BASE-T or 100BASE-TX cable to the printer.

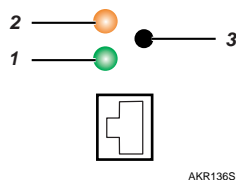
## Important

- **Ethernet cables are not supplied with this printer. Select your cable according to the network environment.**
1. **Plug the Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port on the rear of the printer.**



BUG124S

2. **Connect the other end of the cable to the printer's network, such as to a hub.**  
Check the LEDs on the Ethernet port



### 1. Indicator (green)

Remains green as long as the machine is properly connected to the network via 100 BASE-TX cable. Unlit if 10 BASE-T cable is connected.

### 2. Indicator (orange)

Lights whenever the printer is sending or receiving data via the network.

### 3. [Reset] key

Press this to initialize and reboot the network interface board.

2

## Specifying Settings on the Control Panel

Make the following network settings according to the network interface you are using.

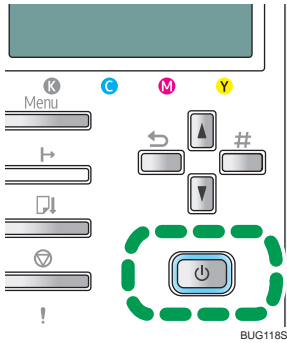
If you have connected the printer to a network, make the required network environment settings.

The following table shows the control panel settings and their default values. These items appear in the [Network Setup] menu.

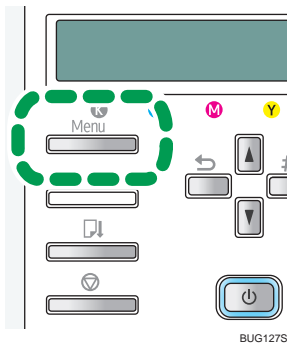
Setting Name	Value
1.DHCP	On
2.IP Address	0.0.0.0
3.Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0
4.Gateway Address	0.0.0.0
5.Active Protocol	TCP/IP: Active
6.Ethernet Speed	Auto Select

The following example explains making settings for TCP/IP.

1. Press the [Power] key.



2. Press the [Menu] key.



The Menu screen appears on the display.

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display the [Host Interface] menu, and then press the [#Enter] key.



4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Network Setup], and then press the [#Enter] key.



5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [IP Address], and then press [#Enter] key.



The current IP address appears on the display.



6. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to enter the left most entry field of the IP address, and then press the [#Enter] key.

IP Address : █. 0. 0. 0
----------------------------

To get an IP address for the printer, contact your network administrator.

The value moves by 10 if the [▲] or [▼] key is kept pressed.

When the [#Enter] key is pressed, the cursor moves to the next field.

7. Press the [#Enter] key.

As the specified value is entered in each field, the cursor moves to the next field.

IP Address : 192. █. 0. 0
------------------------------

8. Repeating the steps, specify values in all fields, and then press the [#Enter] key.  
To return to the previous field, press the [Escape] key.
9. Specify "Subnet Mask" and "Gateway Address" in the same way as when specifying the IP address.
10. After you have made all the settings, press the [Online] key.

The specified settings are set and the initial printer screen reappears.

You can print the configuration page to confirm the specified settings.

### Reference

- For details about how to print a configuration page, see p.54 "Printing a Configuration Page".

## Quick Install for Network

Follow the procedure below to install the printer driver, User Guide, and DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

### ★ Important

- If the version of SmartDeviceMonitor for Client already installed in the computer is newer than that on the CD-ROM, you cannot use "Quick Install" to install the printer driver. Install the printer driver, and then create the port.
- Only administrators can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.

### Notes on the Installation (Network Connection)

If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Software Installation], [Hardware Installation] or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears:

1. Click [Yes], [Continue Anyway] or [Install this driver software anyway] to continue the installation.

**1. Start Windows, and insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

Quit all other applications currently running.

**2. Select a language for the interface, and then click [OK].**

**3. Click [Quick Install for Network].**

**4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].**

**5. The search for the network printer starts. If the selection dialog box appears, select the model of printer you want to use, and then click [Install].**

Installation starts.

If the [Software Installation], or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears, see "Notes on the Installation".

If the printer cannot be found and only "Printer Port" appears in the printer selection dialog box, either the printer's IP address has not been specified or the computer and printer are not on the same network segment. Before installing the software, check the printer's IP address and the network topology. Otherwise, select "Printer Port" in the dialog box, and then install the printer driver. If you do this, SmartDeviceMonitor for Client will not be simultaneously installed, so install it afterwards, and then configure the port.

If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or [Hardware Installation] dialog box appears, see "Notes on the Installation".

**6. Click [Finish].**

The printer driver, User Guide, and DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client are now installed.

**Note**

- After inserting the CD-ROM, the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] dialog box appears. If it does not, double-click the CD-ROM drive icon under [My Computer] or [Explorer], and then double-click [Setup.exe].
- When installation is complete, the User Guide icon appears on your desktop.
- If a message prompting you to restart the computer appears, restart the computer.
- Confirm the printer driver is correctly installed by checking the printer's [Power] key is lit, and then performing a test print.

# Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu)

Using the List/Test Print menu on the control panel, you can print a configuration page to check whether the printer is working properly and to ascertain the printer's status and settings.

## Config. Page

You can print the current configuration of the printer.

## Color Demo Page

You can print color samples.

## Error Log

You can print error logs.

## PCL Config. Page

You can print the current PCL configuration.

### Reference

- For details about how to print a configuration page, see p.54 "Printing a Configuration Page".

---

## Interpreting the Configuration Page

---

### System Reference

Information such as the printer's version, attached options, printer language name, and remaining amount of ink are printed in this area.

Unlike [Counter] displayed on the machine's control panel, the "Total Counter" numbers include test patterns printed using "Maintenance", system configurations printed using "List/Test Print", and counter printouts made using "Counter".

### Paper Input

The specified [Tray Priority] setting and the specified settings in the Paper Input Menu, such as the size and type of paper loaded in each tray, are printed in this area.

### Host Interface, Interface Information

The specified settings in the Host Interface Menu are printed in this area.

### PCL Menu

Settings made on the [PCL Menu] are displayed.

## Confirming the Connection Method

This printer supports local and network connection.

Before installing the drivers, check how the printer is connected. Follow the driver installation procedure that is appropriate to the connection method.

### 2

#### ★ Important

- **The printer driver for the 64-bit Windows is not included on the supplied CD-ROM. If your operating system is the 64-bit Windows, download the drivers from the supplier's Web site, and then store the files in an easily accessible folder.**

#### Local Connection

If the printer is connected via USB, install the necessary software by inserting the supplied CD-ROM into your computer and then clicking [Quick Install for USB].

Installation Key	Installed Software
Quick Install for USB	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Printer driver</li> <li>• User Guide</li> </ul>
PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers	Printer driver
User Guide	User Guide
DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client	DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

#### Network Connection

If the printer is connected via the network, install the necessary software by inserting the supplied CD-ROM into your computer and then clicking [Quick Install for Network], [PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers], and [DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client].

Installation Key	Installed Software
Quick Install for Network	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Printer driver</li> <li>• User Guide</li> <li>• DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client</li> </ul>
PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers	Printer driver
User Guide	User Guide
DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client	DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

**Note**

- Once the settings are complete, the printer becomes ready for use.
- With a network connection, you can use the Windows printer port to send print jobs to the printer directly (peer-to-peer transfer) or use the printer as a network printer and send print jobs to the printer from a client computer via a print server.

**Reference**

- p.77 "Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port"
- p.81 "Using as the Windows Network Printer"
- p.82 "Installing the DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client "
- p.63 "Quick Install for Network"
- p.57 "Quick Install for USB"

## Installing the PCL or RPCS Raster Printer Driver (USB)

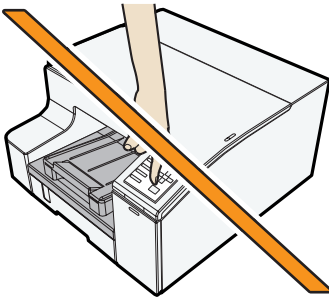
This section explains how to install only the printer driver when the printer is connected to a computer via USB.

2

If you installed the printer driver by performing Quick Install for USB, there is no need to install it again here.

### ★ Important

- Only administrators can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.
- Do not turn on the power at this point.



BUG111S

The following explanation uses Windows XP as an example. Procedures under other operating systems may differ.

Screens vary according to the operating environment.

### 1. Start Windows, and insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

Quit all other applications currently running.

When you start Windows, the Add New Hardware Wizard may appear. If this happens, click [Cancel]. Check again that the power is off, and then proceed to step 2.

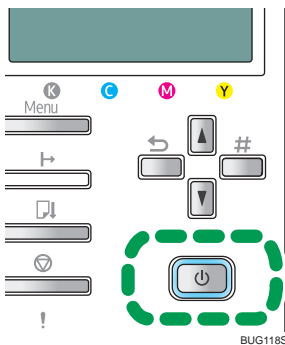
After inserting the CD-ROM, the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] dialog box appears. If it does not, double-click the CD-ROM drive icon under [My Computer] or [Explorer], and then double-click [SETUP.EXE].

If the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] screen does not appear even when you double-click the SETUP.EXE icon, or if an error occurs during installation, access the CD-ROM drive from [My Computer] or [Explorer], double-click the RDISETUP.EXE icon in the [DRIVERS] folder, and then install the printer driver by following the instructions that appear on the screen.

### 2. Select a language for the interface, and then click [OK].

### 3. Click [PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers].

4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].
5. Click [Connected with USB cable], and then click [Next >].
6. Check again that the power of the printer is off, and then click [Next >].  
Check that the dialog box below appears.
7. Make sure that the computer and printer are properly connected, and then press the [Power] key.



Installation starts.

8. Select whether or not to open the Status monitor automatically, and then click [Next >].
9. Check the installation result, and then click [Finish].

#### ↓ Note

- If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Found New Hardware Wizard] or [Hardware Installation] dialog box appears:
  - Click [Yes], [Continue Anyway] or [Install this driver software anyway] to continue the installation.
- If the message prompting you to restart the computer appears, restart the computer.
- Confirm the printer driver is correctly installed by checking that the [Power] key of the printer is lit and performing a test print.
- To perform a test print, open the printer properties dialog box, click [Print Test Page] on the [General] tab.
- To specify a USB port for sharing the printer on a server running Windows Firewall, add the port to Windows Firewall before using Status Monitor.
  1. On Windows Firewall dialog box, click the [Exception] tab, and then select the [File and Print Sharing] check box.
  2. Click [Add Port...], make sure [TCP] is selected, and then enter "55665" in [Port number].

#### 📖 Reference

- For details about installing User Guide only, see p.16 "Installing User Guide".
- For details about sharing the printer, see p.70 "Sharing the Printer".

- p.247 "If a Message Appears during Installation"
- p.209 "If Test Print Fails"

---

## Sharing the Printer

---

### 2

This section explains how to share the printer over a network by connecting it via USB to a computer acting as a print server.

### Setting Up a Server

---

Follow the procedure below to set up a print server so that the printer can be shared by users.

#### Important

- **Only administrators can make this setting. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.**

Configure a computer connected to the printer as the print server.

The print server is a computer used to manage the shared printer on the network.

1. On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
2. Click [Network and Internet Connections].
3. Click [Network Connections].
4. Click [Local Area Connection] to highlight it, and then, in the [File] menu, click [Properties].
5. Select the [Client for Microsoft Networks] check box.
6. Click [OK].
7. Install the printer driver.
8. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
9. Click the icon of the printer, and then click [Sharing...] on the [File] menu.
10. Click [Share this printer], and then enter a name in the [Share name] box.
11. Click [OK].

#### Note

- Configure a computer connected to the network, where the print server is connected, as a client computer.

#### Reference

- p.71 "Setting Up a Client Computer"



## Setting Up a Client Computer

Follow the procedure below to configure a computer as a client computer and connect it to the shared printer. Make this setting when installing the printer driver from the CD-ROM provided.

### ★ Important

- **Only administrators can make this setting. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.**

Configure a computer connected to the network where the print server is connected.

2

1. **Start Windows, and then insert the "Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

Quit all other applications currently running.

When starting Windows, a wizard for adding new hardware may open. If this happens, click [Cancel]. Check again that the power is off.

2. **Select a language for the interface, and then click [OK].**
3. **Click [PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers].**
4. **Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].**
5. **Click [Connected via LAN].**
6. **Click [Next >].**
7. **Click the plus mark next to a printer name.**
8. **Click [Port:< LPT1: >] under [Printer name:].**
9. **Click [Add].**
10. **Click [Network Printer].**
11. **Click [OK].**
12. **Select a shared printer.**
13. **Click [OK].**
14. **Check that [<\servername\sharedprintername>] appears after [Port:].**
15. **Click [Finish].**  
Installation starts.
16. **Select whether or not to open the Status monitor automatically.**
17. **Click [Next >].**
18. **Check the installation result, and then click [Finish].**

### ↓ Note

- When the CD-ROM is inserted, the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] dialog box appears. If it does not, double-click the CD-ROM drive icon under [My Computer] or [Explorer], and then double-click [SETUP.EXE].

- If the message prompting you to restart the computer appears, restart the computer.

# Specifying the Interface and Network Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Host Interface Menu)

In the Host Interface menu, you can make network settings and settings for the computer to printer USB connection (if used). Settings made using the Host Interface menu remain effective even if you turn the printer off.

To configure the printer's network settings, use "Network Setup" on the printer's control panel.

## I/O Timeout

Specify how long the printer waits for the currently-connected interface to respond. When the specified time elapses, the printer can receive data from another interface.

If you make the I/O Timeout period too short, timeout might occur while data transfer is in progress. If this happens, the print job will be interrupted by a new job from another interface.

- 10 seconds
- 15 seconds
- 20 seconds
- 25 seconds
- 60 seconds

Default: 15 seconds

## Network Setup

You can make network-related settings.

### DHCP

You can specify the DHCP.

- On
- Off

Default: On

### IP Address

You can specify the IP address.

When DHCP is set to on, the IP address cannot be changed. To change it, set DHCP to off.

Contact your network administrator for information about the network configuration.

Default: 0.0.0.0

### Subnet Mask

You can specify the subnet mask.

When DHCP is set to on, the subnet mask cannot be changed. To change it, set DHCP to off. Contact your network administrator for information about the network configuration.

Default: 0.0.0.0

### **Gateway Address**

You can specify the gateway address.

When DHCP is set to on, the gateway address cannot be changed. To change it, set DHCP to off. Contact your network administrator for information about the network configuration.

Default: 0.0.0.0

### **Active Protocol**

You can select the active protocol.

- TCP/IP

Default: Active

### **Ethernet Speed**

You can select the network speed to operate the printer.

- Auto Select
- 10Mbps Half D.
- 10Mbps Full D.
- 100Mbps Half D.
- 100Mbps Full D.

Default: Auto Select

### **USB Setting**

You can specify the settings related to communication when the computer and printer are connected via USB. Usually, you do not need to change these settings.

After changing this setting, turn the machine off and then back on.

#### **USB Speed**

- Full Speed
- Auto

Default: Auto

#### **Port Setting**

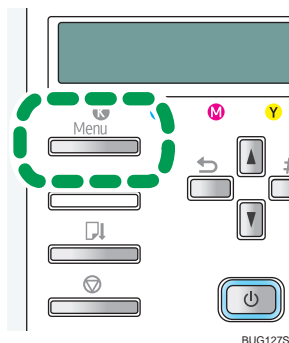
- On
- Off

Default: Off

## Changing the Host Interface Menu

This section gives an example of changing a setting in the Host Interface menu.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2

2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Host Interface], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
Host Interface
```

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [I/O Timeout], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Host Interface:
I/O Timeout
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [20 seconds], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
I/O Timeout:
20 seconds
```

The [Host Interface] menu appears.

5. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

# Installing the Drivers for Network Connection

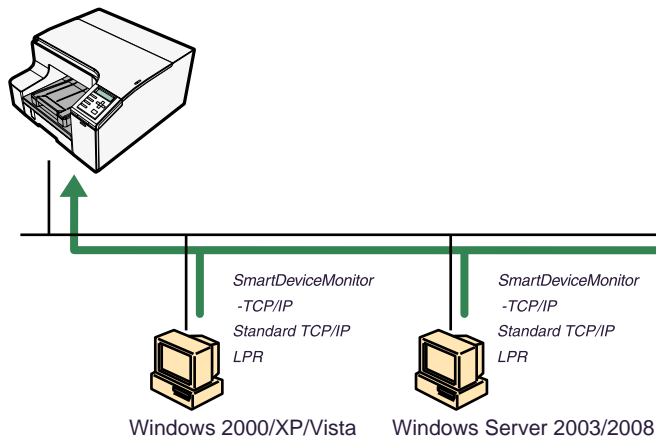
This section explains how to install the printer driver for a network printer and configure it according to the printer port.

## Using this Printer as the Windows Printing Port

2

Network connections can be established through Ethernet.

Available ports are determined based on the combination of Windows operating system version and connection method used.

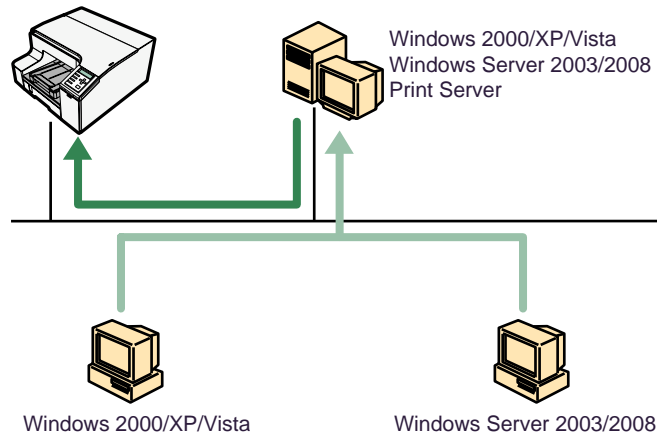


BUG130S

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port Standard TCP/IP port LPR port

## Using as a Network Printer

This printer can be used as the Windows network printer.



BUG131S

2

### Reference

- p.81 "Using as the Windows Network Printer"

## Installing the PCL or RPCS Raster Printer Driver (Network)

### Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port

This section explains how to install the printer driver (TCP/IP) and set up the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port.

To use the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port, you need to install the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

### ★ Important

- Only administrators can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.
1. Start Windows, and then insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.  
Quit all applications currently running.
  2. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].
  3. Click [PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers].  
The software license agreement appears in the [<License Agreement>] dialog box.
  4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].
  5. Click [Connected via LAN], and then click [Next >].

**6. Double-click the printer name or click [+] to display the printer settings.**

The details shown in [Comment:], [Driver:], and [Port:] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

**7. Click [Port:], and then click [Add].**

**8. Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [OK].**

**9. Click [TCP/IP], and then click [Search].**

A list of printers using TCP/IP appears.

**10. Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].**

Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click [Specify Address], and then enter the IP address or host name of the printer.

**11. Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].**

**12. Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.**

**13. Click [Continue].**

Installation starts.

**14. Select whether or not to open the Status monitor automatically.**

**15. Click [Next >].**

**16. Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.**

A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

**Note**

- If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Software Installation], [Hardware Installation] or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears:
  - Click [Yes], [Continue Anyway] or [Install this driver software anyway] to continue the installation.
- To change the machine's settings while the machine is in use, uninstall the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port being used, change the machine's network settings on the control panel or using a Web browser, and then install the printer driver.

**Reference**

- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add Printer]. See p.247 "If a Message Appears during Installation".

## Using the Standard TCP/IP Port

---

This section explains how to install the printer driver (TCP/IP) and set up the Standard TCP/IP Port.



**★ Important**

- **Only administrators can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.**
- 1. Start Windows, and then insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

Quit all applications currently running.
  - 2. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**
  - 3. Click [PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers].**

The software license agreement appears in the [<License Agreement>] dialog box.
  - 4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].**
  - 5. Click [Connected via LAN].**
  - 6. Double-click the printer name or click [+] to display the printer settings.**

The details shown in [Comment:], [Driver:], and [Port:] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.
  - 7. Click [Port:], and then click [Add].**
  - 8. Click [Standard TCP/IP], and then click [OK].**

Configure the Standard TCP/IP port settings, and then see Windows Help if [Standard TCP/IP Port] does not appear.
  - 9. Click [Next >] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.**
  - 10. Enter the printer name or IP address in the [Printer Name or IP Address] box.**

The [Port Name] text box automatically obtains a port name. Change this name if necessary.  
When screen for Device selection appears, select "RICOH Network Printer C model".
  - 11. Click [Finish] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.**

The installation start dialog box reappears.
  - 12. Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].**
  - 13. Configure the default printer as necessary.**
  - 14. Click [Continue].**

The printer driver installation starts.
  - 15. Select whether or not to open the Status monitor automatically.**
  - 16. Click [Next >].**
  - 17. Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.**

A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

**↓ Note**

- If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Software Installation], [Hardware Installation] or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears:

- Click [Yes], [Continue Anyway] or [Install this driver software anyway] to continue the installation.
- A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

### Reference

- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add Printer]. See p.247 "If a Message Appears during Installation".

## 2

### Using the LPR Port

---

This section explains how to install the printer driver (TCP/IP) and set up the LPR Port.

### Important

- **Only administrators can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.**

**1. Start Windows, and then insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

Quit all applications currently running.

**2. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

**3. Click [PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers].**

The software license agreement appears in the [<License Agreement>] dialog box.

**4. Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].**

**5. Click [Connected via LAN].**

**6. Double-click the printer name or click [+] to display the printer settings.**

The details shown in [Comment:], [Driver:], and [Port:] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

**7. Click [Port:], and then click [Add].**

**8. Click [LPR Port], and then click [OK].**

If [LPR Port] does not appear, see Windows Help and install it.

**9. Enter the printer's IP address in the [Name or address of server providing lpd] box.**

**10. Enter "lp" in the [Name or address of server providing lpd] box, and then click [OK].**

The port is added.

**11. Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].**

**12. Configure the default printer as necessary.**

**13. Click [Continue].**

The printer driver installation starts

**14. Select whether or not to open the Status monitor automatically.**

15. Click [Next >].

16. Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.

#### ↓ Note

- If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Software Installation], [Hardware Installation] or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears:
  - Click [Yes], [Continue Anyway] or [Install this driver software anyway] to continue the installation.
- A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

#### 📖 Reference

- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add Printer]. See p.247 "If a Message Appears during Installation".

## Using as the Windows Network Printer

This section assumes that the client has already been configured to communicate with a print server. Do not begin the following procedure before the client is set up and configured correctly.

To use the print server, install the printer driver by selecting "Network printer server", and then select the shared printer.

#### ★ Important

- **Only administrators and power users can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators or Power Users group.**
- **If you print with a print server connected to the printer using the SmartDeviceMonitor port, Recovery Printing and Parallel Printing cannot be used from the client.**
- **If you print with a Windows XP/Vista or Windows Server 2003/2008 print server, notification functions of SmartDeviceMonitor may not be used with the client.**

1. **Start Windows, and then insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

Quit all applications currently running.

2. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

3. **Click [PCL/RPCS Raster Printer Drivers].**

The software license agreement appears in the [<License Agreement>] dialog box.

4. **Read the entire license agreement carefully. If you accept its terms, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].**

5. **Click [Connected via LAN].**

6. **Select the [Printer Name:] check box to select the printer models you want to use.**

The printer name can be changed in the [Change settings for 'Printer Name'] box.

**7. Double-click the printer name or click [+] to display the printer settings.**

The details shown in [Comment:], [Driver:], and [Port:] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

**8. Click [Port:], and then click [Add].**

**9. Click [Network Printer], and then click [OK].**

**10. Double-click the computer name you want to use as a print server in the [Browse for Printer] window.**

**11. Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].**

**12. Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].**

**13. Configure the user code as necessary.**

For an RPCS raster printer driver, a user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.

**14. Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.**

**15. Click [Continue].**

The printer driver installation starts.

**16. Select whether or not to open the Status monitor automatically.**

**17. Click [Next >].**

**18. Click [Finish] in the installation completion dialog box.**

**Note**

- If the message "Digital Signature Not Found" or the [Software Installation] , [Hardware Installation] or [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] dialog box appears:
  - Click [Yes], [Continue Anyway] or [Install this driver software anyway] to continue the installation.
- A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

**Reference**

- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add Printer]. See p.247 "If a Message Appears during Installation".
- p.70 "Setting Up a Server"

---

## Installing the DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

---

Follows the procedure below to install the Installing DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

**Important**

- **Only administrators can perform this installation. Log on as a member of the Administrators group.**

- **Install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client before installing the printer driver when using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port.**

You can install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client in either of the following two ways:

### Full install

Installs all modules.

### Custom Install

You can select which modules to install.

This section explains the procedure for Full install.

1. **Start Windows, and then insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**  
Quit all applications currently running.
2. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**
3. **Click [DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client].**
4. **Select the language to be used for installation, and then click [Next >].**
5. **Click [Next >].**
6. **The software license agreement appears in the [<License Agreement>] dialog box. After reading through its contents, click [Yes] to accept it.**
7. **Click [Full install].**
8. **Select the folder in which you want to install the files, and then click [Next >].**
9. **Register the Program folder.**
10. **Click [Next >].**
11. **Check the specified setting, and then click [Next >].**
12. **Click [Complete].**

If you are required to restart the computer after installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, restart the computer.

### ↓ Note

- After inserting the CD-ROM, the [Printer Drivers, Manuals, Utilities] dialog box appears. If it does not, double-click the CD-ROM drive icon under [My Computer] or [Explorer], and then double-click [Setup.exe].

# Paper

This section explains the available paper types and how to load paper.

## Compatible Paper Types

2

You can use various types of paper.

- Plain paper  
This paper is normally used for copying and printing. Unlike inkjet plain paper or glossy paper, it is uncoated.
- Inkjet plain paper  
This extra-white plain paper makes the printed colors appear more vivid. Since it does not have an ink-absorbent coating, you can write on it and use it for photocopying, just like regular plain paper.
- Glossy paper  
This machine prints best on glossy paper for laser. For details the types of glossy paper, contact your sales or service representative.
- Envelopes  
For details about the types of envelope that can be used, see Paper Handling Precautions.
- Thick paper  
For details about the types of thick paper that can be used, see Paper Handling Precautions.

### ↓ Note

- All types of paper besides thick paper can be loaded in tray 1.





### 📖 Reference

- p.87 "Paper Handling Precautions"

## Loadable Paper Sizes and Quantities

You can load in each tray the paper of the following size and number.

### Tray 1

Type	Size	Paper capacity
Plain / Inkjet Plain Paper	A4 (210 × 297 mm) 	Maximum paper capacity: 250 sheets
	A5 (148 × 210 mm) 	
	A6 (105 × 148 mm) 	Maximum paper output capacity: 100 sheets
	B5 JIS (182 × 257 mm) 	

Type	Size	Paper capacity
	Letter (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 11") Legal (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 14") 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " Executive (7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 10 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " 8" × 13" 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 13" 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 13" 16K	
Plain / Inkjet Plain Paper	Custom paper sizes Vertical: 139.7- 356.0 mm (5.50- 14.01 inch), Horizontal: 88.0- 216.0 mm (3.46- 8.50 inch)	Maximum paper capacity: 250 sheets Maximum paper output capacity: 100 sheets
Glossy Paper	A4 (210 × 297 mm)	Maximum paper capacity: 250 sheets Maximum paper output: 1 sheets
Envelope	Com10 Envelope (4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " × 9 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> ") Monarch Envelope (3 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " × 7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> ") C6 Envelope (114 × 162 mm) C5 Envelope (162 × 229 mm) DL Envelope (110 × 220 mm)	Maximum paper capacity: 20 sheets Maximum paper output capacity: 20 sheets

### Tray 2/Tray 3







Type	Size	Paper capacity
Plain / Inkjet Plain Paper	A4 (210 × 297 mm) A5 (148 × 210 mm) A6 (105 × 148 mm) B5 JIS (182 × 257 mm) Letter (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 11")	Maximum paper capacity: 500 sheets Maximum paper output capacity: 100 sheets

Type	Size	Paper capacity
	Legal (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 14") Executive (7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 10 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> ") 8" × 13" 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 13" 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 13" 16K	
Plain / Inkjet Plain Paper	Custom paper sizes Vertical: 148.0 - 356.0 mm (5.83 - 14.01 inch), Horizontal: 105 - 216.0 mm (4.14 - 8.50 inch)	Maximum paper capacity: 500 sheets Maximum paper output capacity: 100 sheets
Glossy Paper	A4 (210 × 297 mm)	Maximum paper capacity: 500 sheets Maximum paper output: 1 sheets

**Bypass Tray Unit**

Type	Size	Paper capacity
Plain / Inkjet Plain Paper	A4 (210 × 297 mm) A5 (148 × 210 mm) A6 (105 × 148 mm) B5 JIS (182 × 257 mm) Letter (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 11") Legal (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 14") 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " Executive (7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 10 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> ") 8" × 13" 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 13" 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 13" 16K	Maximum paper capacity: 100 sheets Maximum paper output capacity: 100 sheets
Plain / Inkjet Plain Paper	Custom paper sizes *1 Vertical: 127.0-1295.4 mm (5.00-51.00 inch), Horizontal:	Maximum paper capacity: 100 sheets Maximum paper output



Type	Size	Paper capacity
	55.0-216.0 mm (2.17-8.50 inch)	capacity: 100 sheets
Glossy Paper	A4 (210 × 297 mm) 	Maximum paper capacity: 100 sheets Maximum paper output: 1 sheets
Envelope	Com10 Envelope (4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " × 9 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> ")  Monarch Envelope (3 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " × 7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> ")  C6 Envelope (114 162 mm)  C5 Envelope (162 × 229 mm)  DL Envelope (110 × 220 mm) 	Maximum paper capacity: 10 sheets Maximum paper output capacity: 20 sheets
Thick		Maximum paper capacity: 20 sheets Maximum paper output capacity: 20 sheets

\*1 Under the PCL driver, the available custom size is 139.7-355.9mm (5.50-14.01 inch) (Vertical) ×55.0-216.0 mm (2.17-8.50 inch) (Horizontal).

#### Note

- Thick paper: 157 g/m<sup>2</sup> (42 lb.) or more

## Paper Handling Precautions

To ensure optimum print results, take care when handling paper before and after printing.

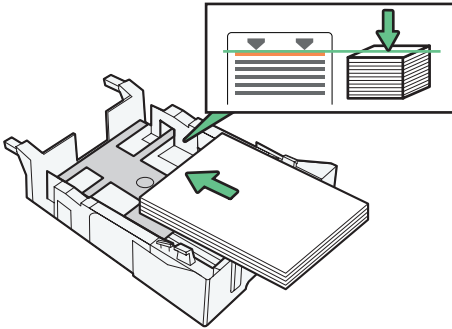
### Loading Precautions

To ensure correct printing, handle the paper carefully.

Cautions when Loading Paper

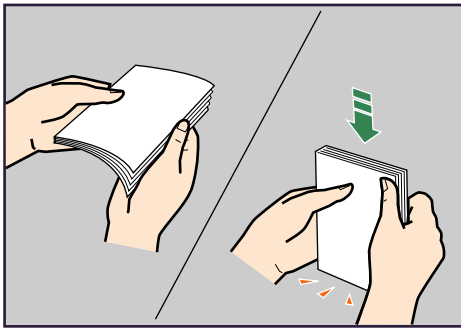
- Pull the tray completely out before loading it with paper.
- Load only supported paper in the paper tray.
- Load paper with the print side face down in the paper trays.

- Load paper with the paper grain parallel to the feed direction.
- Do not load paper of different types at the same time.
- To load a different type of paper than that already loaded, first remove all currently loaded paper.
- Do not stack paper over the limit mark.



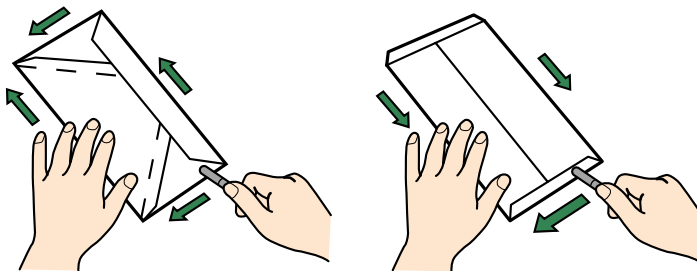
BPR122S

- Curled paper may jam. Straighten any curls within 2 mm (0.08 inches) before loading.



BPR139S

- Before loading envelopes, make sure their edges are sharply creased by rubbing the edges with a pen or similar object.

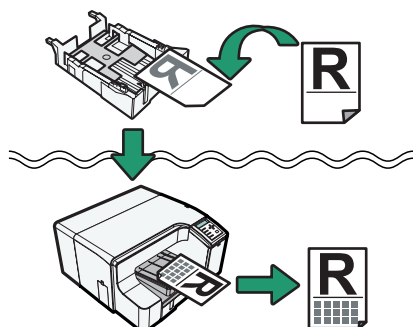


BPR165S

### Correct Orientation of Pre-printed Paper When Loaded in the Tray 1/Tray 2/Tray 3

Load paper print side down, shorter edge pointing in the paper feed direction.

Set paper according to the orientation of the print image, as follows.



BUG132S

2

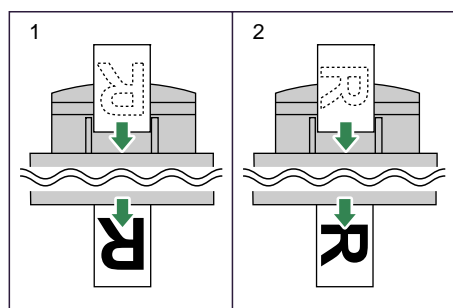
### Compatible Paper Sizes for the Duplex Unit

Type	Size	Paper capacity
Plain / Inkjet Plain Paper	A4 (210 × 297 mm)	
	A5 (148 × 210 mm)	
	A6 (105 × 148 mm)	
	B5 JIS (182 × 257 mm)	
	Letter (8 1/2" × 11")	
	8 1/2" × 5 1/2"	
	Executive (7 1/4" × 10 1/2")	
16K		

### Correct Orientation of Pre-printed Paper When Loaded in the Bypass Tray

Load paper print side up, shorter edge pointing in the paper feed direction.

Set paper according to the orientation of the print image, as follows.



BPR120S

**1. To print over a portrait image:**

Load paper so that its top edge is pointing in the paper feed direction.

**2. To print over a landscape image:**

Load paper so that its right edge is pointing in the paper feed direction.

**2**

---

## Paper Storage Precautions

---

This section gives cautions on storing paper.

If stored under adverse conditions, even paper suitable for printing can cause paper jams, poor print quality, or machine malfunctions. When you store paper, keep the following points in mind:

- Do not store paper in humid places.
- Do not store paper in direct sunlight.
- Store paper flat.
- Store unused paper in the original package.

---

## Paper Type Precautions

---

### Plain paper

- Use the bypass tray to print on thick paper (157 g/m<sup>2</sup> (42 lb.) or more).
- The only type of A6 (105 × 148 mm (4.2 × 5.9 inches)) paper that can be loaded in tray 1 is that of 104.7g/m<sup>2</sup> (28.0 lb.).
- After printing, some types of paper take longer than others to dry. With duplex printing, the ink may smear or rub off. Using the printer driver, specify how long to wait for the prints to dry between printing each side of a duplex sheet. For details, see the printer driver Help.

### Inkjet plain paper


- When printing on inkjet plain paper, in the printer properties dialog box, click [Inkjet Plain Paper]. This allows printing at higher quality.
- In the printer properties dialog box, when [Inkjet Plain Paper] is selected, only one-sided printing is possible. To print on both sides of a sheet, click [Plain].
- Use as soon as possible after opening the package.

### Glossy paper

- The time it takes for the ink to dry depends on the kind of printed image and the environmental conditions.
- If the temperature exceeds 25°C or the relative humidity exceeds 50%, problems with continuous feeding of glossy paper might occur. If this is the case, feed the sheets one by one.
- If you load multiple sheets of glossy paper and they do not feed in properly, feed them one by one.

- Ink smearing can be caused by environmental conditions (such as high humidity) and the type of image being printed (such as ink-heavy images). If smearing occurs, set [Print Quality] to [Quality priority] or [Speed priority]. This may stop the ink smearing.
- Roller marks might appear on printed images.
- If paper is fed from the bypass tray, roller marks might appear on the printed image.
- To ensure water and oil resistance, leave the printed sheet to dry for about a day.
- Some print images can cause the paper to curl, which creates patchy print. If this happens, set [Print Quality] to [Quality priority].
- When using these sheets, see the instructions supplied with them.
- Duplex printing is not supported.

### Envelopes

- Up to 20 envelopes can be loaded in tray 1.
- Flatten envelopes.
- Load envelopes carefully, because the printable area depends on the orientation.
- Set the envelope selector to the rear position  before printing.
- Duplex printing is not supported.


### Thick paper

- Thick paper is heavier than 157 g/m<sup>2</sup> (42 lb.).
- You can insert paper with weights up to 255 g/m<sup>2</sup> (60 lb.) into the bypass tray.
- Insert paper with the print side face up into the bypass tray.
- Duplex printing is not supported.

### Cautions to Observe After Printing

Depending on the paper type, the ink may take a while to dry. Before handling, make sure printed sheets have fully dried. Otherwise, the ink may smudge.

#### Note

- The ink may smear depending on the type of image. If this happens, set the envelope selector to the rear position .

### Non-compatible Paper

Check if the paper is compatible.

Do not use paper that is:

- wrinkled, folded, or damaged
- wavy at the ends
- curled

- absorbent
- dry and conducive to static buildup
- already printed on (such as the back of pre-printed paper)
- pre-printed (unless specified)
- heat sensitive/non-carbon
- too thick or thin
- pre-stitched
- glued or tacked
- stapled or clipped together
- dark in places
- irregular in length and proportion

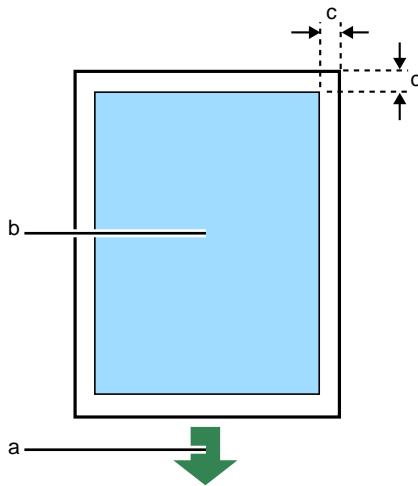
**Note**

- Even if compatible paper types are used, print quality may be lower than usual or paper jams may occur if the paper was improperly stored.

### Printable Area

---

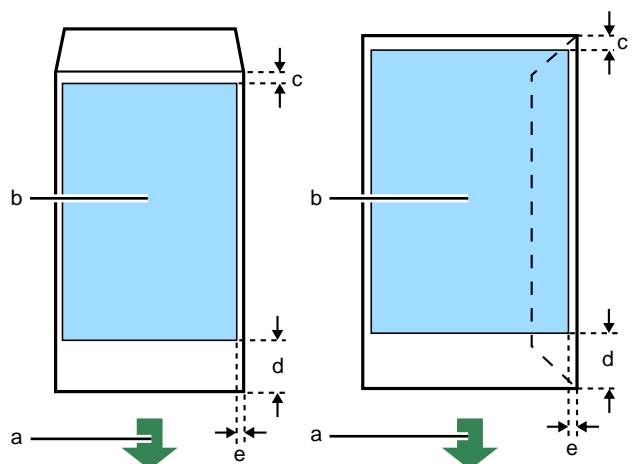
Printable and unprintable areas



BPR195S

- a. Output Direction
- b. Printable Area
- c. 3 mm (0.12 inches)

When printing on envelopes, the following print area limitations apply.



a. Output Direction

b. Printable Area

c. 8 mm (0.4 inches)

d. 38 mm (1.5 inches)

e. 3 mm (0.2 inches)

# Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)

This section explains the settings you can specify in the Paper Input menu, such as those for the size and type of the paper loaded in each tray.

The very first time you load paper or anytime you change to a different size or type of paper, you must specify the paper settings using "Paper Input Menu" on the printer's control panel.

## Tray Paper Size

You can specify the size of the paper loaded in the paper feed tray.

## Paper Type

You can specify the type of the paper loaded in the paper feed tray.

## Aut.Tray Select

You can specify whether or not to automatically select the tray according to the paper size and paper type.

## Tray Priority

You can specify the prioritized paper feed tray. This setting is factory-preset to "tray 1".

### ↓ Note

- "Aut.Tray Select" can be specified only if the optional bypass tray or the optional paper feed unit is attached.
- If you select "Aut.Tray Select", the tray is automatically selected according to the paper size set for the trays in "Tray Paper Size".

### 📖 Reference

- p.84 "Compatible Paper Types"
- p.84 "Loadable Paper Sizes and Quantities"

---

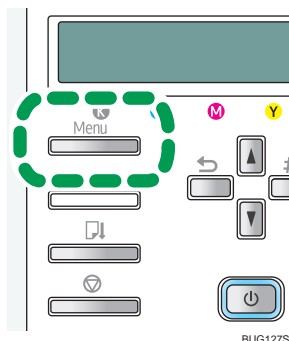
## Changing the Paper Input Menu

---

The following procedure is an example of setting the Tray Paper Size.



1. On the control panel, press the [Menu] key.



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Paper Input], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
Paper Input
```

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Tray Paper Size], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Paper Input:
Tray Paper Size
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display the tray you want to specify, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Tray Paper Size:
Tray 1
```

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display appropriate paper size, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Tray 1:
*A4 (210 x 297)
```

The setting is applied, and then, the Paper Input menu reappears.

6. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.



# 3. Printer Driver

---

## Two Types of Printer Properties Dialog Box

There are two types of printer properties dialog box, namely: Custom Setting and Multi-tab. The default is Custom Setting.

- Custom Setting

This type is suitable for users who rarely need to change printer properties settings and print using generally the same settings. Custom setting may change depending on the printer's system configuration.

- Multi-tab

This type is suitable for users who often need to change printer properties settings and print using a variety of settings.

To change the default Custom Setting to Multi-tab, do the following:

1. Click the [Printer Configuration] tab.
2. In the [Window type] area, click [Multi-tab].
3. Click [OK].

---

### Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box

---

This section explains how to open the printer properties dialog box from the [Printers and Faxes] window. Depending on the operating system settings, the actual procedure may differ.

1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
2. Click the icon of the printer, and then click [Properties] on the [File] menu.

The printer properties dialog box appears.

3. Click [Printing Preferences...].

---

### Opening the Printing Preferences Dialog Box

---

This section explains how to open the [Printing Preferences] dialog box from the [Printers and Faxes] window.

Depending on the operating system settings, the actual procedure may differ.

1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

2. Click the icon of the printer, and then click [Printing Preferences...] on the [File] menu.

The printing preferences dialog box appears.

---

## Opening from an Application

---

If you open the printer properties dialog box from an application, the factory settings appear. Change the settings as required and carry out printing.

Changes made here are only applicable with that application and only as long as that application stays open.

Some applications may automatically change the printer properties settings.

The procedure below is an example for Paint (included in the standard Windows package).

How to open the printer properties dialog box differs depending on the application. From most applications, the printer properties dialog box can be opened by clicking [Print...] or [Page Setup...] on the [File] menu, and then clicking [Properties] (Windows XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2008: [Preferences]). For details, see Help of the application.

1. On the [File] menu, click [Print...].
2. In the Name list, select the name of this printer, and then click Properties (Windows XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2008: Preferences).

The printer properties dialog box (Windows XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003: the [Printing Preferences] dialog box) appears.

# Specifying Settings on [Accessories] Tab

If the printer and computer are not configured for bidirectional communication, open the printer driver and specify the optional units attached to the printer and the size and type of paper loaded in the printer.

---

## Conditions for Bidirectional Communication

---

Bidirectional communication allows information about paper size and feed direction settings to be automatically sent to the printer. You can check printer status from your computer.

If you use the RPCS raster printer driver and bidirectional communication is enabled, the [Accessories] tab is unavailable.

To support bidirectional communication, the following conditions must be met:

### If the machine and computer are connected directly to each other with a USB cable

- The computer must support bidirectional communication.
- The printer must support bidirectional communication.

### When connected with the network

- The printer must support bidirectional communication.

---

## If Bidirectional Communication is Disabled

---

Perform this procedure only if the printer and computer are not communicating bidirectionally. This procedure enables you to display the printer driver settings, specify which optional units are installed, and specify the size and type of paper loaded in the printer.

### Windows 2000/Vista

1. On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings] (Windows Vista: [Hardware and Sound] in [Control Panel]), and then click [Printers].  
The [Printers] window appears.
2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
3. On the [File] menu, click [Properties] (Windows Vista: Right-click the icon of the printer, and then click [Properties]).

When you open the printer properties dialog box for the first time after installing the printer driver, or if you have not specified the attached options yet, a prompt to specify the options appears.

4. Click [OK].

**5. Click the [Accessories] tab.**

If options in the [Accessories] tab are disabled, bidirectional connection is enabled. In this case, no change is necessary for option settings.

**6. Select options installed from the [Select printer options:] area, and then make the necessary settings.**

**7. Select the appropriate size and type for the tray.**

**8. Click [OK] to close the printer properties dialog box.**

**3**

**Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2008**

**1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].**

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

Under Windows Server 2003, on the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers and Faxes].

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

Under Windows Server 2008, on the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The [Printers] window appears.

**2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

**3. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

When you open the printer properties dialog box for the first time after installing the printer driver, or if you have not specified the attached options yet, a prompt to specify the options appears.

**4. Click the [Accessories] tab.**

**5. Select options installed from the [Select printer options:] area, and then make the necessary settings.**

**6. Select the appropriate size and type for the tray.**

**7. Click [OK] to close the printer properties dialog box.**

**↓ Note**

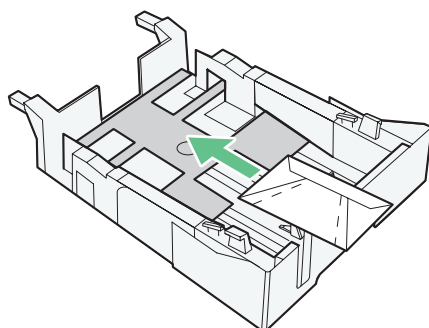
- Manage Printers permission is required to change the printer properties in the [Printers] folder. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- If you are using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port to share the printer as a print server, bidirectional communication between the printer and a client PC will not be possible.
- If you add an optional tray to an existing printer, you must refresh the settings on the printer's [Accessories] tab.

# Printing

Follow the procedure below to print on plain paper.

## ★ Important

- You can load 100 sheets in the optional bypass tray unit.
- Curled paper may jam. Straighten any curls within 2 mm (0.08 inches) before loading.
- Load paper with the print side face down in the paper trays.
- Load paper with the print side face up in the optional bypass tray unit.
- When printing on both sides, content other than text is printed at lower density.
- If ink smears appear and characters are not properly formed when printing white text on a black background, select [High speed] or [Speed priority] in the [Print Quality] area, and then print the job again.
- Printing on envelopes
  - Before loading envelopes, make sure their edges are sharply creased by rubbing the edges with a pen or similar object.
  - Squeeze the paper guide release, and then slide the paper guides into position according to the paper size.



BPR133S

### 1. Load plain paper into tray.

How to load paper depends on the paper type.

### 2. Open the printer properties dialog box from the application.

### 3. Select the paper type from the [Paper type:] list.

After selecting the paper type as required, switch the envelope selector to "⏏".

If you select [Inkjet Plain Paper], the machine will print on one side only. To print on both sides, select [Plain].

### 4. Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

The printer properties dialog box closes.

### 5. Make print settings, and then click [OK].

#### ↓ Note

- If you set [Paper type:] to [Glossy Paper] in the printer properties dialog box, be sure to remove each sheet as it is delivered to the output ramp.
- You can load up to 20 envelopes.

#### 📖 Reference

- p.97 "Two Types of Printer Properties Dialog Box"
- p.87 "Paper Handling Precautions"
- p.92 "Printable Area"

3

## Unauthorized Copy Control

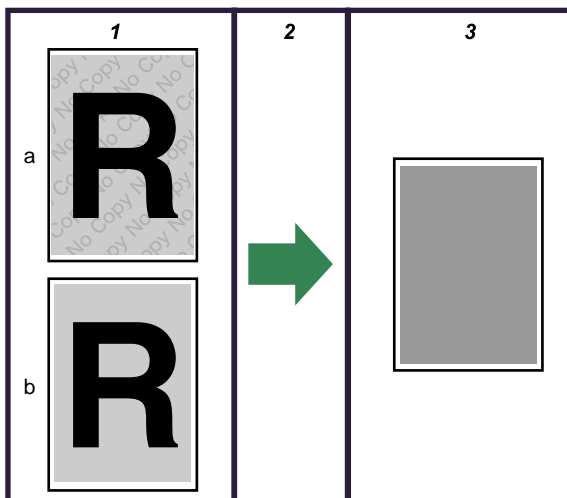
To prevent unauthorized copying, you can embed patterns and text beneath the print. You do not need a special paper to use this function. If a paper with text or image patterns is copied by a copier or a multi-function printer, either the patterns are printed vividly or the copy is grayed out, so as to protect the information on the original from leaking. To print with protection against unauthorized copying, you can use [Data security for copying] and [Mask type:].

#### ★ Important

- **This function is designed to discourage copying confidential documents; it does not prevent unauthorized use of information.**

In the printer properties dialog box, click [Setup] tab to select the [Unauthorized copy...] check box.

### Printing a document using [Data security for copying]



BPR199S



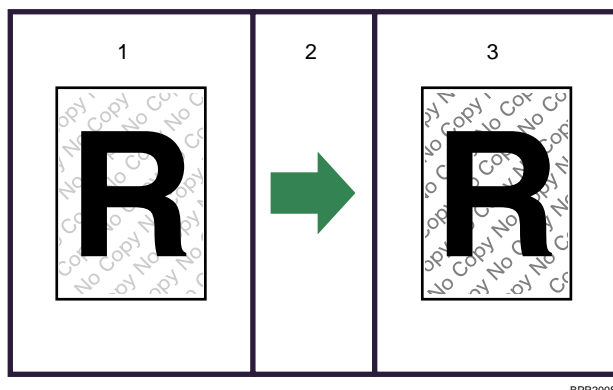
**1. The pattern and text you have set is printed.**

- a: Text
- b: Pattern

**2. The document is copied to the machine that the Copy Data Security unit is installed.**

**3. The document is blanked by gray overprint.**

**Printing a Document Using [Mask type:]**



BPR200S

**1. The print preview of the pattern and the text you set is displayed.**

**2. The document is copied to the copier or the multifunction machine.**

**3. The pattern and the text you set appear.**

**Note**

- When selecting [High speed], [Unauthorized copy...] is not available.
- When selecting [Economy Color], [Unauthorized copy...] is not available.
- When selecting [Use error diffusion] and [Whole page], [Unauthorized copy...] is not available.

**Important Notice**

- The supplier does not provide warranty regarding the appearance of print patterns and other copy protection features. The appearance of the print patterns and the performance of Unauthorized Copy Control may vary depending on the quality of paper used and the machine model and settings.
- The supplier takes no responsibility for any damages sustained in connection with use of or inability to make use of Unauthorized Copy Control print patterns.

**Note**

- For details, see the printer driver Help.

# Canceling Printing

Print jobs can be canceled from either a printer or computer. How to cancel print jobs differs according to their job status. Check the job status first.

## Canceling a Print Job Being Printed

Cancel the print job from the Status monitor or by pressing the [Job Reset] key of the printer.

## Canceling a print job in queue

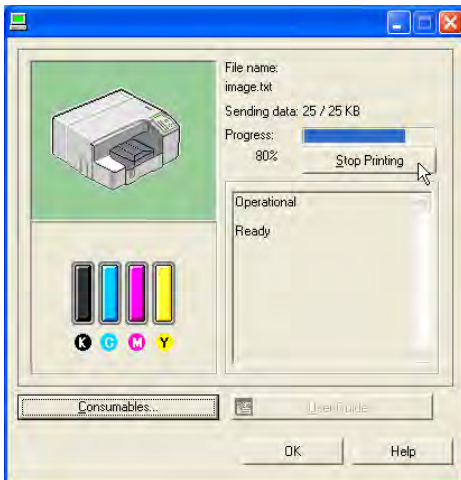
Cancel the print job from the taskbar of the computer.

3

## Canceling Printing from the Status Monitor

Follow the procedure below to cancel a print job being printed.

1. Check that printing and the Status monitor have started.
2. Click [Stop Printing].



It will take a few moments for printing to stop.

### Reference

- p.109 "Using the Status Monitor"

## Canceling Printing Using the [Job Reset] Key of the Printer

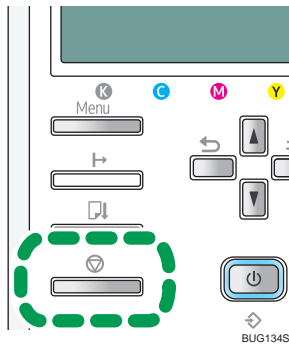
Follow the procedure below to cancel a print job being printed.

1. Check that printing has started.

Not only the print job being printed but also the print jobs in queue will be canceled.

If you press the [Job Reset] key while the printer is receiving print data for a print job (the Data in lamp is blinking), that print job is also canceled.

**2. Press the [Job Reset] key.**



The confirmation screen appears.

**3. Press the [#Enter] key.**

It will take a few moments for printing to stop.

## Canceling Printing from the Taskbar

Follow the procedure below to cancel a print job in queue.

1. Double-click the icon of the printer on the taskbar.
2. Select the print job you want to cancel, and then click Cancel on the Document menu.

# Selecting the Printer Driver Language

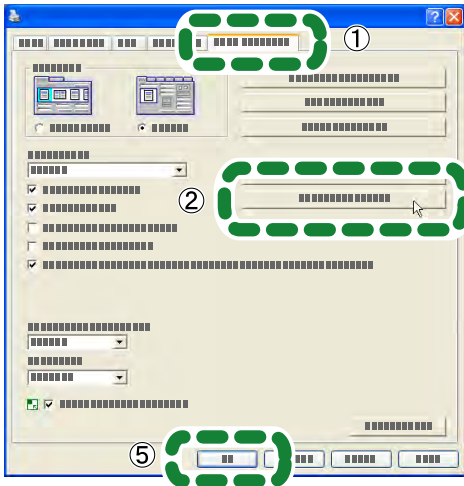
This section explains how to select the language used for the settings and messages displayed on the Printer Driver.

3

1. Open the printer properties dialog box.
2. Click [Printing Preferences].
3. Click the [Printer Configuration] tab.
4. Click [Environment Settings...].
5. In the [Language:] list, select the language you require.
6. Click [OK].
7. Click [OK].

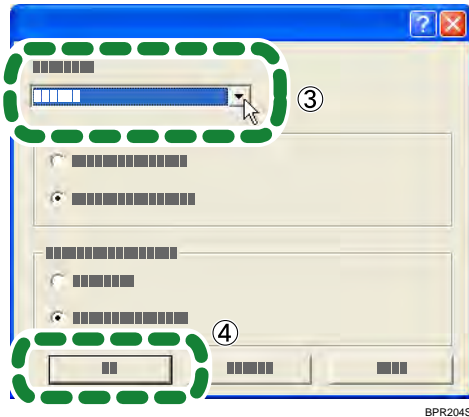
Use the following procedure to change the language setting.

1. Open the printer properties dialog box.
2. Click Printing Preferences.
3. Click the [Printer Configuration] tab (①).



BPR203S

4. Click [Environment Settings...] (②).



5. In the language list (shown below), find the language you require.

The languages in the list appear in the following order:

- 1. Japanese
- 2. English
- 3. German
- 4. French
- 5. Italian
- 6. Spanish
- 7. Dutch
- 8. Swedish
- 9. Danish
- 10. Norwegian
- 11. Portuguese
- 12. Russian
- 13. Finnish
- 14. Czech
- 15. Hungarian
- 16. Polish

6. In the [Language:] list, select the language you require (③).

7. Click [OK] (④).

8. Click [OK] (⑤).



# 4. Monitoring and Configuring the Printer

---

## Using the Status Monitor

Using the Status monitor, you can check the print job status, error messages amount of remaining ink, and other printer status information.

### Reference

- p.191 "Replacing a Print Cartridge"
- p.254 "Status Monitor Errors"
- p.104 "Canceling Printing from the Status Monitor"

---

## Receiving Notification of Print Job Status via the Status Monitor

---

You can specify how to receive notification of print job status via the Status monitor.

1. Open the printer properties dialog box.
2. Click the [Maintenance] tab.
3. Click [Status Monitor Settings].
4. From the list in the [Status Monitor display settings] area, select a method for launching the Status monitor.
5. Press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

## Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is an application that has functions such as the peer-to-peer printing machine monitoring. We recommend you install this application on the client computer.

- Operating System: Windows 2000  
Protocol Stack  
TCP/IP protocol supplied with Windows 2000
- Operating System: Windows Server 2003  
Protocol Stack  
TCP/IP protocol supplied with Windows Server 2003
- Operating System: Windows XP  
Protocol Stack  
TCP/IP protocol supplied with Windows XP
- Operating System: Windows Vista  
Protocol Stack  
TCP/IP protocol supplied with Windows Vista
- Operating System: Windows Server 2008  
Protocol Stack  
TCP/IP protocol supplied with Windows Server 2008

### What can you do with it?

Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, you can do the following:

- Peer-to-peer printing
  - Send print jobs directly to the network printer without going through a print server.
  - Print using a substitute printer if there are too many jobs waiting on the specified printer, or if an error disables printing (Recovery Printing).
  - Allocate multiple print jobs to multiple printers (Parallel Printing).
  - Preregister groups of printers specified for Recovery Printing or Parallel Printing.
- Receive error message notification if an error occurs in the machine while it is printing or sending a job.
- Monitoring function
  - Check the printer status such as the remaining amount of paper while printing.
  - Simultaneously monitor multiple printers in use.
  - Check the printer's network settings and system configuration.
- Be notified of print completion.



- View up to 100 print jobs that belong to you.

#### ↓ Note

- The status monitor function might not be able to monitor all possible items or events.

## Using Notification via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

This section explains how to use the Notification function in SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

If a client computer uses SmartDeviceMonitor for Client to access a network printer, you can specify the Notification setting to allow the computer to receive print job status notification.

#### ★ Important

- To change the printer properties in the [Printer] folder, you must have access to "Printer Management access authentication". To make this possible, log on as a member of the Administrators or Power Users group.

#### 📖 Reference

- p.70 "Sharing the Printer"

## Specifying the Print Server

Follow the procedure below to make the settings on the print server.

#### ★ Important

- To change the print server setting, you must have access to "Printer Management access authentication". To make this possible, log on as a member of the Administrators or Power Users group.

1. On the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs], point to [DeskTopBinder], [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client], and then click [Print Server Setting].

The Print Server Setting dialog box appears.

2. Select the [Notify client PCs of printout/data-transmission] check box, and then click [OK].

Depending on the print server setting, a dialog box appears. Read the message in the dialog box, and then click [OK].

By clicking [Cancel], the changed setting is canceled.

3. A dialog box about specifying the client computer setting appears. Click [OK].

The print server setting has been changed. However, you still need to specify the Notification setting on each client computer.

#### ↓ Note

- When the spooler stops, the print job in progress is completely reprinted.
- If [Extended Features] was not used, it is automatically enabled.

## Specifying the Client Computer Settings

---

Follow the procedure below to make the settings on the client.

1. On the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs], point to [DeskTopBinder], [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client], and then click [Extended Features Settings].

The Extended Features Settings dialog box opens.

2. Select the [Use Extended Features] check box.
3. Select the [Notify of printout/ data-transmission when using print server] check box in "Notification".
4. Click [OK].

The Extended Features dialog box closes.

Specifying the client computer settings is now complete.

4

---

## Specifying the Settings for Monitoring the Printer

---

Use SmartDeviceMonitor for Client to monitor the status of the printer.

To use SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, you must make the following settings:

1. **Launch SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.**

The SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon appears in the taskbar's system tray.

This will not appear if you click [Do not show this message again].

2. **Right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon, and then, in the pop-up menu, look for the printer you want to monitor.**
3. **If the printer you want to monitor does not appear, point to [Properties], and then click [Monitor Device Settings...].**

The SmartDeviceMonitor for Client - Option dialog box opens.

4. **Select the printer you want to monitor, and then select the [To be Monitored] check box in [Printer Settings].**

If you select the [Display on the task bar menu] check box, you can reflect the printer status in the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon in the taskbar system tray.

5. **Click [OK].**

The SmartDeviceMonitor for Client - Settings dialog box closes and the selected printer is monitored.

### ↓ Note

- For details about how the icon indicates the printer status, see the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

### 📖 Reference

- If you are using the printer in a DHCP environment, see p.290 "Using DHCP".

---

## Displaying the Printer Status

---

You can display the printer status.

**1. Launch SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.**

**2. Right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon.**

The printer status is reflected in the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon in the taskbar system tray.

**3. To monitor the status in more detail, right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon, and then select the printer you want to monitor.**

**4. Click [Printer].**

A dialog box displaying the printer status opens.

**↓ Note**

- For details about the items in the dialog box, see the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.
- For details about how the icon indicates the printer status, see the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

# Using Web Browser

## Available operations

The following operations can be remotely performed using Web browser from a client computer.

- Displaying printer status or settings
- Resetting the printer
- Making printer settings
- Making e-mail notification settings
- Making network protocol settings
- Making security settings

4

## Configuring the printer

To perform the operations from Web browser, TCP/IP is required. After the printer is configured to use TCP/IP, operations from Web browser become available.

## Recommended Web browsers

- Windows:  
Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher  
Firefox 1.0 or higher
- Mac OS:  
Safari 2.0 or higher  
Firefox 2.0 or higher

### ↓ Note

- If the previous versions of the Web browser above are used, JavaScript and cookies are not enabled with the Web browser used, or the computer's security environment is incompatible with the machine's software, display and operation problems may occur.
- Non-recommended Web browsers might not display certain screen elements correctly.
- If you are using a proxy server, change the Web browser settings. Contact your network administrator for information about the settings.
- The previous page may not appear even after the back button of a Web browser is clicked. If this happens, click the refresh button of a Web browser.
- Updating the printer information is not automatically performed. Click [Refresh] in the display area to update the printer information.

---

## Displaying Top Page

---

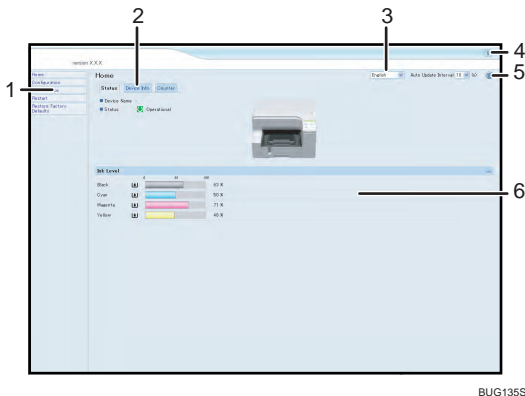
This section explains the Top Page and how to display Web browser.

### 1. Launch the Web browser.

### 2. In the Web browser's address bar, enter "http://(printer's IP address)/" to access the printer.

If a DNS or WINS server is in use and the printer's host name has been specified, you can enter the host name instead of the IP address.

The displayed Web page is split into the following areas:



BUG135S

### 1. Menu Area

A menu appears.

When you click an item in the menu area, information about the item appears.

### 2. Tab area

Details about each menu appears.

### 3. Language Selection Menu

Select a language.

If the displayed page is garbled when using an English language operating system, select "English" with the language selection menu.

### 4. Header area

The link to the screen where you can check the firmware version and the link to the administrator log on screen appear here.

### 5. Help

The link to the displayed screen's help section appears here.

### 6. Work Area

Information about an item selected in the menu area appears here.

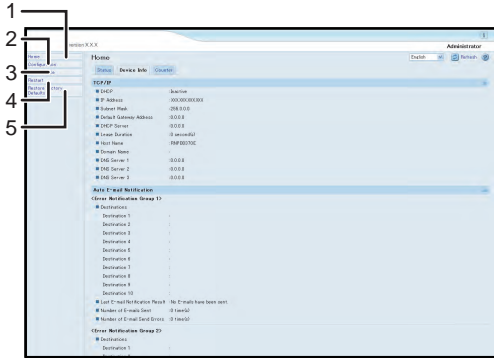
Information displayed in the work area does not update automatically.

To update the information, click [Refresh] in the upper-right corner of the work area.

To refresh the entire Web browser window, click [Refresh] on the Web browser tool bar.

## Menu

This section explains the items in the Web browser menu.



BPR136S

### 1. Home

The [Status] and [Device Info] tab are displayed. Details of the tab menu are displayed on the work area.

### 2. Configuration

Make system settings for the machine, interface settings, and security.

### 3. Maintenance

Click to perform printer maintenance.

### 4. Restart

Click to restart the printer and apply the settings.

### 5. Restore Factory Defaults

Click to reset the printer.

## Checking the Printer Status

You can check the printer status.

### 1. Launch the Web browser.

### 2. In the address bar, enter "http://(printer's IP address or host name)/".

The printer's top page appears.

### 3. In the menu area, click the item you want to check.

## Changing the Printer Settings

You can change the printer settings.

1. **Launch the Web browser.**

2. **In the address bar, enter "http://(printer's IP address or host name)/".**

3. **Click [Configuration], and then click [General Settings].**

A dialog box for entering the user name and password opens.

4. **Enter the user name and password, and then click [OK].**

If this is the first time to do this, enter "admin" as the user name and leave the password blank.

To ensure security, it is important you change the password.

5. **Specify the printer settings.**

6. **Click [OK].**

The specified settings are transmitted to the printer.

---

## Notifying the Printer Status by E-mail

---

You can be notified of the printer status by e-mail on an occasion such as if the printer runs out of paper or paper is jammed.

The e-mail notifying the printer status will be sent to the e-mail address specified as the destination in advance.

### **Important**

- **Depending on your e-mail application, a phishing warning message might appear when you receive e-mail. To stop this warning message appearing, see your e-mail application's Help for details about registering trusted senders.**

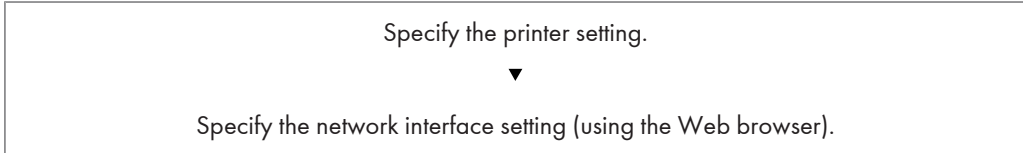
You can also specify the timing and status to notify.

The following status can be notified:

- The printer error has occurred.
- The ink has run out.
- The ink will run out soon.
- The Ink Collector Unit must be replaced now.
- The Ink Collector Unit must be replaced soon.
- The paper has run out.
- The paper has been jammed.
- The paper type is wrong.
- The paper size is wrong.
- The paper size and type are wrong.
- A cover is open.

- The paper has been loaded incorrectly.
- The machine is out of its operational temperature range.

**Flowchart showing how to specify notification by e-mail**



To specify the network interface setting, use the Web browser. This section explains how to specify the network interface setting using the Web browser.

4

**Reference**

- For details about specifying the printer setting, see p.178 "Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu)".
- For details about specifying the network interface setting, see p.116 "Changing the Printer Settings".

**Specifying Notification the Printer Status by E-mail**

In E-mail, you can specify the basic and authentication settings for sending e-mails.

**Specifying SMTP Server**

You can specify whether to use SMTP, and specify the SMTP server name and SMTP port number. The "Administrator E-mail Address" will appear in the e-mail message. The "Device E-mail Address" will appear in the "From" box.

Functions	Selectable value	Default
SMTP	Active Inactive	Inactive
SMTP Server Name	127 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics)	None
SMTP Port Number	1-65535	25
Device E-mail Address	127 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics)	None
Administrator E-mail Address	127 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics)	None



Functions	Selectable value	Default
Text in E-mail	255 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics) (2-byte characters available)	None

### Specifying SMTP Authentication

By specifying the SMTP authentication setting, you can send e-mails to destinations where the e-mail server carries out SMTP authentication.

By specifying the SMTP authentication setting, you can log on to SMTP servers which require authentication. The supported authentication protocols are: CRAM MD5, PLAIN, and LOGIN.

If you set [SMTP Authentication Encryption] to [Auto], the printer will try logging on using CRAM MD5, LOGIN, and then PLAIN.

If you set [SMTP Authentication Encryption] to [On], the printer will try logging on using only CRAM MD5. If you set [SMTP Authentication Encryption] to [Off], the printer will try logging on using LOGIN and then PLAIN.

Functions	Selectable value	Default
SMTP Authentication	Active Inactive	Inactive
SMTP Authentication Name	191 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics)	None
SMTP Authentication Password	63 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics)	None (No Password)
SMTP Authentication Encryption	Auto On Off	Auto

### Specifying POP before SMTP

By specifying the SMTP authentication setting, you can send e-mails to destinations where the e-mail server carries out SMTP authentication.

By using POP before SMTP, you can log on to an SMTP server supporting POP before SMTP.

You can specify whether to use POP before SMTP, and specify the POP server name, POP port number, POP user name, and POP password.

If you set [POP Authentication Encryption] to [Auto], the printer will try logging on by APOP login, and then in plain text.

If you set [POP Authentication Encryption] to [On], the printer will try logging on only by APOP login. If you set [POP Authentication Encryption] to [Off], the printer will try logging on only in plain text.

In standby time following POP authentication (in milliseconds), you can specify how long the printer can wait for logging on to the SMTP server after logging on to the POP server.

Functions	Selectable value	Default
POP before SMTP	Active Inactive	Inactive
POP Server Name	127 characters max. (1-byte alphanumeric)	None
POP Port Number	1-65535 (1-byte numeric characters)	110
POP User Name	127 characters max. (1-byte alphanumeric)	None
POP Password	63 characters max. (1-byte alphanumeric)	None (no password)
POP Authentication Encryption	Auto On Off	Auto
Wait Time after POP Authentication	0-10000 (millisecond(s))	300

### Auto E-mail Notification: Error Notification Group 1-3

#### Group to Notify

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Group Name	19 characters max. (1-byte alphanumeric)(2-byte characters available)	None
E-mail Language	English Japanese French German	English

Functions	Selectable value	Default
	Italian Spanish Dutch Swedish Norwegian Danish Portuguese Finnish	
E-mail Language	Polish Czech Hungarian Russian	English
Subject	31 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics) (2-byte characters available)	None
Text	255 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics) (2-byte characters available)	None

### Destinations

Destination 1-10

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Name	19 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics) (2-byte characters available)	None
E-mail Address	127 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics)	None

### Error Notification

This section lists the settings for notification by e-mail.

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Printer Error	ON OFF	OFF
Cartridge Empty	ON OFF	OFF
Cartridge Almost Empty	ON OFF	OFF
Replace Ink Collector Unit	ON OFF	OFF
Ink Collector Unit Near Full	ON OFF	OFF
No Paper	ON OFF	OFF
Paper Misfeed	ON OFF	OFF
Paper Size Mismatch	ON OFF	OFF
Paper Type Mismatch	ON OFF	OFF
Paper Size and Type Mismatch	ON OFF	OFF
Cover Open	ON OFF	OFF
Unit/Cartridge Not Set	ON OFF	OFF
Out of Printable Temperature Range	ON OFF	OFF

## Auto E-mail Notification: Counter Notification Group

### Group to Notify

Functions	Selectable value	Default
E-mail Language	English Japanese German French Italian Spanish Dutch Swedish Danish Norwegian Portuguese Finnish	English
E-mail Language	Polish Czech Hungarian Russian	English
Subject	31 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics) (2-byte characters available)	None

### Destination

Destination 1-10

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Name	19 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics) (2-byte characters available)	None
E-mail Address	127 characters max. (1-byte alphanumerics)	None

**Counter Notification**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Machine Total	ON OFF	OFF

**Auto E-mail Notification: Error Notification**

---

**Printer Error**

4

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**Cartridge Empty**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**Cartridge Almost Empty**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs
Notify within	10 20 30 (%)	10

**Replace Ink Collector Unit**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**Ink Collector Unit Near Full**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**No Paper**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**Paper Misfeed**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**Paper Size Mismatch**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10	5



Functions	Selectable value	Default
	15 20 25 30 (minutes)	

### Paper Type Mismatch

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

4

### Paper Size and Type Mismatch

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**Cover Open**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**Unit/Cartridge Not Set**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs Occurs & Fixed	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15 20 25 30 (minutes)	5

**Out of Printable Temperature Range**

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notify when error	Occurs	Occurs
Notify within	0 5 10 15	5

Functions	Selectable value	Default
	20 25 30 (minutes)	

## Auto E-mail Notification: Counter Notification


### Machine Total

Functions	Selectable value	Default
Notification Method	Number of Pages Number of Pages & Monthly	Number of Pages
Notify Every	100 200 300 400 500 1000 2000 (pages)	100 (pages)
Notification Day	1-28 (days)	1 (day)

4

## About the Web Browser Help

Using "Settings", you can view help on the things you can do through the Web browser.

1. Launch the Web browser.
2. In the address bar, enter "http://(printer's IP address or host name)/".
3. Click .

Help on the things you can do through the Web browser appears.

## SNMP

The Ethernet interface includes the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) agent for UDP.

Using the SNMP manager, you can obtain printer data.

The default community name is "public". Using this community name, you can obtain MIB data.

### Supporting MIB (SNMP v1/v2c)

- MIB-II
- PrinterMIB
- HostResourceMIB
- RicohPrivateMIB
- PrinterPortMonitorMIB

# 5. Using the Printer with a Macintosh

## System Requirements for Macintosh

### Operating System (for Macintosh)

- PowerPC-Based Macintosh: Mac OS X 10.3 or later
- Intel-Based Macintosh: Mac OS X 10.4.5 or later

**Note**

- The operating environment for the printer driver depends on the application in use.
- OS X Server is not supported.
- Printing with USB 2.0 is supported under Mac OS X 10.3.3 and later versions.

### Hardware (for Macintosh)

#### PowerPC-Based Macintosh

Computer: Macintoshes Based on PowerPC G3 or later PowerPC models

Memory: 128 MB or more

HDD: 50 MB or more

Other requirements: USB port or network port

#### Intel-Based Macintosh

Computer: Macintoshes Based on Intel Core Duo or later Intel models

Memory: 256 MB or more

HDD: 50 MB or more

Other requirements: USB port or network port

**Note**

- You can only use a network printer via a TCP/IP connection. You cannot use AppleTalk.
- This machine does not support Bonjour or Rendezvous connections.

## Preparing for Printing (for Macintosh)

For details about preparing to print from a Macintosh computer, see the following sections:

### **Checking the printer status and settings using the printer's control panel**

See p.65 "Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu)"

### **Specifying the interface and network settings using the printer's control panel**

See p.73 "Specifying the Interface and Network Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Host Interface Menu)"

### **Available paper types and how to load paper**

See p.84 "Paper"

### **Loading paper into the paper tray**

See p.44 "Loading Paper"

### **Specifying the paper settings using the printer's control panel**

See p.94 "Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)"

# Installing the Printer Driver under Mac OS X

This section explains how to install the printer driver. After installing the printer driver, adjust the settings necessary for printer use.

The following procedures are based on Mac OS 10.5.1. The procedures for your machine might differ slightly from those shown if you are using a different version of Mac OS.

## ★ Important

- Only the English version of the Macintosh printer driver is supplied.

## Installing the Printer Driver on a Macintosh

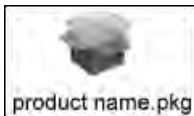
Follow the procedure below to install the printer driver.

## ★ Important

- You cannot install the printer driver while other applications are running. Be sure to close all applications before installing the printer driver.
- After installing the printer driver, you must restart the computer. Be sure to save any files you are working on before installing the printer driver.
- To install the printer driver, you must log on as administrator. For details, consult the administrator of the Macintosh in question.

1. Start Macintosh, and insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
2. In the [RPCS\_R] folder in the [Mac OS X 10.5 or later] folder, double-click the product name.pkg icon.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, double-click the product name.pkg icon in the [RPCS\_R] folder in the [Mac OS X 10.3 or later] folder.



A warning message appears.

3. After reading the displayed message, and then click [Continue].

The following message is displayed: "Welcome to the product name installer"

4. Click [Continue].

The software license agreement appears in the [Software License Agreement] dialog box.

5. After reading the agreement, and then click [Continue].

The confirmation screen appears.

**6. Click [Agree].**

If you click [Disagree], the screen that appeared in the previous step returns.

**7. Click [Install].**

The [Authenticate] dialog box appears.

To select where to install the file, click [Change Install Location...].

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, select where to install the file in the [Select a Destination] dialog box,

**8. Enter the administrator's user name and password, and then click [OK].**

The confirmation screen appears.

**9. Read the message on the confirmation screen, and then click [Continue Installation].**

The printer driver is installed.

**10. Click [Restart].**

To complete the installation, the computer restarts.

5

---

## Specifying the Printer Settings on a Macintosh

---

This section explains how to register a printer you want to use in [Printer List]. You can specify usable printers with this registration.

### Using the Printer via a USB Connection from a Macintosh

---

**★ Important**

- Connect the printer to the USB port and switch it on in advance.
- Printing with USB 2.0 is supported under Mac OS X 10.3.3 and later versions.

**1. On the [Apple] menu, click [System Preferences...], and then click the [Print & Fax] in the [System Preferences] dialog box.**

The [Print & Fax] appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, double-click the Printer Setup Utility icon in the [Utilities] folder in the [Applications] folder.

The [Printer List] appears.

**2. From the list of printers, select a printer that is automatically recognized by plug-and-play, and then delete it. Click [-].**

The confirmation screen appears.

**3. Click [OK].**



**4. Click [+].**

The add printer screen appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, click [Add Printer...] on the [Printers] menu or [Add] on the toolbar.

The [Printer Browser] appears.

**5. On the add printer screen, click [Default], and then make sure [Kind] is set to [USB].**

The name of the printer connected to the USB port appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, make sure [Connection] is set to [USB].

**6. Select the name of the printer you want to use.****7. Make sure the product name appears in the [Printer Name] field, and then click [Add].****8. If you want to use the bypass tray, tray2 and/or tray 3, select options in the [Installable Options] dialog box, and then select [Continue].****9. The name of the registered printer appears in [Print & Fax].**

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, the name of the registered printer appears in [Printer List].

**10. On the [System Preferences] menu, click [Quit System Preferences].**

The [System Preferences] closes.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, click [Quit Printer Setup Utility] on the [Printer Setup Utility] menu.

The [Printer Setup Utility] closes.

**Note**

- If you use a printer that has been automatically recognized by plug-and-play, the driver screens may be displayed in English due to the specifications of the Mac OS X. To display the driver screens properly, delete the printer once from the list of printers.
- To make fine adjustments to print quality, set [Adjust Color Density...] before using the printer.

**Reference**

- For details about setting [Adjust Color Density...], see the printer driver Help.

**Using the Printer via Network Connection from a Macintosh****★ Important**

- Connect the printer to the network in advance and switch it on.
- Specify the printer's IP address on its control panel in advance.

**1. On the [Apple] menu, click [System Preferences...], and then click the [Print & Fax] in the [System Preferences] dialog box.**

The [Print & Fax] appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, double-click the Printer Setup Utility icon in the [Utilities] folder in the [Applications] folder.

The [Printer List] appears.

**2. Click [+].**

The add printer screen appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, click [Add Printer...] on the [Printers] menu or [Add] on the toolbar.

The [Printer Browser] appears.

**3. On the add printer screen, click [IP].**

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, click [IP Printer] in the [Printer Browser] dialog box.

**4. From the [Protocol] pop-up menu, select [Line Printer Daemon - LPD].**

**5. In the [Address:] field, enter the IP address of the printer you want to use.**

**6. Select [Select a driver to use...] in the [Print Using] field, and then select a printer in the list.**

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, select [RICOH] in the [Printer Using] field, and then select a printer in the [Model Name] list.

**7. Click [Add].**

**8. If you want to use the bypass tray, tray2 and/or tray 3, select options in the [Installable Options] dialog box, and then select [Continue].**

**9. The IP address of the registered printer appears in [Print & Fax].**

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, the IP address of the registered printer appears in [Printer List].

**10. On the [System Preferences] menu, click [Quit System Preferences].**

The [System Preferences] closes.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, click [Quit Printer Setup Utility] on the [Printer Setup Utility] menu.

The [Printer Setup Utility] closes.

**Note**

- If you use a printer that has been automatically recognized by plug-and-play, the driver screens may be displayed in English due to the specifications of the Mac OS X. To display the driver screens properly, delete the printer once from the list of printers.
- To make fine adjustments to print quality, set [Adjust Color Density...] before using the printer.

**Reference**

- For details about setting [Adjust Color Density...], see the printer driver Help.

# Printer Properties Dialog Box on a Macintosh

This section describes the printer properties dialog box and explains how to open it.

## Dialog Boxes for Printer Settings on a Macintosh

The dialog boxes for specifying the printer driver settings consist of the Page Setup dialog and Print dialog. The printer settings can be adjusted in [Maintenance Utility].

### Page Setup dialog

Specify the paper settings on the Page Setup dialog.

### Print dialog

The Print dialog comprises settings such as [Paper Feed] and [Printer Features].

When you open the Print dialog, the [Copies & Pages] settings appear. Using the pop-up menu in the middle-right of the dialog box, you can switch the displayed settings from [Copies & Pages] to other settings such as [Paper Feed] and [Printer Features].

### Maintenance Utility dialog

Adjust the printer settings in the [Maintenance Utility]. You can open the [Maintenance Utility] from the [Print & Fax].

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, you can open the [Maintenance Utility] from the [Printer Setup Utility].

#### ↓ Note

- The way of opening the printer settings differs depending on the application. For details, see the manual provided with the application.
- Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, the [Copies & Pages] setting appears under the name of the application in use.

#### 📖 Reference

- For details about opening the [Maintenance Utility], see p. 138 "Displaying the [Maintenance Utility] on a Macintosh".

## Displaying the Printer Driver Settings Dialog Boxes on a Macintosh

This section explains how to use the [TextEdit] application provided with Mac OS X.

#### ★ Important

- Under Mac OS X, the printer you want to use must be registered beforehand in [Printer Setup Utility]. After registering the printer, open the printer driver settings dialog box from the application.

### Reference

- For details about specifying the printer driver settings, see p. 133 "Installing the Printer Driver under Mac OS X".

## Displaying the Page Setup dialog on a Macintosh

---

1. From the application's File menu, click [Page Setup...].

The Page Setup dialog appears.

2. From the [Format for] pop-up menu, select the printer you want to use.

If you want to use a printer connected to the network, select the printer according to its IP address.

## Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh

---

5

1. From the application's File menu, select [Print...].

The [Copies & Pages] setting appears.

2. From the [Printer] pop-up menu, select the printer you want to use.

If you want to use a printer connected to the network, select the printer according to its IP address.

To display the [Setup] settings, using the pop-up menu in the middle-right of the dialog box, switch from [the name of the application in use] to [Printer Features], and then select [Setup] from the [Feature Sets:] pop-up menu.

To display the [Paper Feed] settings, using the pop-up menu in the middle-right of the dialog box, switch from [the name of the application in use] to [Paper Feed].

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, if you open the printer driver settings from an application, the previously specified settings appear. Change the settings as required, and then print.

### Note

- Depending on the application, the printer driver settings may be automatically changed.
- Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, the [Copies & Pages] setting appears under the name of the application in use.

## Displaying the [Maintenance Utility] on a Macintosh

---

1. On the [Apple] menu, click [System Preferences...], and then click the [Print & Fax] in the [System Preferences] dialog box.

The [Print & Fax] appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, double-click the Printer Setup Utility icon in the [Utilities] folder in the [Applications] folder.

The [Printer List] appears.

- 2. From the [Print & Fax], select the printer you want to use, and then click [Open Print Queue...].**

If you want to use a network printer, select it according to its name of the printer.

- 3. On the [Print & Fax] toolbar, click [Utility].**

The [Maintenance Utility] appears.

# Printing with a Macintosh

This section explains how to start and stop printing.

---

## Basic Printing Procedure for Macintosh

---

This section explains the basic procedure for printing from an application.

---

### Printing on a Macintosh

---

#### ★ Important

- Install the printer driver and configure the printer settings in advance.

5

1. In the application, open the file you want to print.
2. Open the Page Setup dialog, select a printer from the [Format for] pop-up menu, and then specify the paper settings as required.

Be sure to select the actual printer you want to use; do not select "Any Printer". If you do select "Any Printer", you may not be able to access all the paper sizes available on the printer.

3. Open the Print dialog, select a printer from the [Printer] pop-up menu, and then specify the printer settings as required.
4. Click [Print].

Printing starts.

#### ↓ Note

- You can let other Macintoshes on the same network as yours share the printer, whether it is connected to your computer via USB or the network. For details about how to share the printer, see Mac Help.

#### 📖 Reference

- For details about displaying the printer driver settings, see p. 137 "Displaying the Printer Driver Settings Dialog Boxes on a Macintosh".
- For details about specifying the printer driver settings, see p. 133 "Installing the Printer Driver under Mac OS X".
- For details about displaying Mac Help, see p. 149 "Opening Help on a Macintosh".

---

## Printing on Various Paper Types with a Macintosh

---

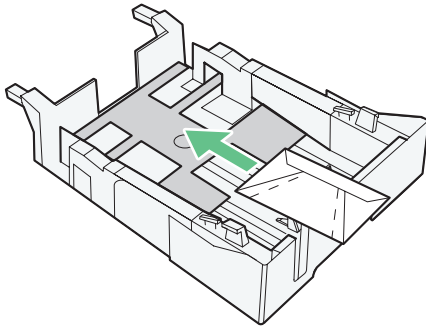
The print method differs depending on the type of paper used for printing. Use a print method appropriate for each paper type.

## Printing on Paper in a Paper Tray with a Macintosh

This section explains how to load paper in the paper tray and print on it.

### ★ Important

- Curled paper may jam. Straighten any curls before loading.
- Load paper with the print side face down in the paper trays.
- Printing on Envelopes
  - Before loading envelopes, make sure their edges are sharply creased by rubbing them with a pen or similar object.
  - Switch the envelope selector to "✍️".
  - Squeeze the paper guide release, and then slide the paper guides into position according to the envelope size.



BPR133S

5

### 1. Load paper into tray.

How to load paper depends on the paper type.

### 2. Open the Print dialog.

### 3. Select the tray from the [Paper Feed] settings.

To display the [Paper Feed] settings, using the pop-up menu in the middle-right of the dialog box, switch from [the name of the application in use] to [Paper Feed].


Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, using the pop-up menu, switch from [Copies & Pages] to [Paper Feed].

### 4. Select the color mode, paper type, and print quality from the [Setup] settings.

Select the color mode from the [Color/Black and White:] pop-up menu, then select the paper type from the [Paper type:] pop-up menu, and then select the print quality from the [Resolution:] pop-up menu.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, select the color mode from the [Color Mode:] pop-up menu, and then select the paper type and print quality from the [Print Mode:] pop-up menu.

To display the [Setup] settings, using the pop-up menu in the middle-right of the dialog box, switch from [the name of the application in use] to [Printer Features], and then select [Setup] from the [Feature Sets:] pop-up menu.

After selecting the paper type as required, switch the envelope selector to "".

If you select [Inkjet Plain Paper], the machine will print on one side only. To print on both sides, select [Plain].

### 5. Make print settings, and then click [Print].

Depending on the selected paper type, a confirmation screen might appear. If it does, read the message, and then click [OK].

#### Note

- Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, the [Copies & Pages] setting appears under the name of the application in use.
- The vertical and horizontal resolutions will be the same.

#### Reference

- For details about opening the [Setup] or [Paper Feed] settings, see p.138 "Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh".
- For details about the number of sheets that can be loaded in the paper tray, see p.44 "Loading Paper".
- For details about how to handle paper, carry out duplex printing, and use options, see p.44 "Loading Paper".
- For details about dithering, see the printer driver Help.
- For details about specifying a time for ink drying, see the printer driver Help.
- For details about the printable areas of envelopes, see p.44 "Loading Paper".

## Printing with Tray 2/Tray 3 with a Macintosh

---

This section explains how to load paper in tray 2/tray 3 and print on it.

#### Important

- Paper lighter than 157 g/m<sup>2</sup> (297.6 lb.) can be loaded into tray 1. To use Paper lighter than that, click [Plain] in the [Paper type:] pop-up menu.

1. Open the [Setup] settings.
2. Select the paper type from the [Setup] settings.
3. Make sure [Tray 2]/[Tray 3] is selected from the [Paper Feed] settings.
4. Slide the paper guide into position according to the paper size.



**5. Insert a sheet of paper into tray 2/tray 3 with the print side face down.**

Insert the sheet straight into tray 2/tray 3.

**6. Make print settings, and then click [Print].****Note**

- To use tray 2/tray 3, click the [Driver] tab in the [Printer Info] dialog box, and then select the [Tray 2]/[Tray 3] from the pop-up menu. To display the [Printer Info] dialog box, display the [Print & Fax], double-click the printer from the printer list, and then click [Info] on the toolbar.
- Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, to use tray 2/tray 3, select the [Installable Options] in the [Printer Info] dialog box, and then select options. To display the [Printer Info] dialog box, display the [Printer List], and then click [Show Info] on the [Printers] menu.

**Reference**

- For details about opening the [Setup] or [Paper Feed] setting, see p.138 "Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh".
- For details about handling paper, see p.44 "Loading Paper".
- For details about the number of sheets that can be loaded in tray 2/tray 3, see p.44 "Loading Paper".

**Printing with the Bypass Tray with a Macintosh**

This section explains how to load paper in the bypass tray and print on it.

The procedure for loading thick paper in the bypass tray and printing on it is used as an example.

**★ Important**

- Paper lighter than 157 g/m<sup>2</sup> (297.6 lb.) can be loaded into tray 1. To use Paper lighter than that, click [Plain] in the [Paper type:] pop-up menu.

**1. Open the [Setup] settings.****2. Select the paper type from the [Setup] settings.**

Select [Thick] from the [Paper type:] pop-up menu.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, select [Thick paper-High speed] or [Thick paper-Standard] or [Thick paper-High quality] from the [Print Mode:] pop-up menu.

**3. Make sure [Bypass Tray] is selected from the [Paper Feed] settings.****4. Slide the bypass tray guides into position according to the paper size.****5. Insert a sheet of paper into the bypass tray with the print side face up.**

Insert the sheet straight into the bypass tray.

**6. Make print settings, and then click [Print].**

**Note**

- To use the bypass tray, click the [Driver] tab in the [Printer Info] dialog box, and then select the [Bypass Tray Unit] check box. To display the [Printer Info] dialog box, display the [Print & Fax], double-click the printer from the printer list, and then click [Info] on the toolbar.
- Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, to use the bypass tray, select the [Installable Options] in the [Printer Info] dialog box, and then select the [Bypass Tray Unit] check box. To display the [Printer Info] dialog box, display the [Printer List], and then click [Show Info] on the [Printers] menu.

**Reference**

- For details about opening the [Setup] or [Paper Feed] setting, see p.138 "Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh".
- For details about handling paper, see p.44 "Loading Paper".
- For details about the number of sheets that can be loaded in the bypass tray, see p.44 "Loading Paper".

**5**

---

## Canceling a Print Job on a Macintosh

---

You can cancel a print job from either the printer or the computer. The procedure for canceling the job depends on whether or not the computer has sent the job to the printer yet.

### If the computer has sent or is sending the print job to the printer

You can cancel the print job from the print job queue window or by pressing the [Job Reset] key on the printer's control panel.

### If the computer has not yet sent the print job to the printer

If you execute the print command, the print job queue window opens and the print job is queued. Using the print job queue window, you can cancel print jobs.

---

## Canceling a Print Job from the Computer (for Macintosh)

---

You can delete a print job before, during, and after its being sent from the computer to the printer.

1. Check that printing has started and the print job queue window opens.
2. In the print job queue window, select the print job you want to cancel.
3. Click [Delete Job] in the [Jobs] menu or [Delete] on the toolbar.

**Reference**

- For details about the print job queue window, see p.147 "Displaying the Printer Status on a Macintosh".

## Canceling Printing Using the [Job Reset] Key of the Printer (for Macintosh)

---

You can cancel a print job while it is being transmitted or printed.

**1. Check that printing has started.**

Not only the print job being printed but also the print jobs in queue will be canceled.

If you press the [Job Reset] key while the printer is receiving print data for a print job (the Data in lamp is blinking), that print job is also canceled.

**2. Press the [Job Reset] key.**

It will take a few moments for printing to stop.

## Monitoring and Configuring the Printer (for Macintosh)

For details about using a Macintosh to obtain a list of the printer's settings, the printer's status, or similar printer information, see the following section:

### **Checking the printer's status or changing the printer's network settings using a Web browser**

See p.114 "Using Web Browser"

# Displaying the Printer Status on a Macintosh

Using the Status Monitor, you can display the amount of ink left and other printer status details on the computer. You can also check any errors that occur in the print job queue window.

The print job queue window opens automatically when you execute a print command. Using the Status Monitor, you can also display the printer status without executing a print command.

To view the printer's status on your computer, bidirectional communication between the printer and computer must be established.

## Checking whether Bidirectional Communication is Working on a Macintosh

You can view the printer's status on your computer only if the printer and computer are communicating bidirectionally.

Use the following procedure to check whether the computer and printer are communicating bidirectionally.

5

1. **Open [Maintenance Utility].**
2. **Check that [Maintenance Utility] is displayed.**

If [Maintenance Utility] is displayed, bidirectional communication is available.

The printer's status can be checked from the computer if bidirectional communication is available.

### Reference

- For details about displaying the [Print & Fax], see p.138 "Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh".
- For details about opening the [Maintenance Utility], see p.138 "Displaying the [Maintenance Utility] on a Macintosh".

## Displaying the Status Monitor on a Macintosh

This section explains how to display the Status Monitor.

1. **Display the [Print & Fax].**  
Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, display the [Printer List].
2. **From the [Print & Fax], select the printer you want to use.**  
If you want to use a network printer, select it according to its IP address.
3. **On the [Print & Fax] toolbar, click [Utility].**  
The [Maintenance Utility] appears.
4. **Click [Status Monitor].**  
The Status Monitor is launched.

### Reference

- For details about displaying the [Print & Fax], see p.138 "Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh".

# Opening Help on a Macintosh

Help is useful for learning about what the various settings do and how to specify them. Use the following procedure to open the printer driver Help and Mac Help under Mac OS X.

---

## Displaying Help from the Print dialog on a Macintosh

---

You can display Help from the Print dialog.

1. **Click the Finder icon on the dock.**
2. **Start Help Viewer from Mac Help, click [Home], and then select [RICOH RPCS Raster Help].**

The Help screen appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, start Help Viewer from Mac Help, and then select [RICOH RPCS Raster Help] from the [Library] menu.

### Reference

- For details about displaying the [Setup] or [Paper Feed] settings, see p. 138 "Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh".

---

## Displaying Mac Help

---

This section explains how to open Mac Help.

1. **Click the Finder icon on the dock.**
2. **From the [Help] menu, select [Mac Help].**

The Help Viewer is launched and Mac Help appears.

## Maintaining (for Macintosh)

For details about maintaining and managing the printer with a Macintosh computer, see the following sections:

### **Checking the number of printed pages using the control panel**

See p.157 "Checking the Number of Printed Pages using the Control Panel (Counter Menu)"

### **Performing maintenance using the control panel**

See p.159 "Performing Maintenance using the Control Panel (Maintenance Menu)"

### **Specifying system settings using the control panel**

See p.178 "Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu)"

### **Selecting the control panel language**

See p.106 "Selecting the Printer Driver Language"

## 5

### **Restricting printer functions**

See p.189 "Restricting Printer Functions"

### **Replacing a print cartridge**

See p.191 "Replacing a Print Cartridge"

### **Replacing an ink collector unit**

See p.197 "Replacing an Ink Collector Unit"

### **Cleaning**

See p.200 "Cleaning"

### **Moving**

See p.201 "Moving"

### **Disposing**

See p.203 "Disposing"

### **When not using for a long period of time**

See p.204 "When Not Using for a Long Period of Time"



# Troubleshooting (for Macintosh)

## Printing will not start

See p.213 "Printing Will Not Start"

## Paper is not fed or delivered normally

See p.215 "Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally"

## Paper jam

See p.217 "Paper Jam"

## Print results are not satisfactory

See p.241 "Print Results Are Not Satisfactory"

## Error & status messages on the control panel

See p.248 "Error & Status Messages on the Control Panel"

### ↓ Note

- If the custom size setting exceeds the acceptable range, the image will be printed on the OS-specified default paper size. Check the custom size setting range.

# Updating the Printer Driver on a Macintosh

---

## Checking the Version of the Printer Driver on a Macintosh

---

This section explains how to check the version of the current printer driver.

**1. Display the [Print & Fax].**

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, Display the [Printer List].

**2. Select the printer you want to use from the printer list, and then click [Info] on the toolbar.**

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, click [Show Info] on the [Printers] menu.

The [Printer Info] dialog box opens.

**3. Check the displayed version number.**

**Reference**

- For details about displaying the [Print & Fax], see p.138 "Displaying the Print dialog on a Macintosh".

5

---

## Uninstalling the Printer Driver from a Macintosh

---

To update the printer driver, you need to uninstall the current printer driver and then install the new one.

**★ Important**

- The printer driver cannot be uninstalled if other applications are running. We recommend you close all applications before attempting to uninstall the driver.
- To uninstall a printer driver, you must log on as administrator. For details, consult the administrator of the Macintosh in question.
- When you uninstall a printer driver, the Status Monitor installed with the driver is also uninstalled.

**1. On the [Apple] menu, click [System Preferences...], and then click the [Print & Fax] in the [System Preferences] dialog box.**

The [Print & Fax] appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, double-click the Printer Setup Utility icon in the [Utilities] folder in the [Applications] folder.

The [Printer List] appears.

**2. Select the printer you want to delete, and then click [-].**

The confirmation screen appears.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, select the printer you want to delete in the [Printer List], and then click [Delete Selected Printers] in the [Printers] menu, or click [Delete] on the toolbar.

The printer is deleted from [Printer List].

**3. Click [OK].**

The printer is deleted from [Print & Fax].

**4. Click [Quit System Preferences] on the [System Preferences] menu.**

The [System Preferences] closes.

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, click [Quit Printer Setup Utility] on the [Printer Setup Utility] menu.

The [Printer Setup Utility] closes.

**5. Insert the provided CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

**6. In the [RPCS\_R] folder in the [Mac OS X 10.5 or later] folder, double-click the Uninstall\_product name icon.**

Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, double-click the Uninstall\_product name icon in the [RPCS\_R] folder in the [Mac OS X 10.3 or later] folder.



The confirmation screen appears.

**7. Click [OK].**

A dialog box for entering the user name and password opens.

If you click [Cancel], the installation dialog box closes and the printer driver is not uninstalled.

**8. Enter the administrator's user name and password, and then click [OK].**

A message confirming that the uninstallation is complete appears.

**9. Click [OK].**

**Reference**

- For details about checking the printer driver version, see p.152 "Checking the Version of the Printer Driver on a Macintosh".

# Software on the CD-ROM for Macintosh

This section describes the CD-ROM supplied with the printer.

---

## Files for Macintosh

---

The following is a list of the files on the CD-ROM.

File Name
product name_Mac_OS_X
RPCS Raster Printer Driver for Macintosh <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• PowerPC-Based Macintosh: Mac OS X 10.3 or later</li><li>• Intel-Based Macintosh: Mac OS X 10.4.5 or later</li></ul>
Manuals (HTML files)

5

---

## RPCS Raster Printer Drivers for Macintosh

---

This section gives the file locations of the different RPCS raster printer drivers and their system requirements.

### File Location

The drivers are in the following folders on the supplied CD-ROM.

- RPCS raster printer driver for Mac OS X 10.3 or later  
**Mac OS X 10.3 or later\RPCS\_R**
- RPCS raster printer driver for Mac OS X 10.5 or later  
**Mac OS X 10.5 or later\RPCS\_R**

### System Requirements for the Printer Drivers

- Computer  
PowerPC-Based Macintosh/Intel-Based Macintosh
- Operating Systems  
PowerPC-Based Macintosh: Mac OS X 10.3 or later  
Intel-Based Macintosh: Mac OS X 10.4.5 or later
- Display Resolution  
Minimum SVGA 800 × 600 pixels

 **Note**

- For details about using the printer driver, see the printer driver Help.

---

## **Manuals (HTML files) for Macintosh**

---

This section gives the location of the manuals.

### **File Location**

The manuals are in the following folders on the supplied CD-ROM.

MANUAL\_HTML\LIST



# 6. Maintaining

---

## Checking the Number of Printed Pages using the Control Panel (Counter Menu)

You can check and print out the printer's counter figures.

Counters show the number of prints made by the printer. Print counter numbers do not include test patterns printed using "Maintenance", system configurations printed using "List/Test Print", and counter printouts made using "Counter".

### Show Counter

- Color:  
This counter shows the total number of pages printed in color.
- Black:  
This counter shows the total number of pages printed in black and white.
- EconClr:  
This counter shows the total number of pages printed in Economy Color.

### Print

You can print out the printer's page counts, including the number of duplex-printed pages.

"Total Mono+Economy Color" combines "Total Mono Color" and "Total Economy Color".

#### Note

- Black and white files are counted as black and white prints even if color printing was specified.

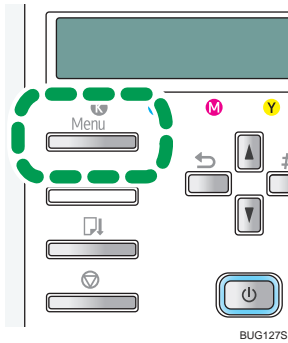
---

## Displaying the Counter

---

You can display the counter.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press [▲] or [▼] to display [Counter], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
Counter
```

3. Press [▲] or [▼] to display [Show Counter], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
Show Counter
```

4. Press [▲] or [▼], and then check the [Color], [Black], and [EconClr] on the display.

```
Color: 12345678
Black: 12345678
```

```
EconClr: 12345678
```

5. Press the [Online] key.

The operating screen appears.



# Performing Maintenance using the Control Panel (Maintenance Menu)

Using the Maintenance menu, you can specify printer maintenance settings for adjusting settings such as gradation and density.

## Nozzle Check

You can print a test pattern to check whether the inks are being correctly ejected from the print head nozzles.

## Head-cleaning

You can clean the print head.

Clean the head if certain colors are not printed or are printed faintly.

Head cleaning consumes ink.

## Head-flushing

You can clean the print head more thoroughly.

Because head flushing consumes more ink than head cleaning, do it only if the print head cannot be cleaned properly by head cleaning.

## Head Position

If bidirectionally printed lines are vertically misaligned, or if printed images are blurred, print the test pattern and adjust the print head alignment.

## Adj.Paper Feed

If printed lines are horizontally misaligned or if images are printed unevenly, print the test pattern and adjust the paper feed setting.

## Registration

Print the test pattern and align the point where printing starts for each paper feed tray.

## Date/Time

You can specify the date and time.

## Key Repeat

The key repeat function allows you to specify setting values in units of ten or scroll the display quickly by pressing and holding down a control panel key. You can enable or disable this function.

- On
- Off

Default: On

## Dry-delay (Exit)

To prevent spoiling of printed copies, select a print delivery interval to allow them to dry.

The interval must be long enough to allow a sheet to dry.

- Off
- 1 sec
- 2 sec
- 5 sec
- 10 sec
- 15 sec
- 20 sec

Default: Off

### **Dry-delay (Dup)**

To prevent spoiling of duplex-printed copies, select a print delivery interval to allow them to dry.

The interval must be long enough to allow a duplex-printed sheet to dry.

- Off
- 1 sec
- 2 sec
- 5 sec
- 10 sec
- 15 sec
- 20 sec

Default: Off

### **Paper Feed Test**

You can eject a sheet of paper without printing anything on it.

### **De-condensation**

To remove moisture from inside the printer, you can eject three sheets of paper without printing anything on them.

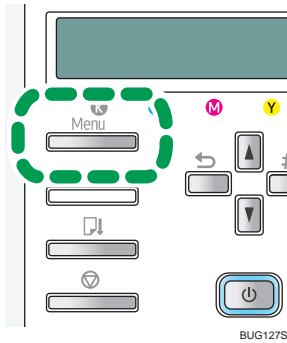
---

## **Nozzle Check**

---

Follow the procedure below to check whether the print-head nozzles are clogged up or not by printing a nozzle check test pattern.

**1. Press the [Menu] key.**



**2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.**

Menu:  
Maintenance

**3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Nozzle Check], and then press the [#Enter] key.**

Maintenance:  
Nozzle Check

**4. Press the [#Enter] key.**

Press # to  
print pattern

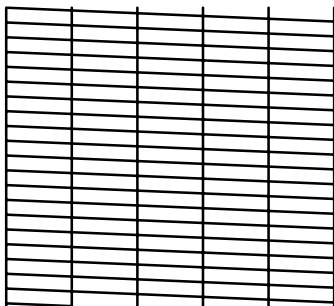
A test pattern is printed.

**5. Press the [Online] key.**

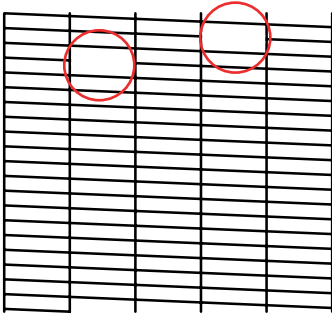
The initial screen appears.

**6. Check the printed test pattern.**

Normal



When print-heads are clogged



BPR212S

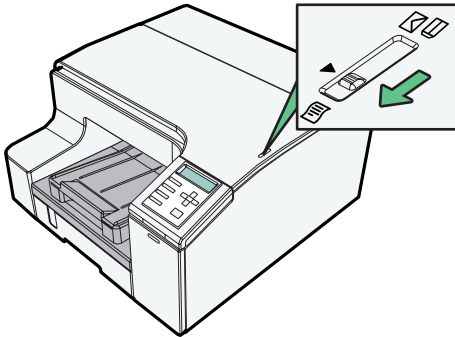
## Head-cleaning

Follow the procedure below to perform a normal print-head cleaning. Perform a head cleaning when a particular color cannot be printed or print images are blurred. Head cleaning consumes ink.

When the Print cartridge is empty, replace it instead of performing a print-head cleaning. After a Print cartridge is replaced, a print-head cleaning will be automatically performed.

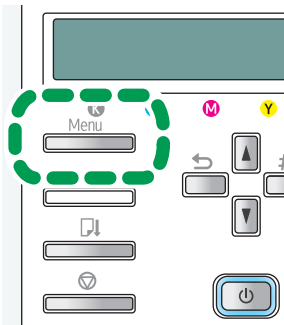
6

1. Slide the envelope selector  to the forward position.



BUG137S

2. Press the [Menu] key.



BUG127S

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

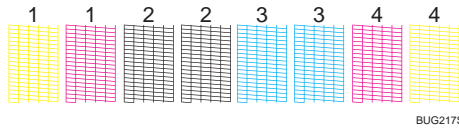
Menu:  
Maintenance

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Head-cleaning], and then press the [#Enter] key.

Maintenance:  
Head-cleaning

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a color, and then press the [#Enter] key.

Head-cleaning:  
All Heads



1. Head 1 (Yellow/Magenta)
2. Head 2 (Black)
3. Head 3 (Cyan)
4. Head 4 (Magenta/Yellow)

6. Press the [#Enter] key.

Press # to  
clean heads

Head cleaning starts.

Maintenance  
in process...

7. Press the [Online] key.

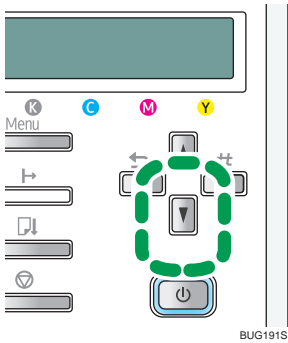
The initial screen appears.

## No-Fuss Head Cleaning

When the machine is online, you can clean the cyan, magenta, yellow, and black print heads with just a couple of keystrokes.

**-22, -27**

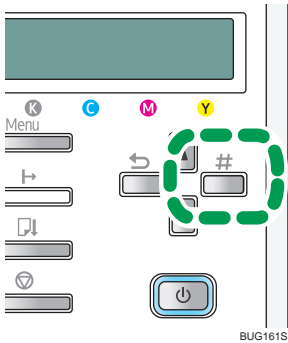
1. Press the [▼] key.



The following message appears:

Press # to  
clean heads

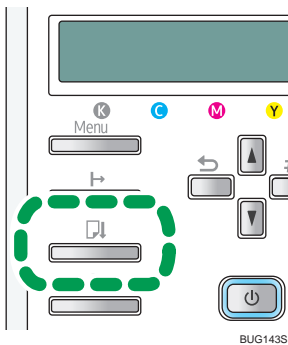
2. Press the [#Enter] key.



Head cleaning starts.

-17

1. Hold the [Form Feed] key down for 3 seconds.



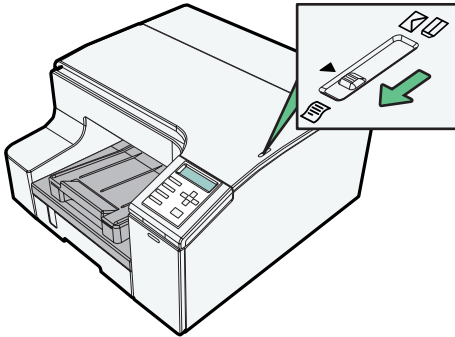
Head cleaning starts.

## Head-flushing

Follow the procedure below to perform a thorough print-head cleaning. Since this consumes more ink than a normal head cleaning does, perform this when the problem persists after performing a normal head cleaning.

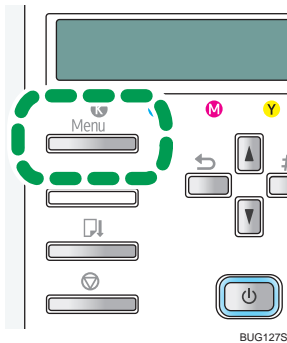
When the Print cartridge is empty, replace it instead of performing a print-head cleaning. After a Print cartridge is replaced, a print-head cleaning will be automatically performed.

1. Slide the envelope selector  to the forward position.



BUG137S

2. Press the [Menu] key.



BUG127S

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

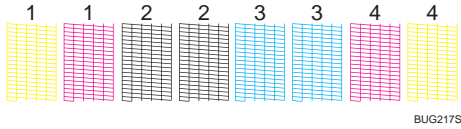
```
Menu:
Maintenance
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Head-flushing], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Maintenance:
Head-flushing
```

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a color, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Head-flushing:
All Heads
```



1. Head 1 (Yellow/Magenta)
2. Head 2 (Black)
3. Head 3 (Cyan)
4. Head 4 (Magenta/Yellow)

**6. Press the [#Enter] key.**

Press # to  
flush heads

Head flushing starts.

Maintenance  
in process...

**6**

**7. Press the [Online] key.**

The initial screen appears.

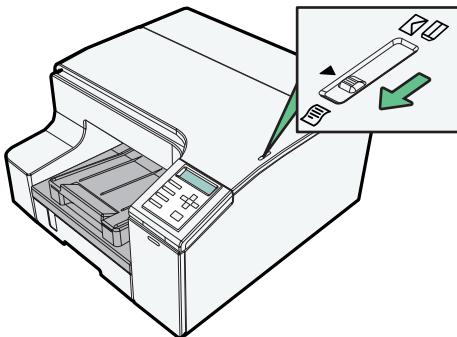
---

## Head Position

---

Follow the procedure below to print a test pattern and adjust the print-head positions if vertical lines are printed unaligned or printed colors look blurred.

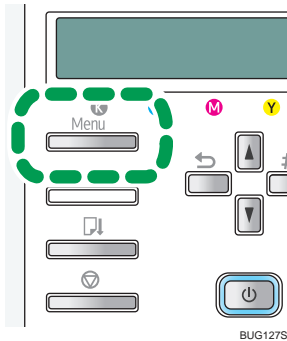
1. Slide the envelope selector to  the forward position.



BUG137S



**2. Press the [Menu] key.**



**3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.**

```
Menu:
Maintenance
```

**4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Head Position], and then press the [#Enter] key.**

```
Maintenance:
Head Position
```

**5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Pr.Test Pattern], and then press the [#Enter] key.**

```
Head Position:
Pr.Test Pattern
```

**6. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a test pattern, and then press the [#Enter] key.**

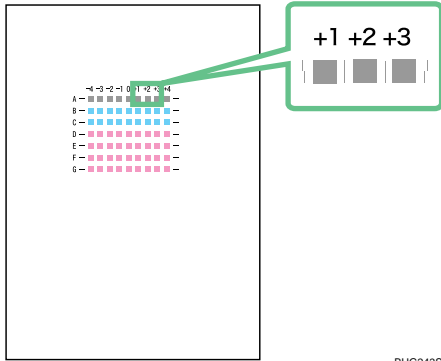
```
Pr.Test Pattern:
High Speed
```

To adjust print-head positions for all resolutions, repeat this procedure selecting the other resolution.

A test pattern to adjust print-head positions is printed.

**7. Check the optimal adjustment values on the printed test pattern.**

The optimal adjustment value is the column number above the square that is between the straight vertical lines and that is the lightest shade of gray. If the column number for the "A" line is "+2", the optimal adjustment value is for "A" is "+2".



8. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Adjustment], and then press the [#Enter] key.
9. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a resolution from step 5, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Adjustment:
High Speed
```

10. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a line, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Adjustment:
1.A
```

11. Enter the optimal adjustment values from step 6, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
A:
(-4, +4)      0
```

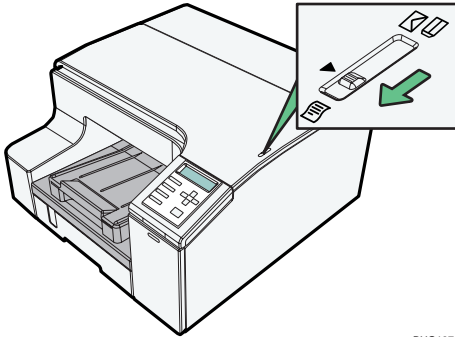
12. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

## Adj.Paper Feed

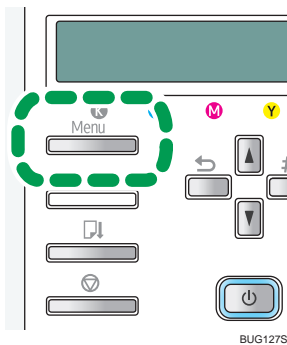
If horizontal lines are printed unaligned, print images are patchy, or a black or white line is printed at regular intervals, print a test pattern, and then adjust the paper feed setting.

1. Slide the envelope selector to  the forward position.



BUG137S

2. Press the [Menu] key.



BUG127S

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
Maintenance
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Adj.Paper Feed], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Maintenance:
Adj.Paper Feed
```

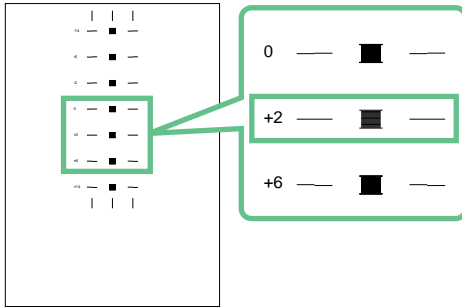
5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Pr.Test Pattern], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Adj.Paper Feed:
Pr.Test Pattern
```

A test pattern to adjust paper feed is printed.

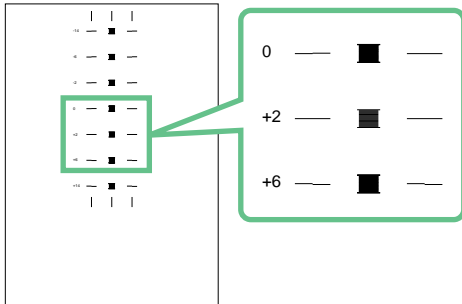
6. Check the optimal adjustment values on the printed test pattern.

The optimal adjustment value is the number that appears on the left of the lightest gray square with straight horizontal lines on both sides. When this number is "+2", the optimal adjustment value is "+2".



BPR214S

When horizontal lines beside the lightest gray square are broken, select the optimal adjustment value by referring to the lines broken in the opposite direction. When the "+2" square is the lightest gray square and the "+6" horizontal lines are broken in the opposite direction, the optimal adjustment value is between "+3" and "+5". After adjustment, check the adjustment result.



ZKX040J

6

7. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Adjustment], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Adj.Paper Feed:
Adjustment
```

8. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to enter the adjustment value (-14 to +14) from step 5, and then press the [#Enter] key.

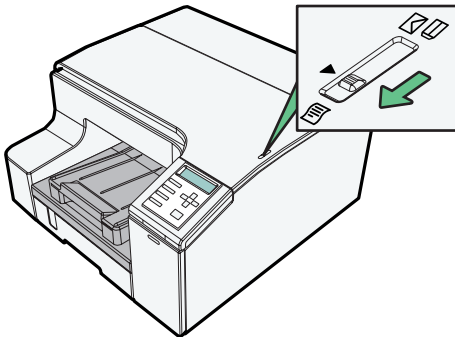
```
A:
(-14, +14)    0
```

9. Press the [Online] key.  
The initial screen appears.

## Registration

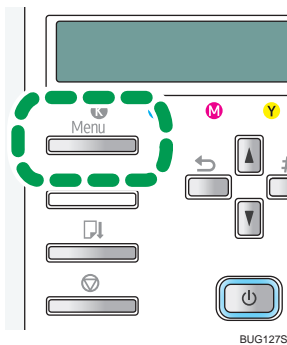
Follow the procedure below to adjust where to start printing on paper loaded in each paper tray after checking the test pattern printed.

1. Slide the envelope selector to  the forward position.



BUG137S

2. Press the [Menu] key.



BUG127S

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
Maintenance
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Registration], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Maintenance:
Registration
```

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Pr.Test Pattern], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Registration:
Pr.Test Pattern
```

6. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper tray, and then press the [#Enter] key.

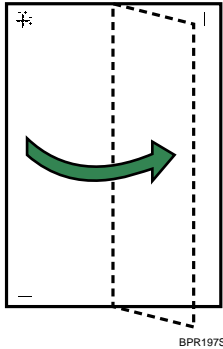
```
Pr.Test Pattern:
Tray 1
```

7. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper type, and then press the [#Enter] key.

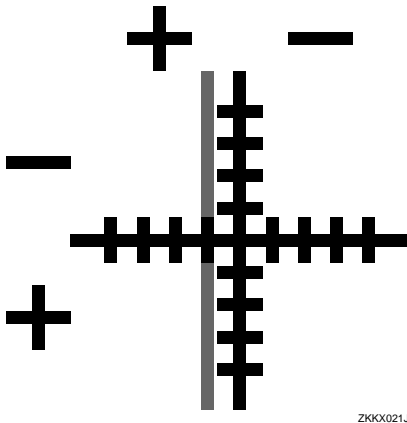
```
Pr.Test Pattern:
*Plain Paper
```

A test pattern to adjust the print start position is printed.

8. Check the optimal adjustment values on the printed test pattern.
9. Fold the test pattern sheet in half lengthwise.



10. The optimal adjustment value is the difference between the single vertical line and the cross's vertical line that you can see when the folded paper is held up to light. When the difference is one calibration mark in the "+" direction, the optimal adjustment value for the [Read Direction] is "+1.0".



11. Fold the test pattern sheet in half widthwise, and then check the adjustment value for the [Feed Direction]

Adjustment values are in 0.1 increments.

12. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Adjustment], and then press the [#Enter] key.

Registration:  
Adjustment

13. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper tray, and then press the [#Enter] key.

Adjustment:  
Tray 1

14. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper type, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Adjustment:
*Plain Paper
```

15. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to enter the adjustment values (-4.0 to +4.0) in the [Read Direction] from step 7, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Read Direction:
(-4, +4) 0.0
```

16. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to enter the adjustment values (-4.0 to +4.0) in the [Feed Direction] from step 7, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Feed Direction:
(-4, +4) 0.0
```

17. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

**Note**

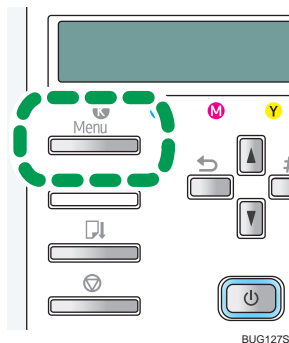
- For Tray 2, Tray 3, and the bypass tray, you can adjust [Read Direction] only.
- If you select [Glossy Paper] as the paper type for Tray 1, you can adjust [Feed Direction] only.

## Setting the Date and Time

Use the following procedure to specify the date, time, and time zone.

### Date Setting

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

Menu:  
Maintenance

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Date/Time], and then press the [#Enter] key.

Maintenance:  
Date/Time

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Date Setting], and then press the [#Enter] key.

Date/Time:  
Date Setting

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to set the date, and then press the [#Enter] key.

-22, -27

Date Setting:  
30/ 8/2008

-17

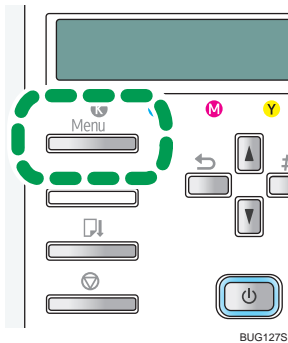
Date Setting:  
8/30/2008

6. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

## Time Setting

1. Press the [Menu] key.





2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
Maintenance
```

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Date/Time], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Maintenance:
Date/Time
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Time Setting], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Date/Time:
Time Setting
```

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to set the time, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
-22, -27
```

```
Time Setting:
10:31:25
```

```
-17
```

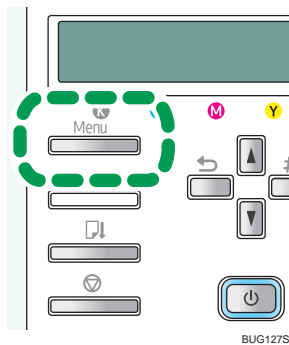
```
Time Setting:
10:31:25 AM
```

6. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

## Time Zone Setting

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:  
Maintenance
```

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Date/Time], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Maintenance:  
Date/Time
```

4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Time Zone], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Date/Time:  
Time Zone
```

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to set the time zone, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Time Zone:  
GMT+09:00
```

6. Press the [Online] key.

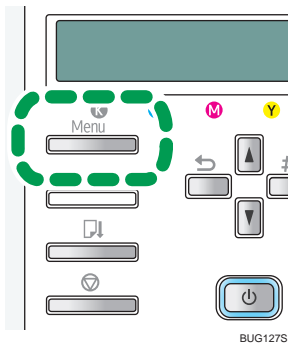
The initial screen appears.

6

## De-condensation

If the "ERR (993) Power Off On / Call Service if error reoccurs" message appears, there might be condensation inside the printer. You can dry the printer's interior by performing the de-condensation procedure.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Maintenance], and then press the [#Enter] key.

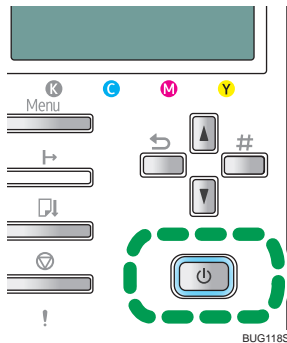
```
Menu:  
Maintenance
```

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [De-condensation], and then press the [#Enter] key.

Maintenance:  
De-condensation

Three sheets are fed through the printer without anything being printed on them.

4. Switch the printer off and then back on again.



If the error message does not reappear, the printer's interior has fully dried.

If the error persists, switch the printer off, leave it for an hour, and switch it back on. If this does not solve the problem, contact your sales or service representative.

#### ↓ Note

- If the paper is smeared with ink after being ejected, contact your sales or service representative.

#### 📖 Reference

- p.316 "Where to Inquire"

# Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu)

You can set basic functions required to use the printer. The printer can be used on factory default, but the configuration can be changed depending on the condition of the user. The changed condition holds even if the printer is turned off.

## **Prt. Err Report**

Select this to have an error report printed when a printer or memory error occurs.

- Off
- On

Default: Off

## **Auto Continue**

You can specify how the printer handles a print job if it does not have a tray containing paper of the size and type specified in the printer driver.

- Off

The printer does not print until a tray containing paper of the size and type required for the print job is inserted.

- Immediate

The printer prints even if the paper size or paper type is different from that specified.

Default: Immediate

## **Sub Paper Size**

You can specify whether to print on A4 paper if the printer is not equipped with a paper tray that can feed Letter (8 1/2×11) paper specified on the printer driver, and vice versa.

- Auto
- Off

Default: Off

## **Energy Saver**

Use Energy Saver mode to reduce the printer's power consumption.

You can specify how long the printer remains idle before it switches to Energy Saver mode. When the printer is in Energy Saver mode, it requires time to start up when it receives a print job.

- 5 minutes
- 15 minutes
- 30 minutes
- 45 minutes

- 60 minutes

Default: 5 minutes

### Notify by Email

You can specify whether or not to send notification that a printer error has occurred to a particular e-mail address.

After changing this setting, turn the printer off and then back on.

- Off
- On

Default: Off

### Memory Usage

Insufficient memory can cause printing to fail or a file's image data to not be printed. If this happens, you can specify the priority assigned to the printer's memory space.

- Font Priority  
Select this if a file's image data is not printed.
- Frame Priority  
Select this if printing fails due to insufficient memory.

Default: Frame Priority

### Unit of Measure

You can switch the measurement between "mm" and "inch".

- mm
- inch

: Default: mm

: Default: inch

### Page Size

You can select the default paper size.

- A4 (210×297)
- B5 JIS (182×257)
- A5 (210×148)
- A6 (105×148)
- 8 1/2×14
- 8 1/2×11
- 8 1/2×5 1/2
- 7 1/4×10 1/2
- 8×13

- 8 1/2×13
- 8 1/4×13
- 16K (195×267)
- 4 1/8×9 1/2
- 3 7/8×7 1/2
- C5 Env (162×229)
- C6 Env (114×162)
- DL Env (110×220)
- Custom Size

Default: A4 (210×297)

### Paper Type

You can select the default paper type.

- Plain Paper
- Inkjet Plain Paper
- Glossy Paper
- Inkjet Postcard
- Postcard
- Envelope
- Thick Paper

Default: Plain Paper

### Preprinted Ppr

You can enable this to print on pre-printed or pre-punched paper.

- Off
- On

Default: Off

### Copies

Specify the number of pages to print.

This setting is disabled if the number of pages to print is specified by the printer driver.

- 1-999

### Duplex

Specify whether or not to print on both sides of a sheet.

- Off
- Short Edge Bind

- Long Edge Bind

Default: Off

### Blank Pg. Print

Specify whether or not to print blank pages.

- On
- Off

Default: On

### Tray Switching

You can set to switch the paper tray.

- Off
- On

Default: Off

### Uni-direct.Prt.

Specify whether to print unidirectionally or bidirectionally.

Unidirectional printing produces higher quality print, but bidirectional printing is faster.

- Env.Selector:On

Printing is done unidirectionally or bidirectionally according to the envelope selector position.

If the envelope selector is set to the rear position, printing is done unidirectionally.

If the envelope selector is set to the forward position, printing is done unidirectionally or bidirectionally according to the paper type.

- Auto Detect

Printing is done unidirectionally or bidirectionally according to the paper type, regardless of the envelope selector position.

- Always

Printing is always done unidirectionally, regardless of the envelope selector position.

Default: Env.Selector:On

### Density

You can adjust the density of the printing color.

- Light
- Standard
- Dark

-22, -27: Default: Standard

-17: Default: Dark

### Color Mode

You can select the default color mode.

- Color
- Economy Color
- Black and White

Default: Color

### Recycl.Ppr.Mode

You can enable this to print on recycled paper.


- Off
- On

Default: Off

### Env.Slctr.Alert

You can specify whether or not to enable the Env.Slctr.Alert function.

- Display Alert

If you attempt bidirectional printing on sheets when the envelope selector is in the  (rear) position, printing does not begin and an error message notifying you that the envelope selector is incorrectly set will appear.

- No Alert & Prnt

Regardless of the envelope selector position, the printer ignores the error and continues printing.

Default: Display Alert

### Pg Recov. Error

You can specify whether or not Page Recovery Error is reported.

- Display
- Do not Display

Default: Display

### Ink C.U. Space

You can check the remaining capacity of the ink collector unit.

---

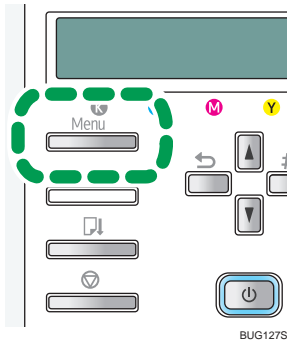
## Changing the System Menu

---

This section explains setting Energy Saver mode as an example of how to change a System menu setting.



1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to display [System], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Menu:
System
```

3. Press [▲] or [▼] key to display [Energy Saver], and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
System:
Energy Saver
```

4. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select the lead time needed to switch to the Energy Saver mode.

```
E.Saver Timer:
*5 minutes
```

5. Press the [#Enter] key.

The [System] screen appears.

6. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

# Specifying PCL Settings using the Control Panel (PCL Menu)

You can set conditions when using PCL for printing.

## Orientation

You can select the page orientation.

- Portrait
- Landscape

Default: Portrait

## Form Lines

You can specify the number of lines per page between 5 and 128.

Default:

- Metric version: 64
- Inch version: 60

## Font Source

You can set the location of the default font.

- Resident
- RAM

Default: Resident

When you select [RAM], you can select only fonts downloaded to the printer RAM.

## Font Number

You can specify the ID of the default font you want to use.

- 0 to 63 (Internal)
- 1 to n (Download)

The value of "n" is the number of fonts downloaded to the printer RAM.

## Point Size

You can specify the point size you want to use for the default font between 4 and 999.75 in 0.25 increments.

Default: 12.00 points

This setting is effective only for a variable-space font.

## Font Pitch

You can specify the number of characters per inch you want to use for the default font between 0.44 and 99.99 in 0.01 increments.

Default: 10.00 pitch

This setting is effective only for fixed-space fonts.

### Symbol Set

You can specify the character set for the default font. Available sets are as follows:

Roman-8, ISO L1, ISO L2, ISO L5, PC-8, PC-8 D/N, PC-850, PC-852, PC8-TK, Win L1, Win L2, Win L5, Desktop, PS Text, VN Intl, VN US, MS Publ, Math-8, PS Math, VN Math, Pifont, Legal, ISO 4, ISO 6, ISO 11, ISO 15, ISO 17, ISO 21, ISO 60, ISO 69, Win 3.0

Default: PC-8

### Courier Font

You can select a courier-type font.

- Regular
- Dark

Default: Regular

### Ext. A4 Width

You can extend the width of the printable area of A4 sheets reducing side margin width.

- On
- Off

Default: Off

### Append CR to LF

You can specify whether or not to append a CR code to each LF code to print text data clearly.

- On
- Off

Default: Off

### Resolution

You can specify the print resolution in dots per inch.

- 600 × 300 dpi
- 600 × 600 dpi
- 300 × 150 dpi

Default: 600 × 300 dpi

### Black Printing

You can select the black printing.

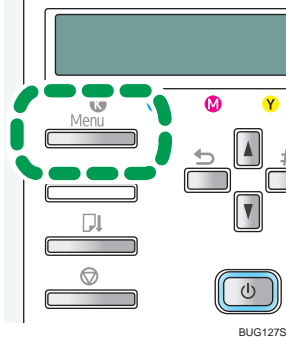
- Use 4 Colors
- Driver Setting

Default: Driver Setting

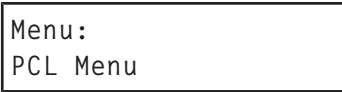
## Changing the PCL Menu

This section explains setting the symbol set mode as an example of how to change a PCL menu setting.

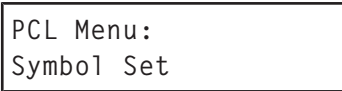
1. Press the [Menu] key.



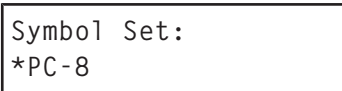
2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to display [PCL Menu], and then press the [#Enter] key.



3. Press [▲] or [▼] key to display [Symbol Set], and then press the [#Enter] key.



4. Press [▲] or [▼] key to display [PC-8], and then press the [#Enter] key.



The [PCL Menu] screen appears.

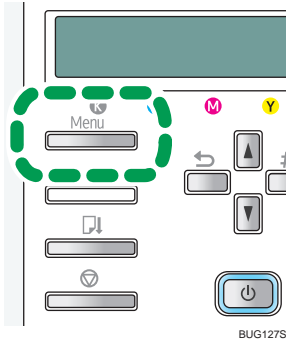
5. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

# Selecting the Control Panel Language

This section explains how to select the language used for the settings and messages displayed on the control panel.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to display [Language], and then press the [#Enter] key.

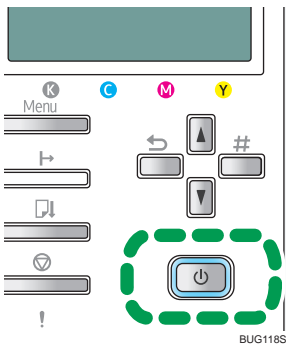


3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the language, and then press the [#Enter] key.



The message "Power Off On to Change Setting" appears.

4. Switch the printer off and back on.



Use the following procedure to change the language setting.

1. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

2. Press the [Menu] key.

**3. Press the [▲] key once, and then press the [#Enter] key.**

The Language setting appears.

**4. In the language list (shown below), find the language you require.**

On the printer's control panel, the names of the available languages appear in English.

Language List

Language Name Displayed on Control Panel (English)	Language
Japanese	Japanese ([-17] only)
English	English
German	German
French	French
Italian	Italian
Dutch	Dutch
Swedish	Swedish
Norwegian	Norwegian
Danish	Danish
Spanish	Spanish
Finnish	Finnish
Portuguese	Portuguese
Czech	Czech ([-22, -27] only)
Polish	Polish ([-22, -27] only)
Hungarian	Hungarian ([-22, -27] only)

**5. Select the language you require, and then press the [#Enter] key.****6. Press the [Online] key.****7. Switch the printer off and then back on.**

# Restricting Printer Functions

This section explains how to lock keys on the printer's control panel to prevent general users from changing settings and performing certain functions.

By locking certain control panel keys, you can prevent users other than the administrator from doing the following:

- Pressing the [Menu] key to display the menu
- Holding the [Form Feed] key down to clean the print head
- Pressing the [Job Reset] key to cancel print jobs
- Pressing the [Power] key to switch the printer off
- Pressing the [Online] key to switch between online and offline modes

## Locking the Keys

Use this procedure to lock the control panel keys.

1. **Simultaneously hold the [▼], [Escape], and [#Enter] keys down for 3 seconds, and then [#Enter] key.**

The following message appears:

```
Press # to
lock
```

2. **Press the [#Enter] key.**

The following message appears:

```
Panel Locked
```

The initial screen appears.

## Unlocking the Keys

Use this procedure to unlock the control panel keys.

1. **Press the key you want to unlock.**

The following message appears:

```
Panel Locked
Cannot use
```

2. Simultaneously hold the [▼], [Escape], and [#Enter] keys down for 3 seconds, and then [#Enter] key.

The following message appears:

Press # to  
unlock

3. Press the [#Enter] key.

The following message appears:

Panel Unlocked

The initial screen appears.



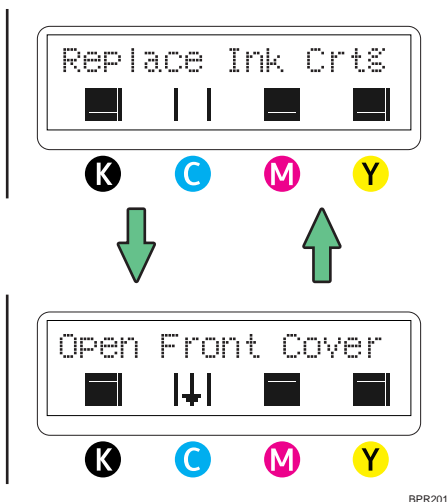
# Replacing a Print Cartridge

Follow the procedure below to replace a Print cartridge.

## Checking the Remaining Ink

Follow the procedure below to check when to replace Print cartridges using the Status monitor or the cartridge replacement indicators.

### Checking the cartridge replacement indicators of the printer control panel



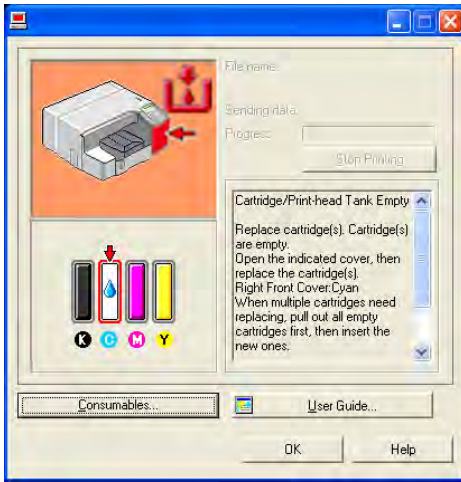
The illustration above indicates the control panel is indicating that the cyan print cartridge is empty.

### Checking Using the Status Monitor

1. Open the printer properties dialog box.
2. Click the [Maintenance] tab.
3. Click [Display Status Monitor].

The Status monitor dialog box appears.

#### 4. Check the cartridge status.



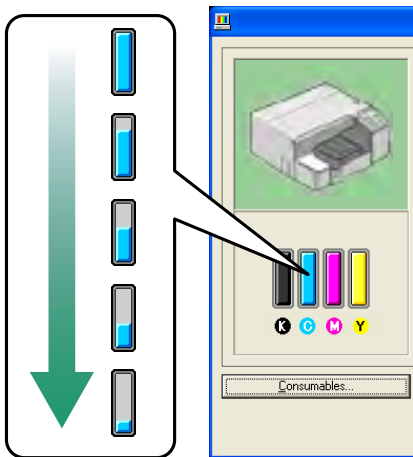
The illustration above indicates the cyan ink has completely run out.

A red background in the image indicates that printing is not possible. Check which color of cartridge needs to be replaced, and then replace it.

From left to right, the cartridge replacement indicators display the status of the black (K), cyan (C), magenta (M), and yellow (Y) Print cartridges.

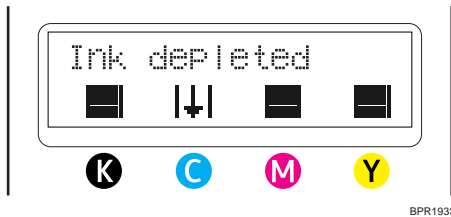
#### ↓ Note

- The cartridge status can be used for determination of cartridge change.



BUG1385

- A message indicating to replace a print cartridge can be also checked on the control panel.



### Reference

- Be sure to insert the print cartridges correctly. If you insert them incorrectly, Status Monitor might not be able to detect the amount of ink that is remaining in the cartridges. For details about handling the print cartridges, see p.195 "Handling Print Cartridges".

## Replacing a Print Cartridge

Follow the procedure below to replace an empty Print cartridge.

Clear any errors, such as when there is a paper jam or when no paper is loaded, before replacing a Print cartridge.

### CAUTION

- If ink comes into contact with your eyes, rinse immediately in running water. For other symptoms, consult a doctor.
- If ink is ingested, induce vomiting by drinking a strong saline solution. Consult a doctor immediately.
- If your skin comes into contact with ink, wash the affected area thoroughly with water or soap and water.
- Keep the ink or ink container out of reach of children.

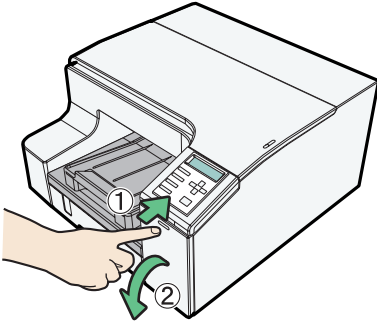
### Important

- **Take care to install the cartridges in the correct position.**

#### 1. Remove the Print cartridges' packaging.

If multiple cartridges are empty, replace all the empty cartridges. You can shorten the time for needed replacement.

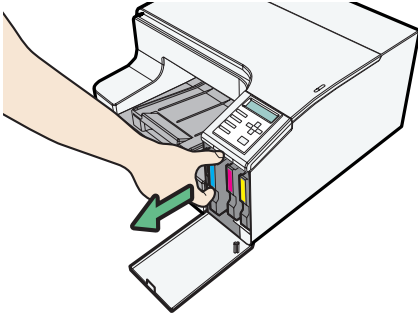
2. While pressing the recessed area (①) of the right front cover, open the cover (②).



BUG113S

3. Take out the empty cartridges.

When doing this, be sure to hold the printer firmly so that it does not move.

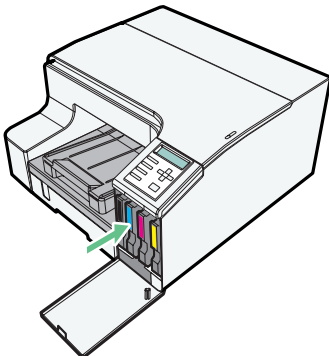


BUG140S

4. Check the cartridges' orientation, and then install them gently.

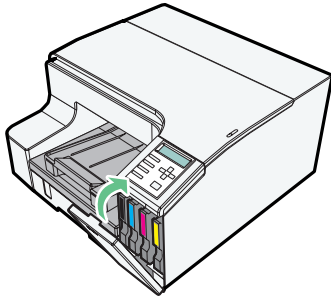
Install in the following order from the left: black, cyan, magenta, and yellow.

5. Push in the cartridge.



BUG141S

## 6. Close the right front cover.



BUG115S

### Reference

- p.317 "Recommended Consumables"

## Handling Print Cartridges

Important points about handling Print cartridges are explained.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

- If ink comes into contact with your eyes, rinse immediately in running water. For other symptoms, consult a doctor.
- If ink is ingested, induce vomiting by drinking a strong saline solution. Consult a doctor immediately.
- If your skin comes into contact with ink, wash the affected area thoroughly with water or soap and water.
- Keep the ink or ink container out of reach of children.

### About Print cartridges

- Print cartridges comply with the manufacturer's safety specifications. To ensure safety and reliability, use genuine Print cartridges.
- When using the printer for the first time, install the Print cartridges supplied with the printer.
- As soon as you install the supplied print cartridges, the printer begins feeding ink to the print heads. Be sure not to reinstall used print cartridges.

### Using Print cartridges

- Print cartridges should be used up before their expiry date, ideally within six months of being removed from their packaging.
- Do not open the package of a Print cartridge until the cartridge will be installed in the printer.
- Do not touch the print cartridges' ink inlets or chip contacts.
- Do not shake Print cartridges strongly. Ink may leak out.

- Do not take apart Print cartridges.
- Do not open the right front cover except when installing Print cartridges. Do not turn off the power or unplug the power cord during the process of installing the cartridges.
- Always confirm the color of a Print cartridge before installing it.
- Do not remove a Print cartridge once it has been installed unless necessary.
- Do not remove a Print cartridge while printing is being performed. Printing will stop.
- For print quality and consistency, this printer always uses all the available ink colors (black, cyan, yellow, and magenta) to produce print images. Even if your print image is black and white or [Black and White] is selected in the printer properties dialog box, all ink colors will still be used.
- Printing stops if one of the print cartridges becomes empty. If a cartridge containing a color ink such as cyan, yellow, or magenta becomes empty, you cannot print, even in black/white. If a message prompting you to change the print cartridge appears, change the cartridge as soon as possible.

### **Storing Print cartridges**

- Store print cartridges at a temperature of between -30 and 43°C.

## **6**

### **Ink consumption**

- To protect the print head and ensure print quality, the printer performs periodic maintenance and print head cleaning when it is switched on and before printing. Both of these operations consume ink.
- The amount of ink consumed during cleaning depends on the cartridge size.

# Replacing an Ink Collector Unit

Follow the procedure below to replace an ink collector unit.

## **WARNING**

- Keep the polythene materials (bags, gloves, etc.) supplied with this machine away from babies and small children at all times. Suffocation can result if polythene materials are brought into contact with the mouth or nose.

## **CAUTION**

- Keep the ink collector unit out of reach of children.
- When replacing the ink collector unit, be careful not to spill ink on your clothes or nearby objects. Ink stains can be hard to remove.
- If ink comes into contact with your eyes, rinse immediately in running water. For other symptoms, consult a doctor.
- If ink is ingested, induce vomiting by drinking a strong saline solution. Consult a doctor immediately.
- If your skin comes into contact with ink, wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water.

## **Important**

- **Do not use an ink collector unit that has not been used for a long time.**
- **Do not touch the ink collector unit' chip contacts.**
- **Attach or detach the ink collector unit only when you replace it.**
- **Take care not to drop the ink collector unit.**
- **Take care not to drop the ink collector unit when putting it in the supplied plastic bag. The bag might tear, causing ink to spill.**
- **Make sure the ink collector unit is fully inserted. If it is not, ink will leak inside the printer.**

Replace the ink collector unit when the following message appears on the control panel:

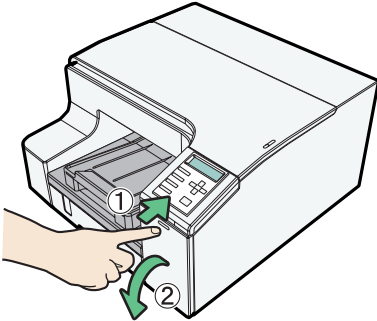
The following message appears when the ink collector unit is full.

Ink Collector  
Unit is Full

Replace Ink  
Collector Unit

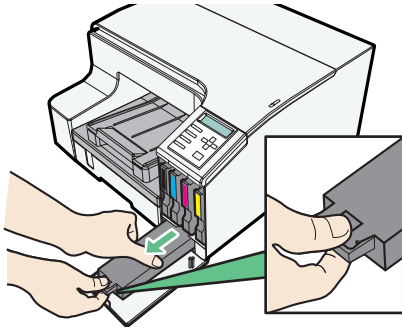
1. **Remove the ink collector unit' packaging.**

2. While pressing the recessed area (①) of the right front cover, open the cover (②).



BUG113S

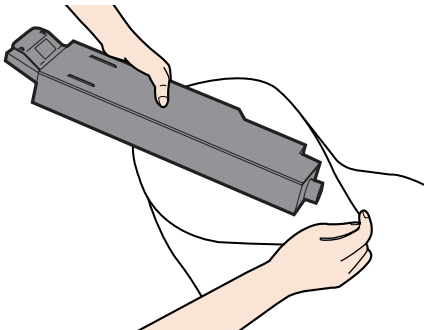
3. Wait at least five seconds, and then remove the full ink collector unit from the printer.



BUG185S

When pulling the unit out, keep the unit level and press on the area marked "Push".

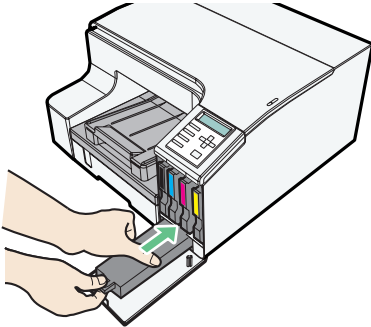
4. Put the Ink collector unit in the supplied plastic bag.



BPR186S

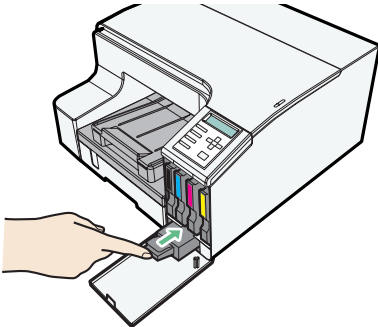


**5. Insert the new ink collector unit.**



BUG187S

**6. Slide the ink collector unit carefully into the printer, until you hear it click.**



BUG194S

**7. Close the right front cover.**

# Cleaning

Clean the outside of the printer regularly to maintain the condition of the printer.

## **WARNING**

- To avoid hazardous electric shock, do not remove any covers or screws other than those specified in this manual. When the machine needs to be checked, adjusted, or repaired, contact your service representative.
- Do not take apart or attempt any modifications to this machine. There is a risk of fire, electric shock, explosion or loss of sight.

To clean the exterior of the printer, wipe it with a soft, dry or damp cloth. If the dirt does not come off, wipe the printer first with a cloth moistened with a neutral detergent, then with a damp cloth, and finally with a dry cloth.

## **Important**

- Do not use volatile chemicals like benzene or thinner, or insecticides on the printer. Using these chemicals could deform, crack, or change the color of the printer.
- When wiping the printer with a cloth moistened with detergent, be sure to wipe only the exterior.

---

## Cleaning the power Cable Plug

---

## **CAUTION**

- Be sure to disconnect the plug from the wall outlet and clean the prongs and the area around the prongs at least once a year. Allowing dust to build up on the plug constitutes a fire hazard.

# Moving

The precautions when moving the printer a short distance or long distance are explained.

## Moving a Short Distance

Take the following precautions when moving the printer a short distance - for instance, when attaching an optional tray or relocating the printer inside the same room.

### ⚠ CAUTION

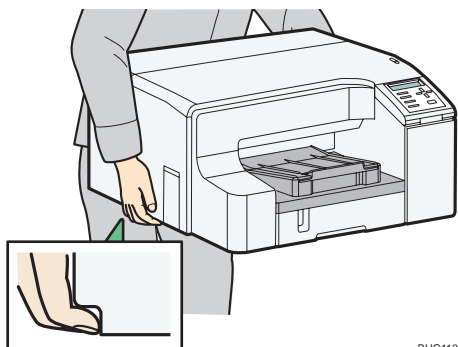
- The machine weighs around 15.5 kg (34.2 lb) (29.9 kg (65.9 lb) with options installed).
- Careless handling and over exertion when lifting can result in breakage and/or injury.

### ★ Important

- Be sure to keep the printer level. If it is unduly tilted, ink will leak from the ink collector.
1. Turn the power off, disconnect the USB cable, or ethernet cable, and then unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.

Before moving the printer, be sure to disconnect the power cord from the printer, too.

2. Lift the printer and move it to the place where you want to install it.



BUG112S

Grip the indented area at the base of the printer's sides, as shown. Lift and carry the printer slowly and carefully.

Make sure the power cord is not trapped under the printer.

## Moving a Long Distance

1. Turn the power off, disconnect the USB cable, or ethernet cable, and then unplug the power cord from the wall outlet. Do not remove the print cartridges. Remove the paper.

- 2. Pack the printer for transport when moving it a long distance such as when changing office or residence. Disconnect all cables, place the printer in the box it was in when purchased, and transport in a level manner.**

Contact sales or service representative for details.

 **Note**

- The inside of the printer may become dirty if the printer is not level when transported.
- When you move the printer, unplug the power cord from the printer, too.

# Disposing

Consult with an authorized dealer to dispose of the printer.

When disposing of the printer yourself, be sure to comply with local disposal regulations.

## When Not Using for a Long Period of Time

If the printer will not be used for a long time, turn its power off, disconnect the USB cable, and then unplug it from the wall outlet. It is recommended to print at least once a month, because the printer consumes a considerable amount of ink for periodic maintenance and print head cleaning when switched on after a long period of inactivity.

Be careful of the following:

- The nozzles of the print-heads may dry out and become clogged. To prevent this, periodically print something. Even if you do not print anything, turn the printer on for a few minutes once a month.
- If you do not use the printer for a long period of time, always check if the nozzles are clogged by printing a nozzle check test pattern. Clean the print-heads as necessary, and then begin printing.
- If you try to use the printer after it has been out of use for a long time, it may not print properly even if head cleaning is carried out several times. If this is the case, carry out head flushing. If the print heads are still clogged, leave the printer for about ten minutes, and then print the nozzle check pattern. If the problem persists, switch the printer off and leave it for at least eight hours. This should unclog the print heads.

6

### ↓ Note

- After head cleaning is performed multiple times, clogged ink will dissolve over time, and normal printing may become possible.
- If there is no improvement after performing the steps above, contact sales or service representative.

### 📖 Reference

- p.316 "Where to Inquire"
- p.160 "Nozzle Check"
- p.162 "Head-cleaning"
- p.165 "Head-flushing"

# 7. Troubleshooting

## Software Cannot Be Installed

This section explains how to troubleshoot software installation problems under different environments.

### Confirming Installation

Check whether the software has been installed.

Checking icons	<p>When the printer driver is properly installed, the icon of the printer appears in the [Printers and faxes] folder.</p> <p>When installation of User Guide is complete, User Guide icon appears on your desktop.</p> <p>If the icons do not appear, the software is not properly installed. In this case, you must repeat the installation procedure. See p.57 "Quick Install for USB".</p>
Checking the software	<p>You can install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client by clicking "Quick Install for Network" or "DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client".</p> <p>If SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is installed, the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon appears in the [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client] folder. To open the [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client] folder, select [Programs] on the [Start] menu, then select [DeskTopBinder], and then select [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client].</p>
Checking ports	<p>In the printer properties dialog box, check that USB connection or network printer is selected as a port. To check the connection, perform a test print. If the test print is not printed, see p.209 "If Test Print Fails".</p>

### Checking Your Computer Environment

Check the system requirements for installing the software.

**Quick Install for USB**

The CD-ROM may not be inserted properly.	Check that the CD-ROM is inserted properly. Check also that it is not damaged and the CD-ROM drive is working properly.
The power cord or USB cable may not be properly connected.	Check that the power cord and USB cable are properly connected and not damaged.
The operating system is incompatible. There is insufficient hard disk space.	Check that the computer's operating system is fully compatible with this printer. See p.35 "Checking the Computer and Installation Area".
Other applications are not closed.	When installing software, quit all other applications. Installation may be disrupted if other applications are open. Also, quit any anti-virus applications that are running.
Windows made USB settings automatically.	Open Windows' Device Manager, and then, under [Universal Serial Bus controllers], remove any conflicting devices. Conflicting devices have a yellow [!] or [?] icon by them. Take care not to accidentally remove required devices. For details, see p.211 "Deleting Devices".
The printer is turned on before installation.	Switch the printer off and then on, and then try Quick Install for USB again.
The USB connection does not work.	Switch the printer off, unplug the USB cable from the printer, launch "Quick Install for USB" again, and then switch the printer on when the dialog box confirming printer driver installation appears. If this does not solve the problem, press the [Menu] key on the control panel, change "USB Setting" in [Host Interface] from [Auto] to [Full Speed], uninstall the printer driver, delete the device, and then launch "Quick Install for USB" again.
An error occurs during software installation.	If an error occurs because the printer is detected as an unidentified device, follow the instructions under "The USB connection does not work". If this does not solve the problem, do the following: First reboot Windows. Then, on the [Start] menu, select [Settings], and then select [Control Panel]. Double-click the System icon, and then on the [Hardware] tab, click [Device Manager]. Under [Other



	Devices], select the printer, and then open its properties dialog box. On the [General] tab, click [Reinstall Driver] to reinstall the software.
--	--

### Quick Install for Network

The CD-ROM may not be inserted properly.	Check that the CD-ROM is inserted properly. Check also that it is not damaged and the CD-ROM drive is working properly.
The power cord or Ethernet cable may not be properly connected.	Check that the power cord and Ethernet cable are properly connected and not damaged.
The operating system is incompatible. There is insufficient hard disk space.	Check that the computer's operating system is fully compatible with this printer. See p.35 "Checking the Computer and Installation Area".
Other applications are not closed.	When installing software, quit all other applications. Installation may be disrupted if other applications are open. Also, quit any anti-virus applications that are running.
The printer's IP address has not been specified. The computer and printer are not on the same network segment.	If the printer cannot be found and only "Printer Port" appears in the printer selection dialog box, either the printer's IP address has not been specified or the computer and printer are not on the same network segment. Before installing the software, check the printer's IP address and the network topology. Otherwise, select "Printer Port" in the dialog box, and then install the printer driver. If you do this, SmartDeviceMonitor for Client will not be simultaneously installed, so install it afterwards, and then configure the port.
A newer version of SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is already installed.	If the version of SmartDeviceMonitor for Client already installed in the computer is newer than that on the CD-ROM, you cannot use "Quick Install" to install the printer driver. Install the printer driver, and then create the port.

## Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed

This section explains how to troubleshoot printer driver installation problems.

<p>The printer driver installer does not start. An error occurs during installation.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the screen does not appear even when you double-click the SETUP.EXE icon, or if an error occurs during installation, access the CD-ROM drive from [My Computer] or [Explorer]. Double-click the RDISETUP.EXE icon, and then install the printer driver by following the instructions that appear on the screen.</li> </ul>
<p>The printer driver installer does not start. An error occurs during installation.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An error occurs if the path to the location of the stored data is too long. To install a printer driver downloaded from a Website or copied from a CD-ROM, save the printer driver directly on the hard disk, and then install it.</li> </ul>
<p>The printer driver installer does not start. An error occurs during installation.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers and faxes]. In the [Printers and faxes] window, install the printer driver. For details, see Windows Help.</li> </ul>

7

**USB Connection is not Automatically Detected**

If the USB connection is not automatically detected, do the following:

1. Delete the printer driver.
2. Delete the device.
3. Run [Quick Install for USB] again.

If these steps do not solve the problem, contact your sales or service representative.

**Reference**

- For details about deleting the printer driver, see p.210 "Uninstalling the Printer Driver".
- For details about deleting the device, see p.211 "Deleting Devices".
- For details about [Quick Install for USB], see p.57 "Quick Install for USB".

## If Test Print Fails

This section explains how to troubleshoot Test Print problems.

The power cord or USB cable or Ethernet cable is not properly connected.	Check that the power cord and USB cable, Ethernet cable are properly connected.
The port connection is not properly set.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].</li> <li>2. Click the icon of the printer, and then click [Properties] on the [File] menu.</li> <li>3. Click the [Ports] tab, and then check the printer port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select USB or network printer in the list when the selected port connection is something other than USB or network printer.</li> <li>• To connect via USB when USB does not appear in the list, you must re-install the printer driver. See p.208 "USB Connection is not Automatically Detected".</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
Ink feed is incomplete.	<p>Ink begins automatically feeding into the print-heads when the power of the printer is first turned on or when a cartridge is replaced.</p> <p>Wait until ink feed is complete at which point the [Power] key stops blinking and remains lit.</p>
The printer is offline.	Check if the printer's on-line indicator is lit. If the printer is offline, press the [Online] key on the control panel to switch the printer to the on-line mode.
A printer error has occurred.	Use the control panel to check if a printer error has occurred. If it has, correct the error, and then perform the print again.

If you cannot solve the problem, contact sales or service representative.

### Reference

- If the Status monitor displays an error message, see p.254 "Status Monitor Errors".

# Uninstalling

If software was installed incorrectly or incompletely, uninstall and then reinstall it.

## ★ Important

- Before uninstalling software or deleting devices, turn off any other printers connected to your computer via USB, or disconnect the USB cable to the printers.

## ↓ Note

- Screens vary according to the operating environment.
- To reinstall the software, restart Windows.

## 📖 Reference

- When reinstalling the software, see p.66 "Confirming the Connection Method".

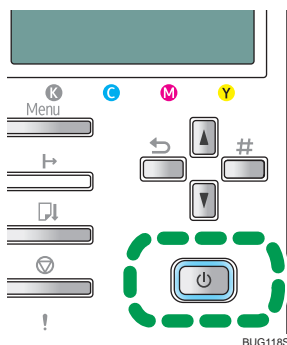
## Uninstalling the Printer Driver

To update the printer driver, uninstall the old printer driver before installing the new one.

## ★ Important

- The Status monitor installed with the current printer driver is uninstalled when the current printer driver is uninstalled.
- Registered custom settings are also deleted. To continue using registered custom settings, save them as custom settings files before uninstalling.

1. Press the printer's [Power] key to turn the printer off.



2. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
3. Click the icon of the printer, and then click [Delete] on the [File] menu.  
A confirmation message appears.
4. Click [Yes].  
The printer driver is uninstalled.

5. Double-click [My computer].
6. On the [Tools] menu, click [Folder Options...].
7. Click the [View] tab.
8. In the [Advanced Settings:] box, click [Show hidden files and folders], and then deselect the [Hide extension for known file types] check box.
9. Click [OK].
10. On the [Start] menu, click [Search].
11. Click the [All files and folders], and then enter a file name in the [All or part of the file name:] field.  
Enter "RCDAD12K.inf" as the INF name.
12. In the [Look in:] box, select the hard disk on which Windows is installed, and then click [Search].
13. Right-click the file displayed as the search result, and then click [Delete].  
The INF file is uninstalled.
14. After uninstalling the printer driver, restart Windows.

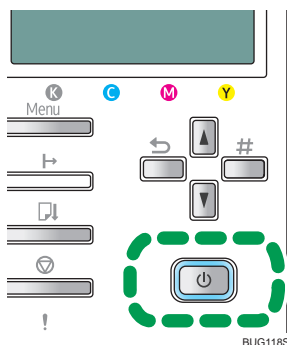
### **E** Reference

- For details about storing registered custom settings, see the printer driver Help.
- For details about updating the printer driver, contact your sales or service representative.

## Deleting Devices

If Windows automatically establishes a USB connection because of an unauthorized device, you can delete the device and any others like it. Be sure not to delete necessary devices. If USB connection is established normally, you do not need to perform this procedure.

1. Press the printer's [Power] key to turn the printer on.



2. On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
3. Click [Performance and Maintenance].

4. Click [System].
5. Click the [Hardware] tab.
6. Click [Device Manager].
7. Right-click [USB Printing Support] or [Product Name], and then click [Uninstall].  
A confirmation message appears.
8. Click [OK].
9. Click [Close].

---

## Printing Will Not Start

If printing will not start, check whether the power of the printer is on or whether the power can be turned on or not.

If an error occurs when you try printing, change the computer or printer driver settings.

---

### Power Cannot Be Turned On

---

If the [Power] key does not light or does not blink when it is pressed, check if there is something wrong with the power cord or wall outlet.

Check the following:

- Make sure that the power plug is firmly inserted into the wall outlet.
- Check if there is something wrong with the wall outlet. Do this by connecting another electronic product whose operation you are familiar with.

If the above steps do not solve the problem, turn the power off, pull out the power cable, and contact your sales or service representative. See p.316 "Where to Inquire".

---

### Paper Will Not Feed Even When the Power Is On

---

If printing will not start even when the power is on, check if an error has occurred using the indicators or Status monitor.

#### **An indicator is lit or blinking**

**Only the [Power] key is blinking.**

The printer may be receiving data or replenishing its ink. Wait momentarily for the blinking [Power] key to stop and stay lit.

#### **An error message is displayed on the Status monitor.**

Click [User Guide...] to display the page corresponding to the error where you can check how to solve the problem in more detail. See p.254 "Status Monitor Errors".

---

### An Error Occurs

---

If an error occurs when you try printing, change the computer or printer properties settings.

Do the following:

- Check the printer icon name does not exceed 32 alphanumeric characters.  
(If it does, shorten it.)

- Check whether other applications are operating.  
Close all other applications because these could be interfering with the installation. Be sure to close all resident programs also.
- Check the printer properties settings.  
In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Misc.] tab, select the [Change data processing] check box.
- Check whether the latest printer driver is being used.  
If the printer driver being used is not the latest one, update it with the latest version. See p.286 "Checking the Current Printer Driver Version".



# Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally

If the printer is operating but paper will not feed or paper jams multiple times, check the condition of the printer and paper.

## **Paper does not feed smoothly.**

Paper guides are not adjusted properly.

- The paper guides of the paper tray do not match the paper loaded. Adjust the paper guides and load the paper again. See p.44 "Loading Paper".

Paper is not loaded properly.

- The paper is not loaded properly. Load the paper correctly. See Loading Paper.

Paper is curled.

- Remove the loaded paper and check if it is curled. If it is, straighten the curl within 2 mm (0.08 inches).

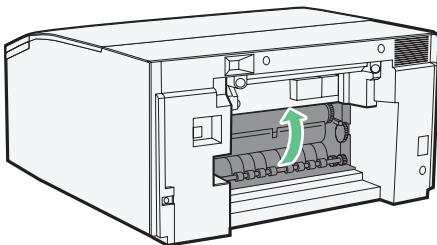
Paper that is not compatible is loaded.

- Remove the loaded paper and replace it with compatible paper. See p.91 "Non-compatible Paper".

## **Paper jams multiple times.**

The guide board is not closed.

- Make sure the guide board is closed. Press the board on both sides until it clicks into place. See p.20 "Guide to Components".



BUG142S

Push the PUSH area on both sides of the guide board until it firmly closes.

Printing densely colored images on both sides.

- When printing images containing areas of solid color that consume a lot of ink, we recommend single-sided printing.

**Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.**

Load the paper again. Remove the paper from the paper tray, fan it well, and tap it on a flat surface such as a desk to even the edges. Check the position of the paper guides of the paper tray, and then load the paper again. See p.87 "Paper Handling Precautions", p.44 "Loading Paper".

**Though a paper jam is cleared, paper does not feed.**

When a paper jam occurs, clear the paper jam, and then press the [Form Feed] key. See p.217 "Using the [Form Feed] Key to Remove Jammed Paper".

**The bypass tray cannot be selected.**

The printer driver cannot detect the bypass tray.

If the bypass tray cannot be detected, open the printer properties dialog box. In [Bypass Tray Unit] on the [Accessories] tab in the printer properties dialog box, check whether the bypass tray is shown as being attached.

**Paper is jammed in the duplex unit.**

The duplex unit is properly locked into position. but not locked.

Attach the duplex unit properly. For details, see p.271 "Duplex Unit Not Detected".

**Note**

- If an error is displayed on the Status monitor, follow the instructions to solve the problem. See p.254 "Status Monitor Errors".

# Paper Jam

This explains how to remove a paper jam.

When a paper jam error appears in the Status monitor, remove the paper from the location indicated.

If you cannot locate paper jams or jammed paper cannot be removed easily, you can check the condition of paper from the top of the printer.

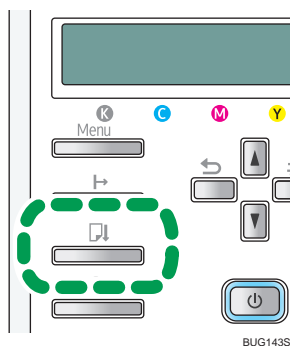
## Reference

- p.31 "Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray"

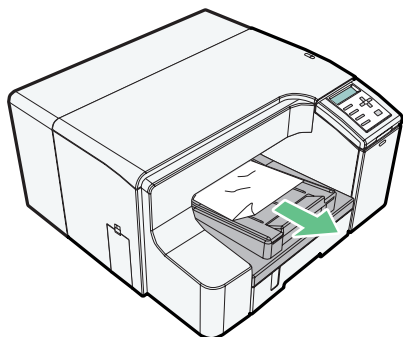
## Using the [Form Feed] Key to Remove Jammed Paper

This section explains how to use the [Form Feed] key to remove jammed paper.

### 1. Press the [Form Feed] key.



### 2. Remove jammed paper.



Printing starts.

## Note

- Sometimes, pressing the [Form Feed] key will not remove the jammed paper. If this is the case, pull Tray 1 out and remove the jammed paper manually.

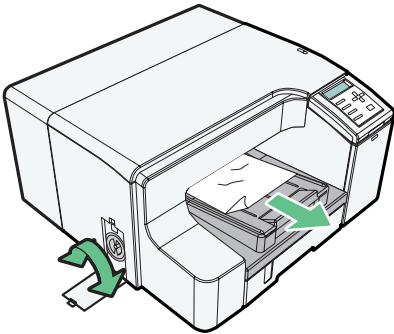
**Reference**

- p.215 "Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally"
- p.218 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1"
- p.223 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional)"
- p.227 "Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover"
- p.230 "Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board"
- p.234 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit"
- p.237 "If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper"

## Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1

Follow the procedure below to remove paper jammed in tray 1.

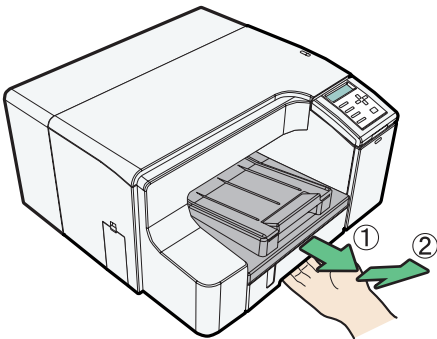
You can feed the jammed paper to output ramp by opening the left cover and turning the paper feed wheel.



BUG145S

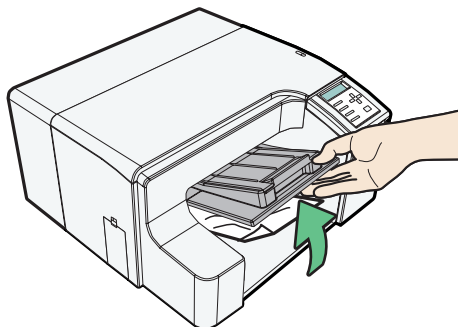
If turning the paper wheel does not remove the jammed paper, use the following procedure to remove it:

1. Hold the grip on tray 1, lift the tray slightly (①), and then pull it out (②).

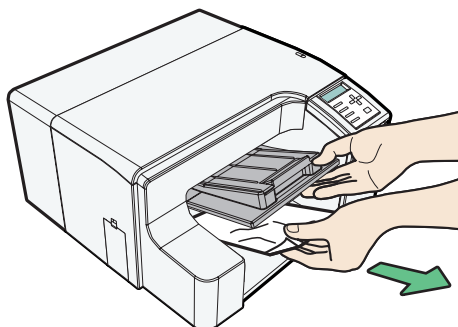


BUG183S

Pull tray 1 completely out. Take care not to drop it.

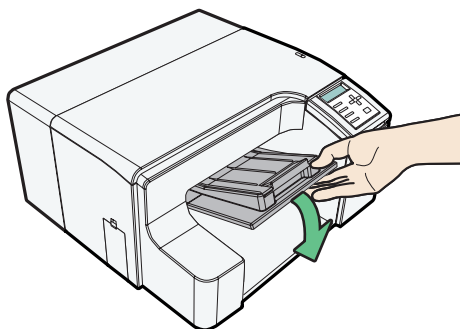
**2. Open the output ramp.**

BUG184S

**3. Remove jammed paper.**

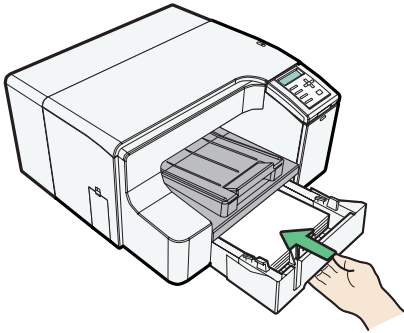
BUG146S

If you cannot remove the jammed paper or it is difficult to remove, the paper may be jammed inside the printer. Examine the paper carefully and remove.

**4. Close the output ramp.**

BUG202S

5. Push tray 1 gently in until it stops.



BUG125S

Printing starts.

Blank paper may be delivered after printing resumes.

**Reference**

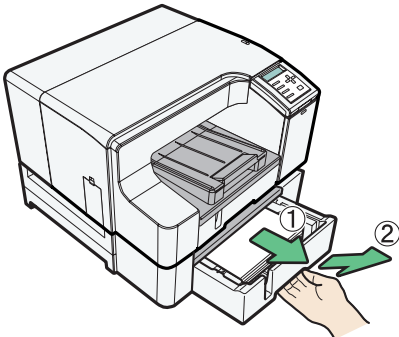
- p.215 "Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally"
- p.220 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 2/Tray 3 (optional)"
- p.222 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Rear Unit (optional)"
- p.223 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional)"
- p.227 "Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover"
- p.230 "Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board"
- p.234 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit"
- p.237 "If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper"

7

## Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 2/Tray 3 (optional)

Follow the procedure below to remove paper jammed in tray 2/tray 3.

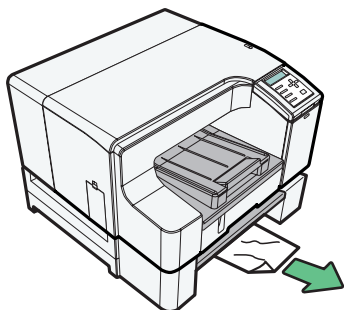
1. Hold the grip on tray 2/tray 3, lift the tray slightly (①), and then pull it out (②).



BUG244S

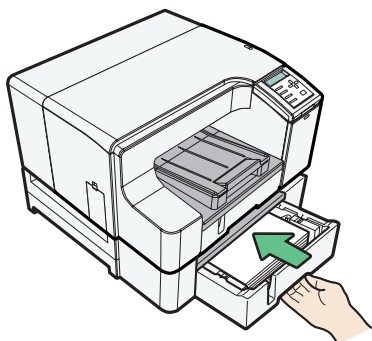
Pull tray 2/tray 3 completely out. Take care not to drop it.

## 2. Remove jammed paper.



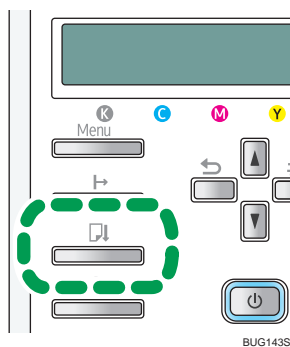
BUG226S

## 3. Push tray 2/tray 3 gently in until it stops.



BUG223S

## 4. Press the [Form Feed] key.



BUG143S

Printing starts.

Blank paper may be delivered after printing resumes.

### Reference

- p.215 "Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally"
- p.218 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1"

- p.222 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Rear Unit (optional)"
- p.223 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional)"
- p.227 "Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover"
- p.230 "Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board"
- p.234 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit"
- p.237 "If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper"

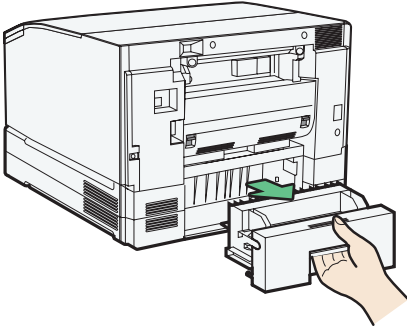
---

## Removing Paper Jammed in the Rear Unit (optional)

---

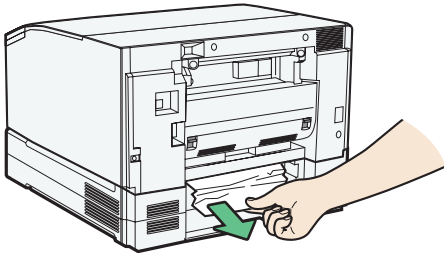
Follow the procedure below to remove paper jammed in the rear unit.

1. Holding the rear handle, remove each rear unit located behind Tray 2/Tray 3.



BUG240S

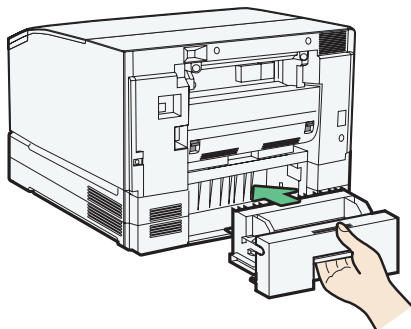
2. Remove jammed paper.



BUG241S



### 3. Attach the rear unit.



BUG242S

Printing starts.

Blank paper may be delivered after printing resumes.

#### Reference

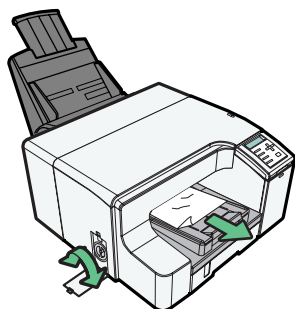
- p.218 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1"
- p.220 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 2/Tray 3 (optional)"
- p.223 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional)"
- p.227 "Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover"
- p.230 "Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board"
- p.234 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit"
- p.237 "If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper"

7

## Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional)

Follow the procedure below to remove paper jammed in the bypass tray.

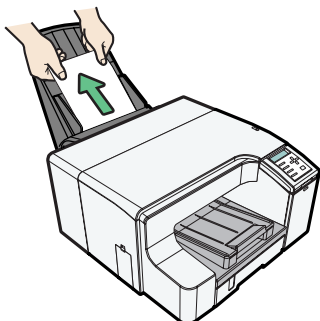
You can feed the jammed paper to output ramp by opening the left cover and turning the paper feed wheel.



BUG147S

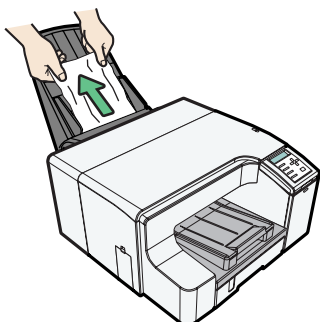
If turning the paper wheel does not remove the jammed paper, use the following procedure to remove it:

**1. Remove any paper in the bypass tray.**



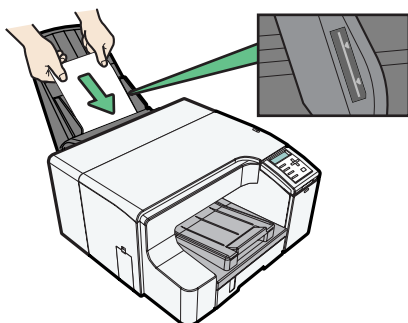
BUG148S

**2. Remove jammed paper.**



BUG149S

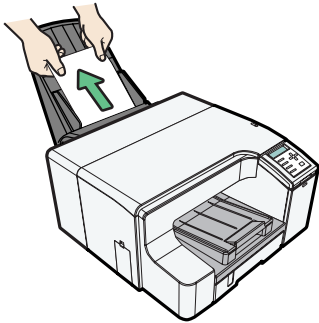
**3. Load paper in the bypass tray with the side to be printed on facing up.**



BUG126S

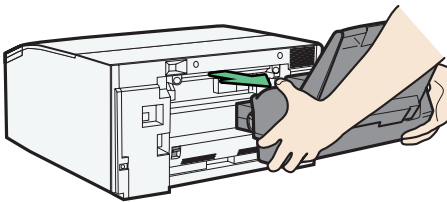
If it is difficult to remove jammed paper, follow the procedure below to remove it.

1. Remove any paper in the bypass tray.



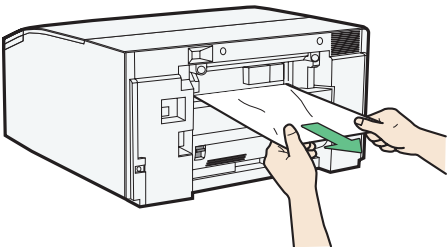
BUG148S

2. Push the bypass tray extension in.
3. Detach the bypass tray.



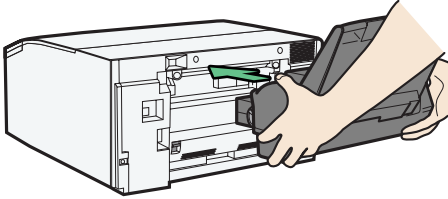
BUG108S

4. Remove the jammed paper from the rear of the printer.



BUG188S

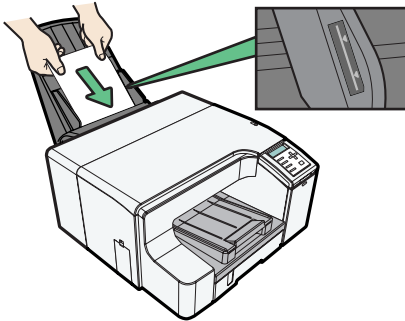
**5. Reattach the bypass tray.**



BUG109S

**6. Pull the bypass tray extension out.**

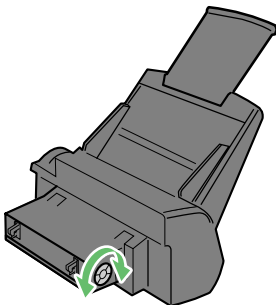
**7. Load paper in the bypass tray with the side to be printed on facing up.**



BUG126S

**Note**

- If you cannot remove the jammed paper using the above procedure, clear the jam from the multi bypass tray.



BPR163S

- Turn the knob on the bypass tray clockwise to eject the jammed paper.
- If this does not eject the paper, turn the knob one-turn counterclockwise, and then turn it clockwise. This will eject the paper.

## Reference

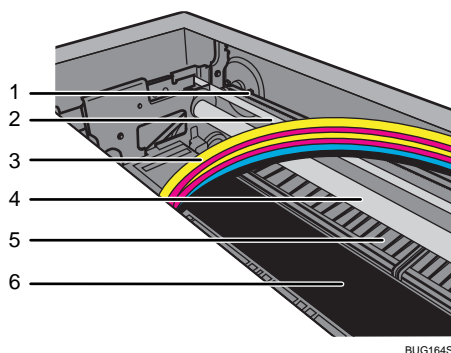
- p.215 "Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally"
- p.218 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1"
- p.220 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 2/Tray 3 (optional)"
- p.222 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Rear Unit (optional)"
- p.227 "Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover"
- p.230 "Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board"
- p.234 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit"
- p.237 "If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper"

## Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover

Follow the procedure below to remove paper jammed under the top cover.

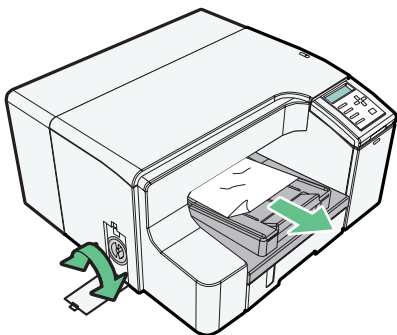
### ★ Important

- If the printer's ink tube is preventing access to the jammed paper, carefully pull the tube to the side. Do not pull the tube upward. Pulling the tube upward will damage the printer.
- Do not touch the feed belt, the transparent black band, print head rail rod, ink tubes, paper pressing board, or the toothed rubber belt. Also, take care not to snag any cables or ink tubes with your sleeves.



1. Toothed rubber belt
2. Transparent black band
3. Ink tubes
4. Print Head Rail Rod
5. Paper pressing board
6. Feed belt

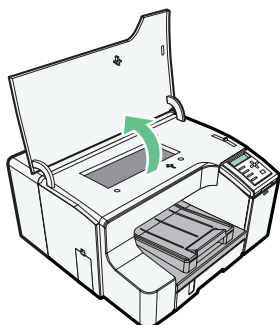
You can feed the jammed paper to output ramp by opening the left cover and turning the paper feed wheel.



BUG145S

If turning the paper wheel does not remove the jammed paper, use the following procedure to remove it:

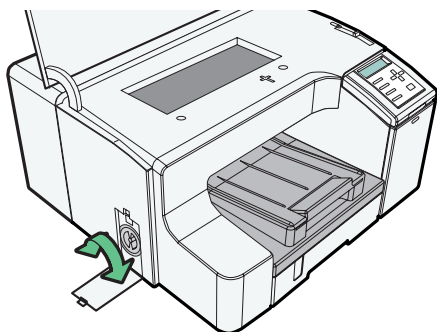
**1. Open the top cover.**



BUG178S

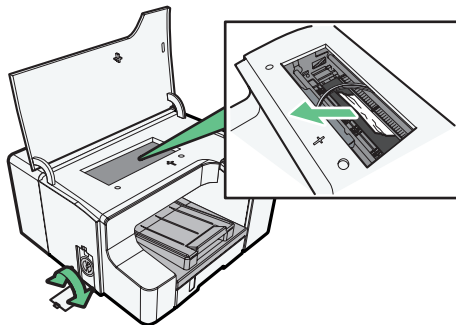
**2. Open the left cover, and then turn the paper feed wheel.**

Turn the wheel while looking for the jammed paper through the top cover opening.



BUG179S

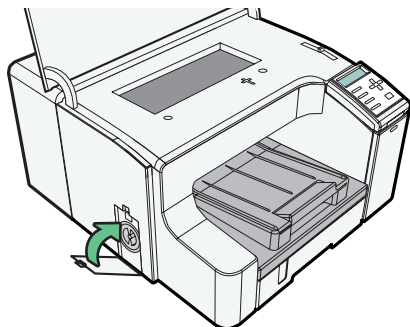
### 3. Remove the jammed paper through the top cover opening.



BUG180S

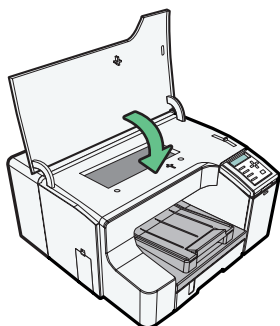
If the carriage has stopped halfway, move it to either end.

### 4. Close the left cover.



BUG181S

### 5. Close the top cover.



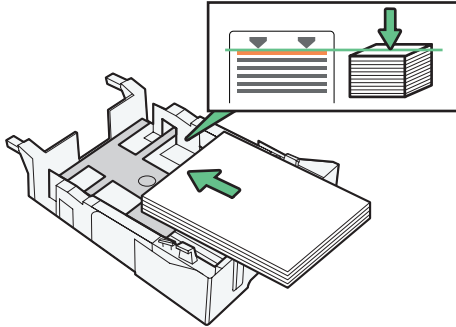
BUG182S

Printing starts.

After completing this procedure, print the nozzle check test pattern to make sure the print head's nozzles are not clogged.

**Note**

- Align the paper and reload it in the paper tray. Loading paper over the limit line in the tray may result in a paper jam.



BPR122S

**Reference**

- p.44 "Loading Paper"
- p.160 "Nozzle Check"
- p.218 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1"
- p.220 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 2/Tray 3 (optional)"
- p.222 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Rear Unit (optional)"
- p.223 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional)"
- p.230 "Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board"
- p.234 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit"
- p.237 "If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper"

7

## Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board

Follow the procedure below to remove paper jammed around the guide board.

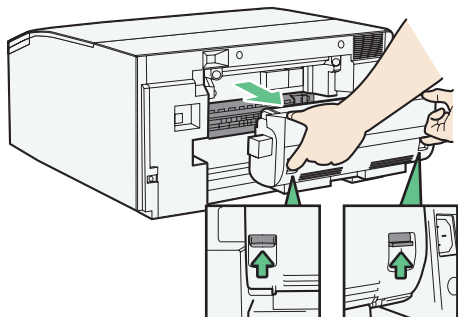
**Important**

- If the bypass tray is attached to the printer, switch the printer off and detach the duplex unit.

**1. Pressing the catches on both side of the duplex unit, remove the unit.**

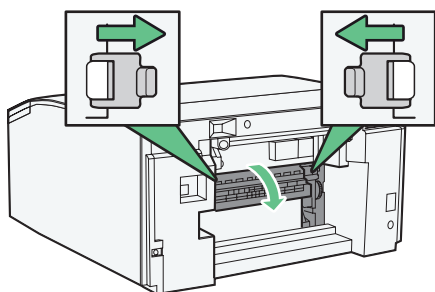
Detach the duplex unit completely so you can see the guide board in the recess.





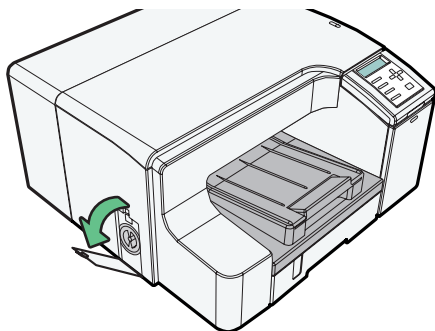
BUG150S

2. Unlock the guide board by moving the tabs on both sides toward the middle, and then open the guide board.



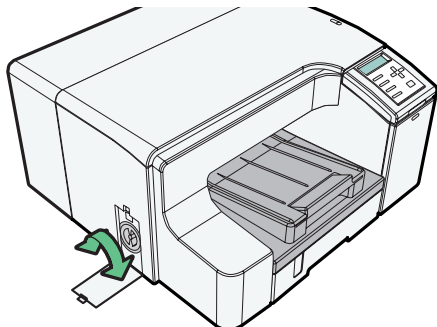
BUG151S

3. Open the left cover.



BUG152S

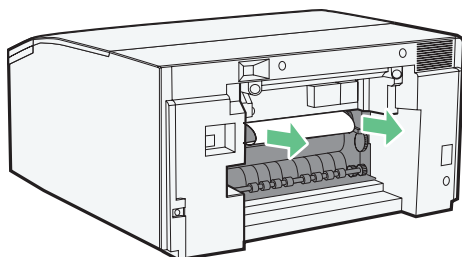
4. Turn the paper feed wheel to release paper from the feed belt.



BUG153S

Release paper from the feed belt to make it removable.

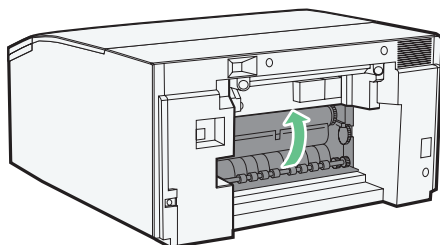
5. Insert your finger between the paper and the feed belt, and then remove the paper slowly.



BUG154S

Do not touch the feed belt.

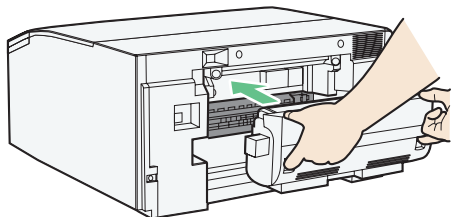
6. Close the guide board.



BUG142S

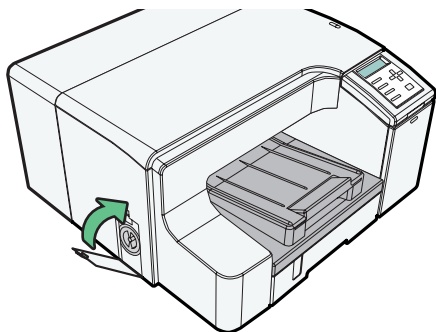
Push the PUSH area on both sides of the guide board until it firmly closes.

7. Without pressing the catches on its sides, push the duplex unit all the way in until it clicks into place.



BUG155S

8. Close the left cover.



BUG156S

Printing starts.

#### ↓ Note

- Depending on how the paper was jammed, printing may resume from the next page, not the one jammed.

#### 📖 Reference

- p.215 "Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally"
- p.31 "Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray"
- p.218 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1"
- p.220 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 2/Tray 3 (optional)"
- p.222 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Rear Unit (optional)"
- p.223 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional)"
- p.227 "Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover"
- p.234 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit"
- p.237 "If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper"

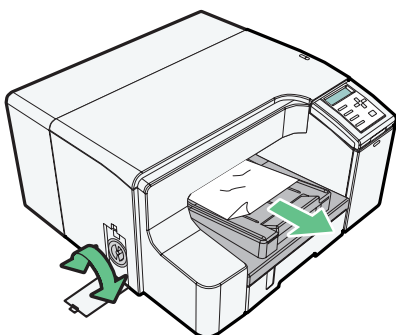
## Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit

Follow the procedure below to remove paper jammed in the duplex unit.

### ★ Important

- Make sure the duplex unit is attached properly.
- If the bypass tray is attached to the printer, switch the printer off and detach the bypass tray.

You can feed the jammed paper to output ramp by opening the left cover and turning the paper feed wheel.

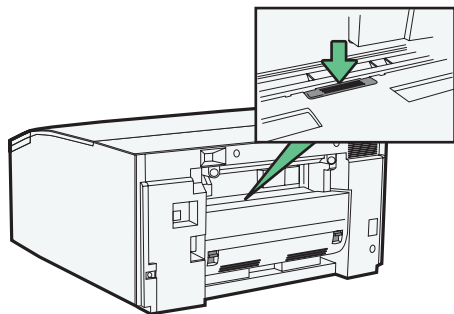


BUG145S

If turning the paper wheel does not remove the jammed paper, use the following procedure to remove it:

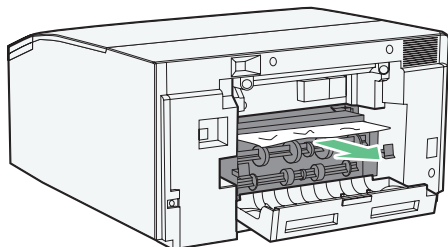
7

1. Press the duplex unit cover button at the center of the bypass tray, and then open the duplex unit cover.



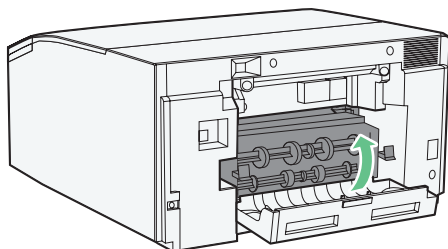
BUG157S

## 2. Remove jammed paper.



BUG158S

## 3. Close the duplex unit cover.

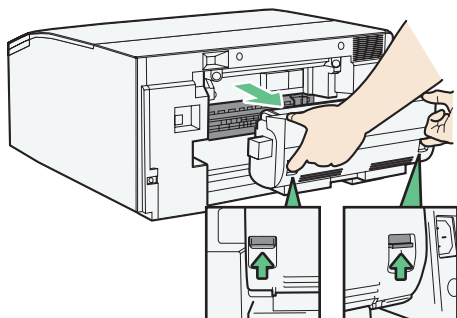


BUG159S

If the bypass tray has been detached, be sure to switch the power off before reattaching the tray.  
Printing starts.

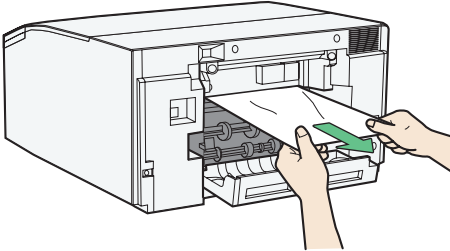
**If it is difficult to remove jammed paper, follow the procedure below to remove it.**

### 1. Pressing the catches on both side of the duplex unit, remove the unit.



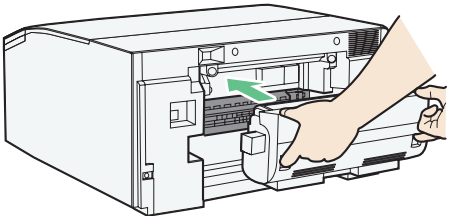
BUG150S

**2. Remove the jammed paper from the rear of the printer.**



BUG160S

**3. Without pressing the catches on its sides, push the duplex unit all the way in until it clicks into place.**



BUG155S

If the bypass tray has been detached, be sure to switch the power off before reattaching the tray.

**Note**

- Depending on how the paper was jammed, printing may resume from the next page, not the one jammed.

**Reference**

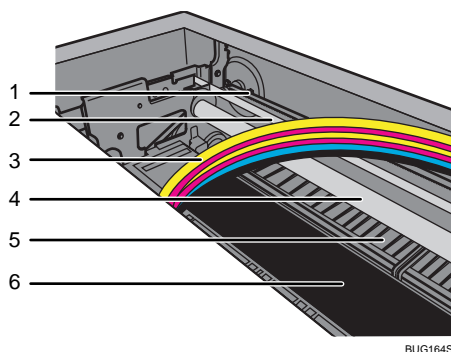
- p.31 "Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray"
- p.218 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1"
- p.220 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 2/Tray 3 (optional)"
- p.222 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Rear Unit (optional)"
- p.223 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional)"
- p.227 "Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover"
- p.230 "Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board"
- p.237 "If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper"

## If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper

This section explains how to remove badly jammed paper that you cannot remove by the usual methods.

### ★ Important

- If the bypass tray and duplex unit are attached to the printer, switch the printer off and detach the duplex unit.
- Do not touch the feed belt, the transparent black band, print head rail rod, ink tubes, paper pressing board, or the toothed rubber belt. Also, take care not to snag any cables or ink tubes with your sleeves.



#### 1. Toothed rubber belt

#### 2. Transparent black band

#### 3. Ink tubes

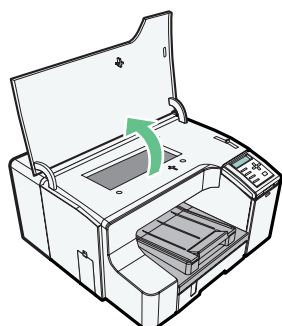
#### 4. Print Head Rail Rod

#### 5. Paper pressing board

#### 6. Feed belt

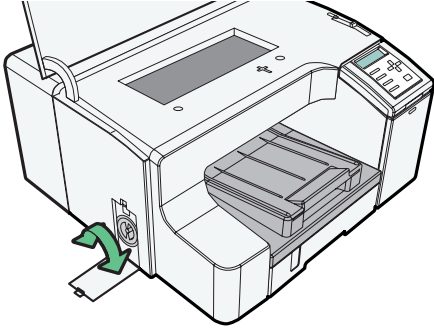
- If the printer's ink tube is preventing access to the jammed paper, carefully pull the tube to the side. Do not pull the tube upward. Pulling the tube upward will damage the printer.

#### 1. Open the top cover.



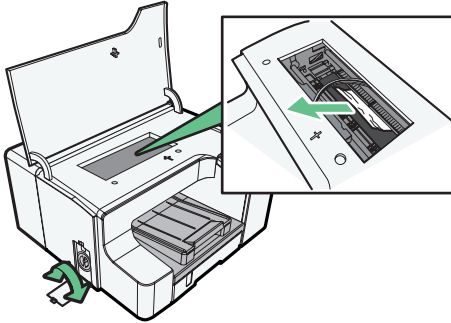
**2. Open the left cover, and then turn the paper feed wheel.**

Turn the wheel while looking for the jammed paper through the top cover opening.

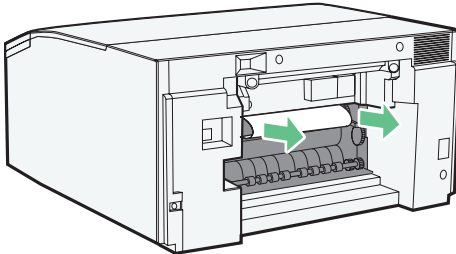


BUG179S

**3. Remove the jammed paper through the top cover opening or back of the printer.**



BUG180S

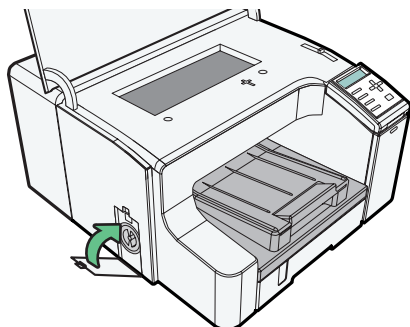


BUG154S

Before removing jammed paper from the back of the printer, remove the duplex unit.

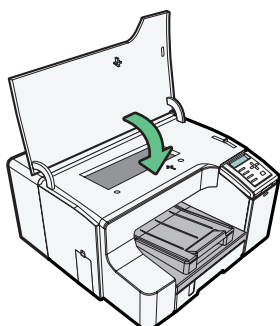


#### 4. Close the left cover.



BUG181S

#### 5. Close the top cover.

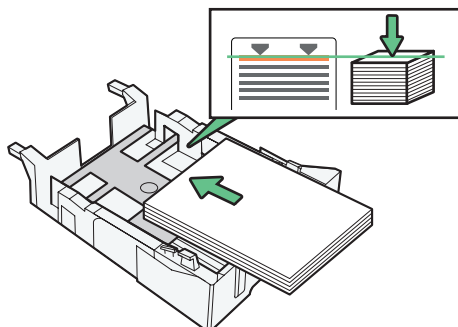


BUG182S

Printing starts.

#### ↓ Note

- Align the paper and reload it in the paper tray. Loading paper over the limit line in the tray may result in a paper jam.



BPR122S

#### 📖 Reference

- p.218 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1"
- p.220 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 2/Tray 3 (optional)"

- p.222 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Rear Unit (optional)"
- p.223 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional)"
- p.227 "Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover"
- p.230 "Removing Paper Jammed around the Guide Board"
- p.234 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit"
- p.44 "Loading Paper"

# Print Results Are Not Satisfactory

If print quality is poor, check the printer and printer driver settings for problems. If no problems are apparent, check the print cartridge or other consumables.

## Prints are Unsatisfactory

This section explains how to troubleshoot the printer when printing is uneven (due to the wrong amount of ink being used) or when prints are smudged, smeared, or blotchy.

### Have you printed the nozzle check test pattern?



Print the nozzle check test pattern to check whether the print head nozzles are all ejecting ink properly, and, if necessary, carry out head cleaning or head-flushing. The procedure is as follows:

1. Print the nozzle check test pattern.
2. If the pattern is patchy, clean the print head, print the pattern again, and then check the result.
3. Do not use the printer for 5 to 10 minutes then, print the nozzle check test pattern again, and then check the result.
4. Clean the print head and print the nozzle check test pattern, clean and print a second time, and then check the result.
5. If the pattern is still patchy, flush the print head, print the pattern again, and then check the result.
6. Do not use the printer for 5 to 10 minutes, print the nozzle check test pattern again, and then check the result.
7. If the pattern is still patchy, switch the printer off, do not use it for about 8 hours, switch it back on, print the nozzle check test pattern, and then check the result.

If the pattern is still patchy, contact your sales or service representative.

See p.160 "Nozzle Check", p.162 "Head-cleaning" and p.165 "Head-flushing".


### Does the envelope selector setting match?


Set the envelope selector according to the type of paper. For envelopes, set the lever to the rear position ; for everything else, set the lever to the forward position . See p.279 "Envelope Selector Position Mismatch".

### Has the printer not been used for a long time?


The ink may be dry or the nozzles of the print-heads may be clogged. Print the nozzle check test pattern and clean the print-heads as necessary. See p.160 "Nozzle Check", p.162 "Head-cleaning".

### Have you changed the envelope selector setting?

Depending on the thickness of the envelopes, changing the envelope selector setting might result in blurred or double lines being printed. If you switch the envelope selector to , be sure to select [Head Position],

as this will position the print heads correctly. If you switch the envelope selector to , be sure to select the [Uni-directional printing only] check box in the printer properties dialog box.

### **Have the print-heads been aligned?**

Blurred or double lines indicate the print heads are incorrectly positioned. Resolve this by switching the envelope selector to  and then selecting [Head Position]. If the problem persists, print the nozzle check test pattern and clean the print-heads as necessary. See p.166 "Head Position", p.160 "Nozzle Check" and p.162 "Head-cleaning".

### **Is there a problem with the printer's location?**

Make sure that the printer is level. Place the printer in a location where it will not be subject to shaking or excessive force.

### **Have you performed registration?**

Perform registration if the print start point indicates misalignment.

After attaching the paper feed unit, and the bypass tray, you must register where to start printing on paper loaded in each paper tray. See p.170 "Registration".

### **Have you changed the paper feed setting?**

If horizontal lines are printed unaligned, print images are patchy, or a black or white line is printed at regular intervals, print a test pattern, and then adjust the paper feed setting. p.168 "Adj.Paper Feed".

### **Does the paper type setting match?**

Make sure that the paper type setting of the printer driver matches the type of paper loaded.

### **Are you printing on the wrong side of the paper?**

Check which side should be printed on when using inkjet plain paper. If you print on the wrong side, the quality of the printing may be lower and the inside of the printer may get dirty. See p.87 "Paper Handling Precautions", p.84 "Compatible Paper Types"

### **Is the paper being used too thick or thin?**

Check if the paper is compatible. The print heads will rub against paper that is too thick or thin, and this will cause smearing. See p.84 "Loadable Paper Sizes and Quantities".

### **Have you touched the printed side of paper?**

Avoid touching the printed side of paper. Particularly, avoid touching glossy paper that have just been printed because these require longer than normal to dry. Remove them one at a time from the output ramp without touching the printed side, and then let them dry fully. See p.87 "Paper Handling Precautions".

### **Is the paper loaded in the correct orientation?**

Some paper cannot be loaded lengthwise depending on the size of the paper. Check the orientation in which the paper is loaded. See p.84 "Loadable Paper Sizes and Quantities".

---

### **Are you printing densely colored images on both sides of paper?**

When a large amount of ink is used to completely cover a side, one-sided printing is recommended.

---

## **Colors Do Not Match the Displayed Image**

---

If there are differences between colors of the print results and the displayed image, the following questions should be addressed.

### **Has the hue of colors been adjusted?**

Since printed colors and screen colors are produced by different methods, a color printed and a color displayed on a screen can have different hues even though they are the "same" color. Use the color matching function to make the hue of printed colors and displayed colors closer.

### **Has the nozzle check been performed?**

The print-heads may be clogged and the amount of ink may not be able to be regulated. Print the nozzle check test pattern and clean the print-heads as necessary. See p.160 "Nozzle Check", p.162 "Head-cleaning".

### **Was printing done in black and white?**

Check the color setting of the application and the color print setting of the printer driver.

### **Have the print quality settings been made?**

In the [Print Quality] area, select [Quality priority], or [Speed priority], and then print.

### **Does the paper type setting match?**

Make sure that the paper type setting of the printer driver matches the type of paper loaded.

### **Have you tried printing with inkjet plain paper?**

Try printing with inkjet plain paper. The print results should be clearer.

---

## **Positions Do Not Match the Displayed Image**

---

If the position of printed items differs from the position of displayed items, the following questions should be addressed.



### **Have the settings for page layout been made?**


Check whether page layout settings have been made with the application.

### **Does the paper size setting match?**


Make sure that the paper size selected in the [Printout paper size:] list of the printer properties dialog box matches the size of the paper loaded.

**Does the envelope selector setting match?**

Set the envelope selector according to the type of paper. For envelopes, set the lever to the rear position ; for everything else, set the lever to the forward position . See p.279 "Envelope Selector Position Mismatch".

Blurred or double lines indicate the print heads are incorrectly positioned. Resolve this by switching the envelope selector to  and then selecting [Head Position].

**Have the print-heads been aligned?**

When bidirectional printing is performed, switch the envelope selector to  and select [Head Position] to align the print heads. If the problem persists, print the nozzle check test pattern and clean the print-heads as necessary. See p.166 "Head Position", p.160 "Nozzle Check" and p.162 "Head-cleaning".

**Have you changed Printable area?**

The problem may be solved by changing [Printable area:] in the printer properties dialog box. On the [Printer Configuration] tab, set [Printable area:] to [Maximum].

**Have you changed Print Quality?**

In the [Print Quality] area, select the [Uni-directional printing only] check box. Note, however, that this will slow printing down.

**Is Binding Margins set correctly?**

On the [Edit] tab, in the [Header/Footer/Adjust image position/Binding margins] dialog box, specify [Adjust Image Position] correctly.

---

**Other Problems**

---

You may eliminate certain problems by changing the printer driver settings as described below:

**Cannot print certain data properly when using a certain application, or cannot print image data properly.**

- In the [Print Quality] area, select [Quality priority], and then print.
- In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Image Adjustments] tab, under [Dithering], deselect the [Use error diffusion] check box.
- Set [Spool format:] to [RAW] or [EMF] in the [Printer Configuration] tab.
- In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Image Adjustments] tab, under [Image processing priority], deselect the [Adjust photos and images] and [Smooth low resolution images] check boxes.
- In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Misc.] tab, select the [Print as bitmap] check box.
- On the [Printer Configuration] tab, set [Adjust Color Density] to [Darker] or [Lighter], and then print.
- In the [Print Quality-User settings] dialog box, on the [Color Settings] tab, specify [Gray reproduction (Text/Line Art):].

### **Some characters are garbled or missing.**

- In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Misc.] tab, select the [Change methods to extract TrueType fonts] check box.
- In the [Printer Configuration] tab, set [Spool format:] to [EMF]. In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Misc.] tab, select the [Print as bitmap] check box.

### **Some characters are printed faintly or not printed.**

- In the [Print Quality] area, select [Quality priority], and then print.
- In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Image Adjustments] tab, under [Dithering], deselect the [Use error diffusion] check box.
- On the [Printer Configuration] tab, set [Spool format:] to [RAW] or [EMF].
- On the [Printer Configuration] tab, select the [Increase bold with font size] check box.
- In the [Print Quality-User settings] dialog box, on the [Color Settings] tab, specify [Gray reproduction (Text/Line Art):].
- To print text in black, in the [Print Quality-User settings] dialog box, on the [Color Settings] tab, select the [K (Black) for text only] check box.

### **Printing is slow and takes time, which delays release of the application.**

- In the [Print Quality] area, select [Speed priority] or [High speed], and then print.
- In the [Printer Configuration] tab, set [Spool format:] to [EMF].
- In the [Change User Settings] dialog box, on the [Image Adjustments] tab, under [Image processing priority], deselect the [Adjust photos and images] and [Smooth low resolution images] check boxes.
- Close the resident application.

### **Printing stops halfway.**

View the status monitor to check whether an error has occurred. See p.254 "Status Monitor Errors".

To print on pre-printed or pre-punched paper, select the [Use preprinted/prepunched paper] check box in the [Printer Configuration] tab.

### **Cannot carry out Layout print for Excel sheets.**

In the printer properties dialog box, on the [Advanced Options] tab, select the [Increase auto-keep settings for applications] check box.

### **How can I make the Print mode change automatically according to the status of envelope selector?**

To automatically do single-sided printing when the envelope selector is set to the envelope position, on the [Printer Configuration] tab, select the [When the envelope selector is set to Envelope Mode, use uni-directional printing only] check box.

**How can I prevent ink transfer between printed sheets during duplex printing?**

On the [Printer Configuration] tab, in the [Sheet-dry Print Delay...] dialog box, change [Print delay time:].

**Ink smudges and characters are not properly formed when printing white text on a black background.**

In the [Print Quality] area, select [Quality priority], and then print.

---

## Checking the Consumables

---

If you cannot find anything wrong with the printer or printer driver, check the consumables.

**Is an old Print cartridge being used?**

Print cartridges should be used up before their expiry date, preferably within six months of being removed from their packaging.

**Is a genuine Print cartridge being used?**

Using a cartridge other than a genuine Print cartridge or using a cartridge refilled with ink will lower the print quality and could cause a breakdown. Use a genuine Print cartridge. See p.317 "Recommended Consumables".



## If a Message Appears during Installation

Message number 58 or 34 indicates the printer driver cannot be installed using Auto Run. Uninstall and then reinstall the printer driver.

## Error & Status Messages on the Control Panel

This section explains what the messages that appear on the control panel mean and what to do when a particular message appears.

Depending on the "Auto Continue" and "Env.Slctr.Alert" settings specified on the System menu, some of the following messages might not appear.

### Reference

- See p.178 "Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu)"

## Control Panel Error Messages

### Cannot recover error page(s) / FormFeed to print remaining

When the printer resumes printing after the paper jam has been cleared, some page(s) has/have been missed.

To print the remaining pages after the missed page(s), press the [Form Feed] key. To delete the print job, press the [Job Reset] key.

See p.282 "Cannot Recover Error Page".

### Cannot use High Temp. / Power Off On

The temperature is abnormally high.

Switch the printer off and then on. If the message reappears, contact your service representative.

See p.278 "Out of Printable Temperature Range".

### Cannot use Low Temp. / Power Off On

The temperature is abnormally low.

Switch the printer off and then on. If the message reappears, contact your service representative.

See p.278 "Out of Printable Temperature Range".

### Change Setting Tray #

The size of paper in the selected tray does not match the specified paper size.

Load the tray with paper of the specified size, and then change the paper size setting for the tray on the control panel. Alternatively, press the [Form Feed] key, select a tray containing paper of the specified size, and then print. To cancel the print job, press the [Job Reset] key.

See p.254 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 1)", p.256 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 2/Tray 3)", p.258 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Bypass Tray)".

### Change Settings Tray #

The type of paper in the selected tray does not match the specified paper type.

Load the tray with paper of the specified type, and then change the paper type setting for the tray on the control panel. Alternatively, press the [Form Feed] key, select a tray containing paper of the specified type, and then print. To cancel the print job, press the [Job Reset] key.

See p.254 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 1)", p.256 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 2/Tray 3)", p.258 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Bypass Tray)".

### **Close Duplex Unit Cover**

The duplex unit cover is open. Close the duplex unit cover.

See p.267 "Cover Open".

### **Close Top Cover or Duplex Unit / Cover correctly**

The top cover, left cover, or duplex unit cover is open. Close the open cover, or reinstall/reset the duplex unit correctly.

See p.267 "Cover Open".

### **ERR(XXX) Power Off On / Call Service if error reoccurs**

An error has occurred.


Switch the printer off and then on. If the message reappears, contact your service representative.

See p.316 "Where to Inquire".

### **Energy Saver**

The printer is in Energy Saver mode. The printer is ready for use.

### **Envelop. Selector position error / Reset E.Selector or FormFeed**

The position of the envelope selector and the specified paper type do not match. This message appears also if the envelope selector is set to the  (rear) position while maintenance is carried out. Be sure to set the envelope selector to the right position.

See p.279 "Envelope Selector Position Mismatch".

### **Guide Board is open / Close the Guide Board**

The guide board is open. Close the guide board.

### **Hardware Problem Ethernet Board**

An error in the Ethernet port (ethernet board) network function has occurred.

See p.279 "Network Interface Error".

### **Ink Collector is not set / Set the Ink Collector Unit**

The ink collector unit has not been installed correctly. Reset the ink collector unit correctly.

See p.275 "Ink Collector Unit Not Detected".

### **Ink Collector Unit is full / Replace Ink Collector Unit**

The ink collector unit is full. Replace the ink collector unit.

See p.197 "Replacing an Ink Collector Unit".

### **Ink depleted**

The ink has run out. Change the indicated print cartridge.

See p.191 "Replacing a Print Cartridge".

### **Left Cover is open / Close the Left Cover**

The left cover is open. Close the left cover.

See p.267 "Cover Open".

### **Load Paper:Tray# or Form Feed**

The selected tray has run out of paper.

Reload the tray. Alternatively, press the [Form Feed] key, select a different tray, and then print. To cancel the print job, press the [Job Reset] key.

See p.254 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 1)", p.256 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 2/Tray 3)", p.258 "No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Bypass Tray)".

### **Low Ink**

The ink runs out. Make sure you have new print cartridges on hand.

See p.316 "Where to Inquire".

### **Maintenance failed**

Head cleaning or head flushing has failed.

The error is cleared when the following occur:

- The printer receives another print job
- Press the [#Enter] key

See p.282 "Maintenance Failed".

### **Maintenance in process...**

The printer is cleaning or flushing its print head. Wait a moment.

### **Offline**

The printer is offline. To print, put the printer online.

### **Open Front Cover / Replace Ink Crtg**

The ink in the indicated print cartridge has run out. Change the indicated print cartridge.

See p.191 "Replacing a Print Cartridge".

### **Panel Locked Cannot use**

You have pressed a locked key. Unlock the key.

See p.189 "Restricting Printer Functions".

**Paper Misfeed / Press Form Feed**

The printer failed to feed paper from the specified paper tray. Press the [Form Feed] key to feed the paper.  
See p.217 "Using the [Form Feed] Key to Remove Jammed Paper".

**Paper Misfeed Bypass Tray / Check Paper Press Form Feed**

Paper has jammed in the bypass tray. Clear the jam.  
See p.223 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional)".

**Paper Misfeed Remove all Rear / Units then remove misfeed**

Paper has jammed in the rear unit. Clear the jam.  
See p.222 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Rear Unit (optional)".

**Paper Misfeed Remove Duplex or / all Rear Units, remove misfeed**

Paper has jammed in the duplex unit or rear unit. Clear the jam.  
See p.234 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit".

**Paper Misfeed Remove Duplex or / Tray 2 Rear Unit, remove misfeed**

Paper has jammed in the duplex unit or Tray 2 rear unit. Clear the jam.  
See p.234 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit".

**Paper Misfeed Remove Rear Units / or Tray 2,3 then remove misfeed**

Paper has jammed in the rear unit or Tray 2, 3. Clear the jam.  
See p.222 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Rear Unit (optional)".

**Paper Misfeed Tray 1 / Remove Misfeed**

Paper has jammed in Tray 1. Clear the jam.  
See p.218 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1".

**Paper Misfeed Tray 2 / Remove Misfeed**

Paper has jammed in Tray 2. Clear the jam.  
See p.220 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 2/Tray 3 (optional)".  
See p.222 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Rear Unit (optional)".

**Paper Misfeed Tray 3 / Remove Misfeed**

Paper has jammed in Tray 3. Clear the jam.  
See p.220 "Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 2/Tray 3 (optional)".  
See p.222 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Rear Unit (optional)".

**Prepare new Ink Collector Unit**

The ink collector unit is almost full. Make sure you have a new ink collector on hand.

If a print cartridge starts running out of ink when the ink collector unit is almost full, the alert indicator will flash and a message informing you of the cartridge's low ink level will appear on the control panel. To prevent job delay due to a full ink collector unit, always have a new ink collector unit ready.

See p.316 "Where to Inquire".

**Processing...**

The printer is printing.

**Ready**

The printer is able to print.

**Remove Misfeed Duplex Unit / Use Feed Wheel in Left Cover**

Paper has jammed in the duplex unit. Clear the jam.

See p.234 "Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit".

**Remove Misfeed Open Top Cover / Use Feed Wheel in Left Cover**

Paper has jammed under the top cover. Clear the jam.

See p.227 "Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover".

**Reset Bypass Tray correctly**

The bypass tray has not been installed correctly. Reset the bypass tray correctly. p.31 "Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray".

**Reset Cartridge**

No print cartridge has been installed. Install the print cartridge correctly.

See p.269 "Cover Open / Print Cartridge(s) Not Detected".

**Reset Duplex Unit correctly**

The duplex unit has not been installed correctly. Reset the duplex unit correctly.

See p.271 "Duplex Unit Not Detected".

**Reset Rear Unit correctly**

The rear unit has not been installed correctly. Reset the rear unit correctly.

See p.271 "Rear Unit of Optional Tray Not Detected".

**Resetting Job...**

The printer is reinitializing a print job.

Wait a moment.

**Right Front Cover is open / Close Right Front Cover**

The right front cover is open. Close the print cartridge cover.

See p.269 "Cover Open / Print Cartridge(s) Not Detected".

**Setting change...**

The printer is changing its settings. Wait a moment.

**Temp. alert Please wait...**

The printer is too hot or cold at start-up. Wait until "Ready" appears on the control panel.

**Waiting...**

Wait a moment.

**Note**

- If this does not eliminate the problem, contact your service representative.

## Status Monitor Errors

If an error occurs with the printer, Status Monitor displays an error message. Click [User Guide...] to display the page corresponding to the error where you can check how to solve the problem in more detail.

Depending on the "Auto Continue" and "Env.Slctr.Alert" settings specified on the System menu, some of the following messages might not appear.

### Reference

- See p.178 "Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu)"

---

### Status Monitor Does Not Open

---

If the Status monitor does not open for a shared printer, the following questions should be addressed.

#### Are the share settings correct?

Check the share settings of the printer. The printer driver must also be installed on the client computer. See p.70 "Setting Up a Server" and p.71 "Setting Up a Client Computer".

## 7

---

### No Response from Printer

---

Follow the procedure below to check the port settings and the connection between the printer and computer.

1. Check that the power of the printer is on.
2. Make sure that the computer and printer are properly connected using a USB cable.
3. Open the printer properties dialog box.
4. Click the [Ports] tab.
5. Check that USB is selected in the [Print to the following port:] list.

### Note

- If you want to connect the printer to the network, check the operating environment, and then change the port setting. For details about configuring the port, see p.77 "Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port", p.78 "Using the Standard TCP/IP Port", and p.80 "Using the LPR Port".

---

### No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 1)

---

Tray 1 is empty or the paper in it is not loaded properly. Do one of the following:

- Load the tray.
- Print by Form Feed (Change the tray).
- Cancel the print job.



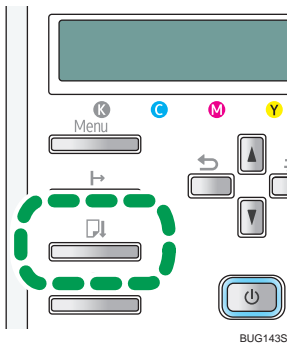
## Reference

- To load the tray, see p.44 "Loading Paper".

## Printing by Form Feed

Press the [Form Feed] key, select the tray, and then print by Form Feed.

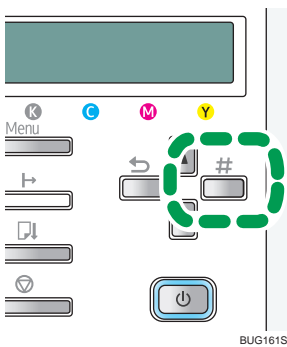
1. Press the [Form Feed] key.



2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper tray, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Print: Tray 1 ?:  
A4 (210 x 297)
```

```
Print: Tray 1 ?:  
Plain Paper
```

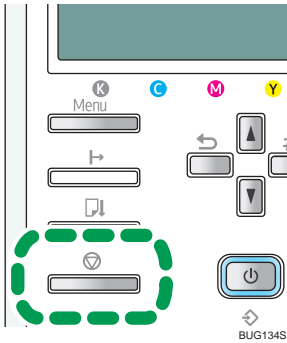


Printing starts.

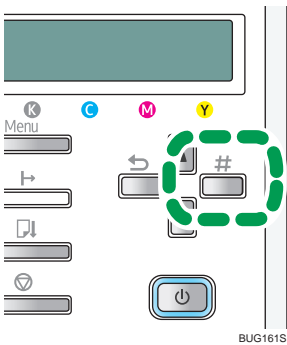
## Canceling the Print Job

Cancel the print job.

**1. Press the [Job Reset] key.**



**2. Press the [#Enter] key.**



**3. Press the [#Enter] key.**

7

---

## No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 2/Tray 3)

---

Tray 2/Tray 3 is empty or the paper in it is not loaded properly. Do one of the following:

- Load the tray.
- Print by Form Feed (Change the tray).
- Cancel the print job.

**Reference**

- To load the tray, see p.44 "Loading Paper".

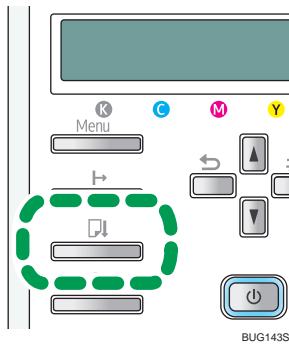
---

## Printing by Form Feed

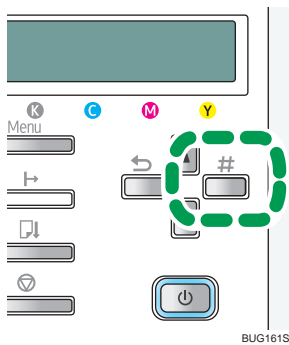
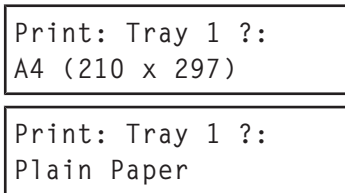
---

Press the [Form Feed] key, select the tray, and then print by Form Feed.

1. Press the [Form Feed] key.



2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper tray, and then press the [#Enter] key.

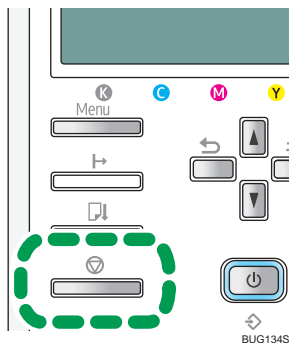


Printing starts.

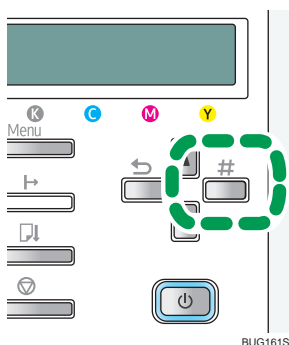
## Canceling the Print Job

Cancel the print job.

### 1. Press the [Job Reset] key.



### 2. Press the [#Enter] key.



### 3. Press the [#Enter] key.

## No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Bypass Tray)

There is no paper in the bypass tray or the paper is not loaded properly. Do one of the following:

- Loading paper (Press the [#Enter] key).
- Cancel the print job.

### Reference

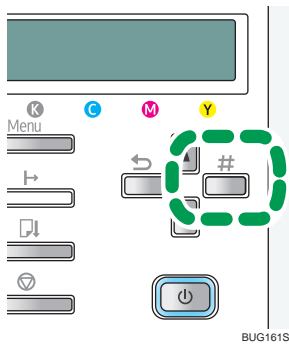
- See p.31 "Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray".

## Loading Paper

Load paper in the bypass tray, and then press the [#Enter] key to begin printing.

### 1. Load paper in the bypass tray.

2. Press the [#Enter] key.



Printing starts.

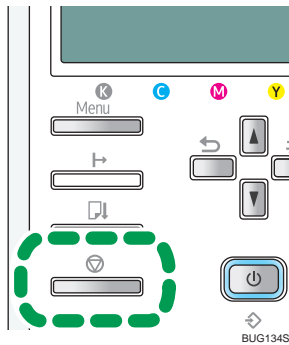
**Reference**

- To load paper, see p.44 "Loading Paper".

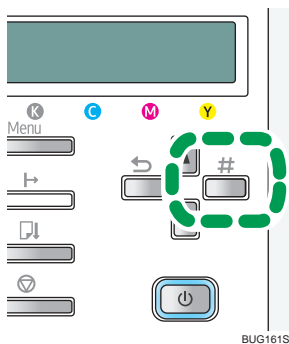
## Canceling the Print Job

Cancel the print job.

1. Press the [Job Reset] key.



2. Press the [#Enter] key.



3. Press the [#Enter] key.

---

## Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Tray 1)

---

The tray is not loaded with paper of the correct size or type. Do one of the following:

- Change the paper settings.
- Print by Form Feed (Change the tray).
- Cancel the print job.

### Reference

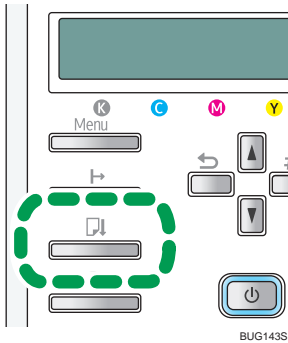
- To change the paper settings, see p.94 "Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)".

## Printing by Form Feed

---

Press the [Form Feed] key, select the tray, and then print by Form Feed.

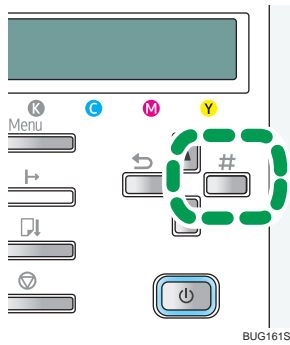
1. Press the [Form Feed] key.



2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper tray, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Print: Tray 1 ?:  
A4 (210 x 297)
```

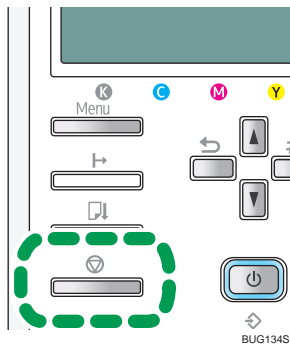
```
Print: Tray 1 ?:  
Plain Paper
```



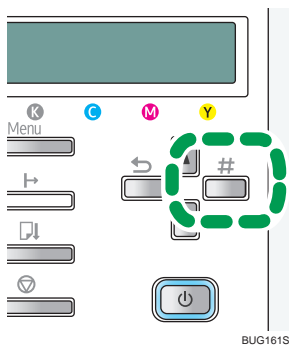
## Canceling the Print Job

Cancel the print job.

1. Press the [Job Reset] key.



2. Press the [#Enter] key.



3. Press the [#Enter] key.

## Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Tray 2/Tray 3)

The tray is not loaded with paper of the correct size or type. Do one of the following:

- Change the paper settings.
- Print by Form Feed (Change the tray).
- Cancel the print job.

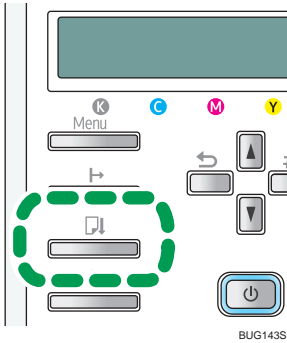
**Reference**

- To change the paper settings, see p.94 "Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)".

## Printing by Form Feed

Press the [Form Feed] key, select the tray, and then print by Form Feed.

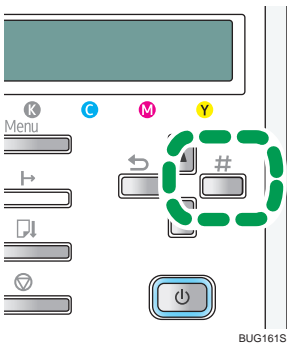
1. Press the [Form Feed] key.



2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper tray, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Print: Tray 1 ?:  
A4 (210 x 297)
```

```
Print: Tray 1 ?:  
Plain Paper
```

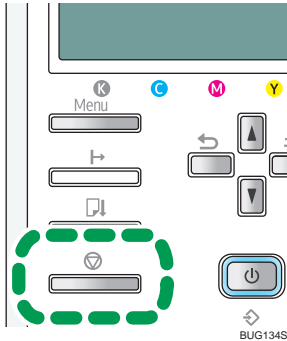




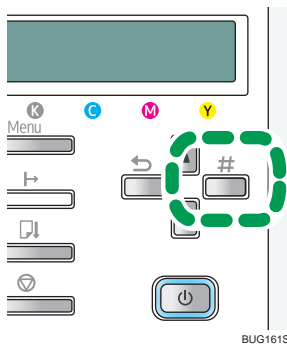
## Canceling the Print Job

Cancel the print job.

1. Press the [Job Reset] key.



2. Press the [#Enter] key.



3. Press the [#Enter] key.

## Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Bypass Tray)

The tray is not loaded with paper of the correct size or type. Do one of the following:

- Change the paper settings.
- Print by Form Feed (Change the tray).
- Cancel the print job.

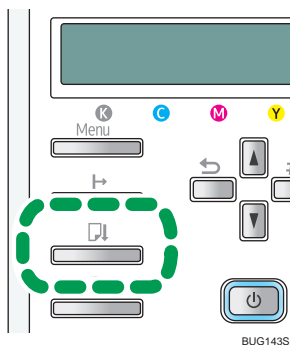
### Reference

- To change the paper settings, see p.94 "Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)".

## Printing by Form Feed

Press the [Form Feed] key, select the tray, and then print by Form Feed.

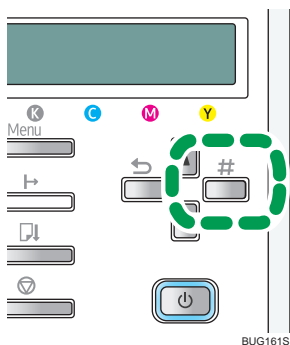
1. Press the [Form Feed] key.



2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper tray, and then press the [#Enter] key.

```
Print: Tray 1 ?:  
A4 (210 x 297)
```

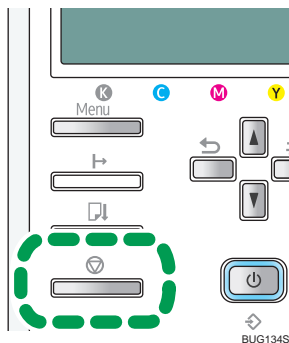
```
Print: Tray 1 ?:  
Plain Paper
```



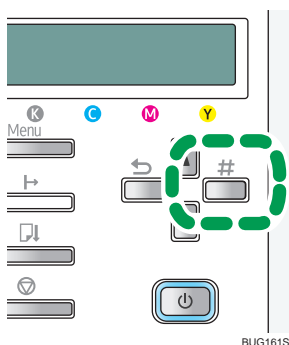
## Canceling the Print Job

Cancel the print job.

### 1. Press the [Job Reset] key.



### 2. Press the [#Enter] key.



### 3. Press the [#Enter] key.

## Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Auto Tray Select)

The automatically detected tray is not loaded with paper of the correct size or type. Do one of the following:

- Change the paper settings.
- Print by Form Feed (Change the tray).
- Cancel the print job.

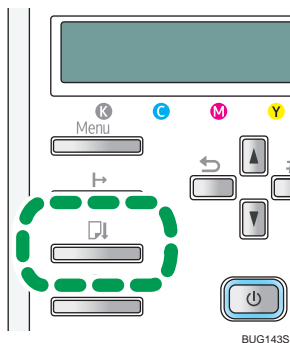
### Reference

- To change the paper settings, see p.94 "Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (Paper Input Menu)".

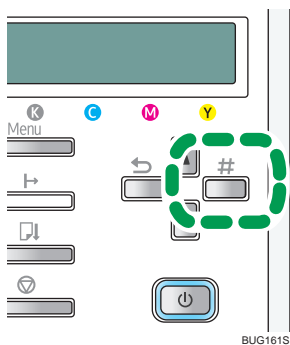
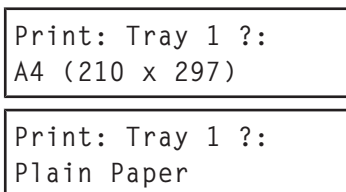
## Printing by Form Feed

Press the [Form Feed] key, select the tray, and then print by Form Feed.

**1. Press the [Form Feed] key.**



**2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select a paper tray, and then press the [#Enter] key.**



7

---

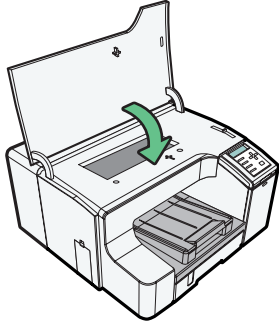
### Canceling the Print Job

Cancel the print job.



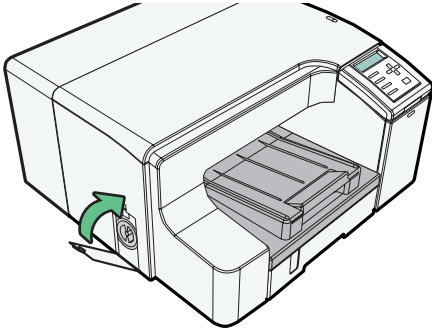
1. Close the cover.

Top cover



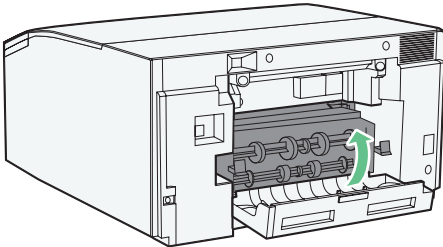
BUG182S

Left cover



BUG156S

Duplex unit cover

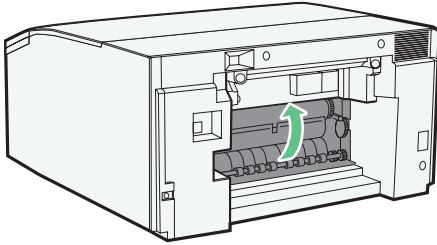


BUG159S

If the bypass tray is attached to the printer, switch the printer off and detach the bypass tray. Check that the duplex unit is correctly attached and the duplex unit cover is closed.

**Note**

- There is a guide board in the recess behind the duplex unit. If the guide board is open, close it.



BUG142S

### Reference

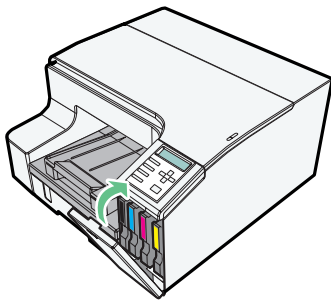
- p.31 "Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray"
- p.20 "Guide to Components"

## Cover Open / Print Cartridge(s) Not Detected

The right front cover is open. Close the right front cover. Alternatively, the print cartridges are not installed or are installed incorrectly. Install the print cartridges correctly.

If the cover is open:

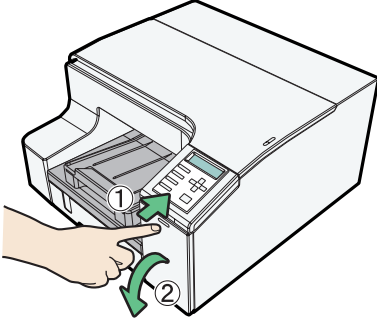
1. Close the right front cover.



BUG115S

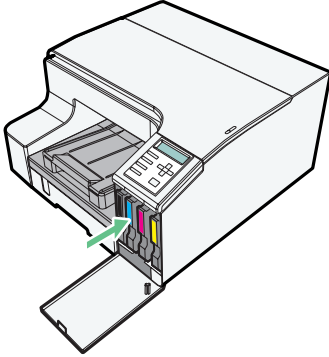
If the print cartridges are not installed or are installed incorrectly:

1. While pressing the recessed area (①) of the right front cover, open the cover (②).



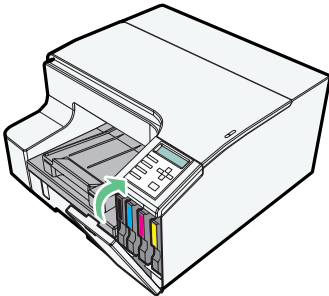
BUG113S

2. Push in the cartridge.



BUG141S

3. Close the right front cover.



BUG115S

**Note**

- If the error persists, remove the print cartridge and then reinstall it. Do this once only.
- If there is a problem with the print cartridge, try installing a new cartridge.



---

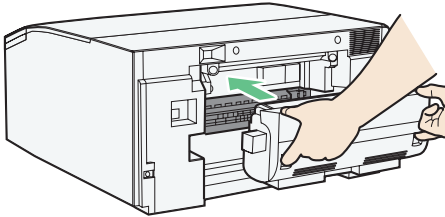
## Duplex Unit Not Detected

---

The duplex unit is not attached correctly. Follow the procedure below to attach the duplex unit correctly.

### ★ Important

- If the bypass tray is attached to the printer, switch the printer off and detach the bypass tray.
1. Without pressing the catches on its sides, push the duplex unit all the way in until it clicks into place.



BUG155S

### 📖 Reference

- p.31 "Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray"

7

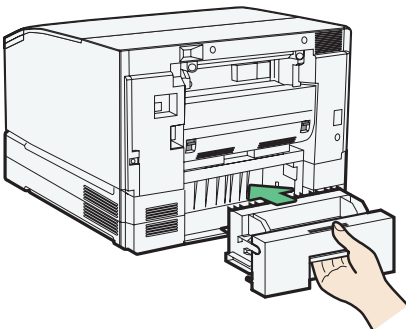
---

## Rear Unit of Optional Tray Not Detected

---

The rear unit is not attached correctly. Follow the procedure below to attach the rear unit correctly.

1. Holding the rear handle, attach the rear unit.



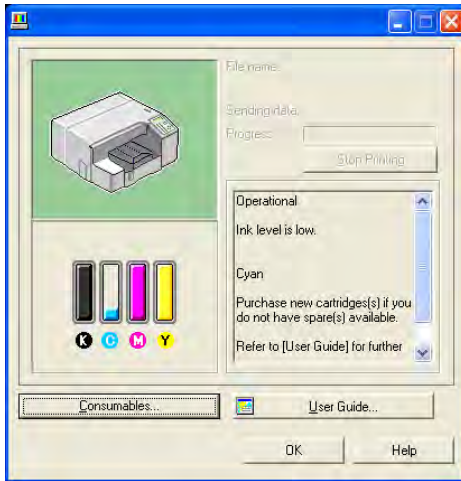
BUG242S

## Cartridge Almost Empty

One of the print cartridges is almost empty. Check which color print cartridge will soon have to be replaced, and then have a new cartridge handy.

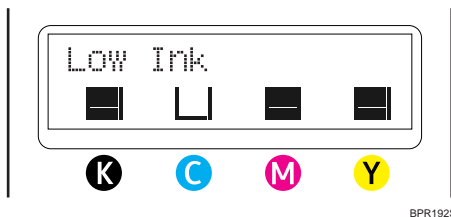
### Checking ink colors

- Checking using the Status monitor



The illustration above indicates the cyan print cartridge is almost empty.

### Checking the cartridge replacement indicators of the printer control panel



The illustration above indicates the cyan print cartridge is almost empty.

#### Note

- The amount of remaining ink shown in the cartridge replacement indicator is for reference only and may differ from the actual amount. Also, cartridges can become empty without a low ink warning appearing.
- From left to right, the cartridge replacement indicators display the status of the black (K), cyan (C), magenta (M), and yellow (Y) Print cartridges.
- With glossy paper, if you print an image that needs a lot of ink, the printer may stop printing before the print is finished. An example of such an image is one containing a single large area of solid color, or one made up almost entirely of a few such areas.

- Do not carry out head cleaning or head flushing. If you do, the ink may run out.
- If you turn the power off and then back on, the printer will send the ink in the print cartridge to the printer. During this, the ink in the print cartridge may run out.

### Reference

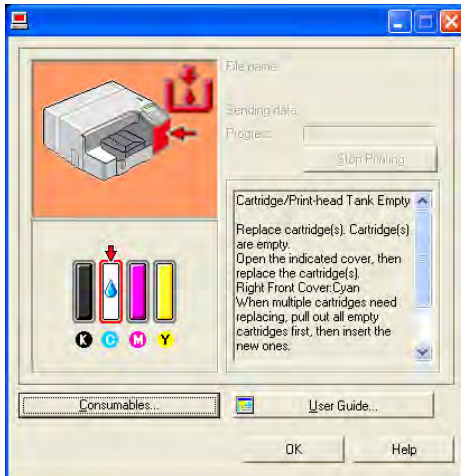
- p.109 "Using the Status Monitor"

## Cartridge Empty

The ink is completely depleted. Printing cannot be performed. Replace the Print cartridge.

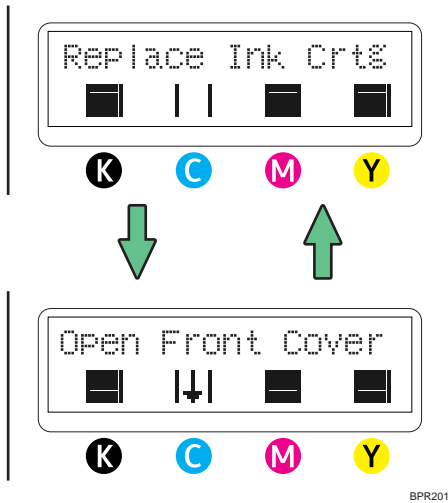
### Checking ink colors

- Checking using the Status monitor



The illustration above indicates the cyan Print cartridge has completely run out.

### Checking the cartridge replacement indicators of the printer control panel



The illustration above indicates the control panel is indicating that the cyan Print cartridge has completely run out.

#### ↓ Note

- From left to right, the cartridge replacement indicators display the status of the black (K), cyan (C), magenta (M), and yellow (Y) Print cartridges.
- Under this condition, the printer cannot carry out head cleaning or head flushing.
- If the ink runs out during printing, the printer may eject blank or partially printed sheets.

#### 📖 Reference

- p.191 "Replacing a Print Cartridge"
- p.109 "Using the Status Monitor"

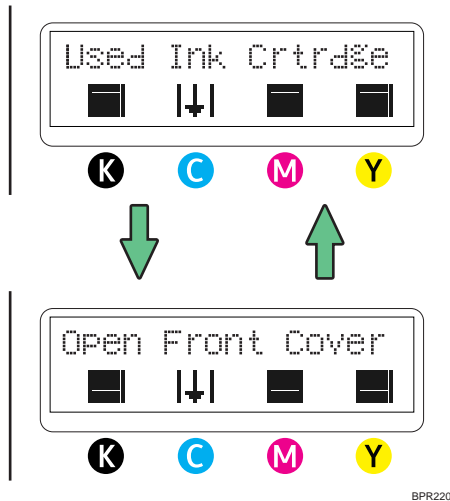
---

## Used Cartridge

---

The installed print cartridge has run out of ink. Printing cannot be performed. Replace the Print cartridge.

## Checking the cartridge replacement indicators of the printer control panel



The illustration above indicates the cyan print cartridge is empty.

### ↓ Note

- Under this condition, the printer cannot carry out head cleaning or head flushing.
- From left to right, the cartridge replacement indicators display the status of the black (K), cyan (C), magenta (M), and yellow (Y) Print cartridges.
- Cartridges that are no longer usable for printing reserve a small quantity of ink for maintenance usage. Make sure you do not install an empty print cartridge by mistake.
- Print cartridges should be used up before their expiry date, preferably within six months of being removed from their packaging.

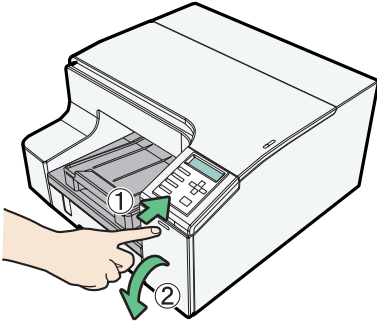
### 📖 Reference

- p.191 "Replacing a Print Cartridge"
- p.109 "Using the Status Monitor"

## Ink Collector Unit Not Detected

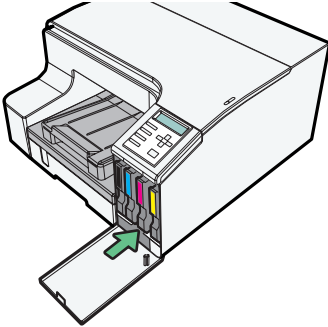
The ink collector unit is not attached correctly. Follow the procedure below to attach the ink collector unit correctly.

1. While pressing the recessed area (①) of the right front cover, open the cover (②).



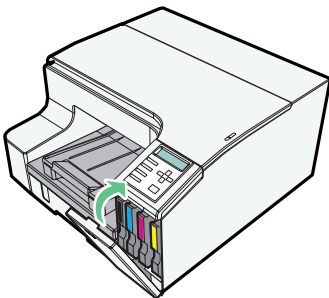
BUG113S

2. Attach the ink collector unit by pushing it in until it clicks. Take care not to spill the ink.  
Remove the ink collector unit only when necessary.



BUG162S

3. Close the right front cover.



BUG115S

If the message reappears, contact your service representative.

**Reference**

- p.316 "Where to Inquire"

---

## Ink Collector Unit Almost Full

---

The ink collector unit is almost full. Have a new ink collector unit handy.

### Checking using the printer's control panel

Prepare new Ink  
Collector Unit

#### ↓ Note

- If a print cartridge starts running out of ink when the ink collector unit is almost full, the alert indicator will flash and a message informing you of the cartridge's low ink level will appear on the control panel. To prevent job delay due to a full ink collector unit, always have a new ink collector unit ready.

#### 📖 Reference

- Where to Inquire

---

## Ink Collector Unit Full

---

The ink collector unit is full. To print, you must replace the ink collector unit.

### Checking using the printer's control panel

Ink Collector  
Unit is full

Replace Ink  
Collector Unit

#### 📖 Reference

- p.197 "Replacing an Ink Collector Unit"

---

## Used Ink Collector Unit

---

A used ink collector unit has been installed. To print, you must replace the ink collector unit.

### Checking using the printer's control panel

Used Ink Collect  
Unit is set

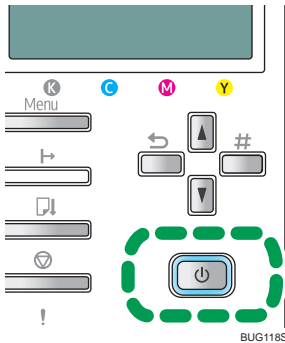
#### 📖 Reference

- Replacing an Ink Collector Unit

## Out of Printable Temperature Range

Follow the procedure below to relocate the printer when the temperature inside the printer is inappropriate, extremely high or low, for printing.

### 1. Turn the printer off.



### 2. Place the printer in a 10 to 32°C (50 to 89.6°F) environment.

### 3. Turn the printer on.

#### ↓ Note

- If humidity is more than 54%, the high end of the appropriate temperature range will be lower than usual.
- Even after the power is turned on, the printer may remain in the standby mode until it acclimates to the room temperature. If this happens, wait until the [Power] key stops blinking and stays lit.

#### 📖 Reference

- For details about what conditions the printer can be used under (ambient temperature and humidity range), see p.35 "Checking the Computer and Installation Area".
- See p.201 "Moving".

## Printer Error

An error has occurred in the printer. Turn the power off once, and then turn it back on.

#### ↓ Note

- If the printer is relocated from a cold area to a warm area or the printer is placed in a room where the temperature varies greatly, condensation may form inside the printer causing errors. If this happens, perform the decondensation procedure.

#### 📖 Reference

- For details about de-condensation, see p.176 "De-condensation".

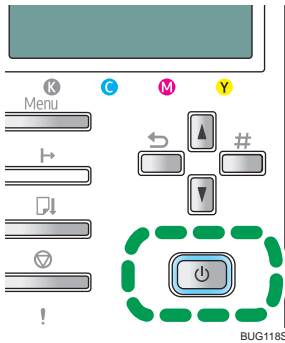


- If the error still does not clear after the printer acclimates to room temperature and the power is turned back on, contact your sales or service representative.

## Network Interface Error

An error in the Ethernet port network function has occurred. Do the following:

### 1. Turn the printer off.



### 2. Turn the printer on.

If the message reappears, contact your service representative.

#### Reference

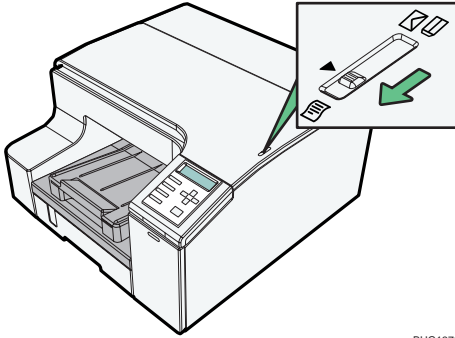
- p.316 "Where to Inquire"

## Envelope Selector Position Mismatch

The envelope selector is in the wrong position or the printer driver settings are wrong. Set the envelope selector to the right position or change the printer driver settings. Alternatively, press the [Form Feed] key, select a tray containing paper of the required size, and then print. To cancel the print job, press the [Job Reset] key.

## Check the position of the envelope selector

1. For envelopes, set the lever to the rear position ; for everything else, set the lever to the forward position .

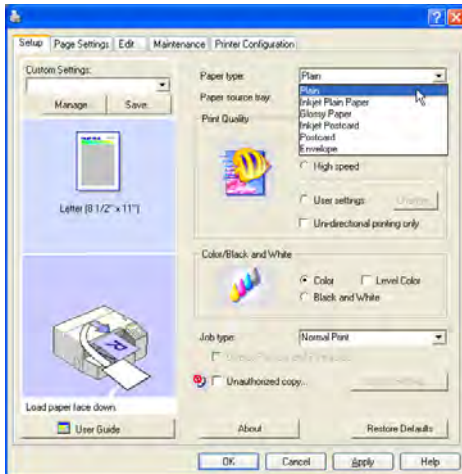


BUG137S

## Check the printer driver settings

1. In the application, open the printer properties dialog box.
2. Click the [Setup] tab.
3. Check the [Paper type:] setting.

Select the paper type from the [Paper type:] dropdown list. For envelopes, select [Envelope].

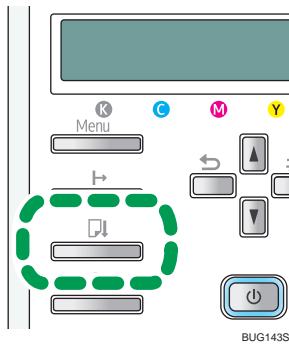


4. Click [OK].

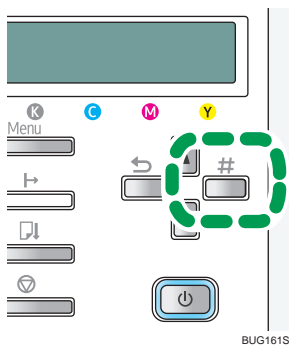
## Printing by Form Feed

Press the [Form Feed] key, and then print.

### 1. Press the [Form Feed] key.



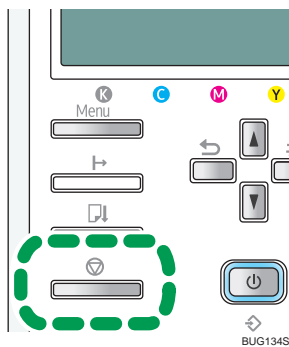
### 2. Press the [#Enter] key.



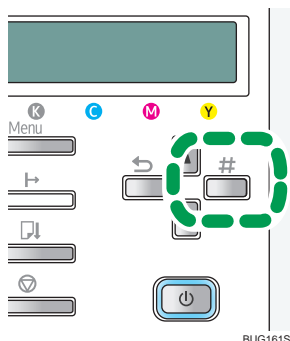
## Canceling the Print Job

Cancel the print job.

### 1. Press the [Job Reset] key.



**2. Press the [#Enter] key.**



**3. Press the [#Enter] key.**

---

## Maintenance Failed

---

Head cleaning or head flushing has failed.

The error is cleared when the following occur:

- The printer receives another print job
- Press the [#Enter] key

7

---

## Cannot Recover Error Page

---

When the printer resumes printing after a paper jam has been cleared, some pages might be missing from the print job. If this happens, do one of the following:

- Print by Form Feed (The printer prints the remaining pages following the missed page[s])
- Cancel the print job.

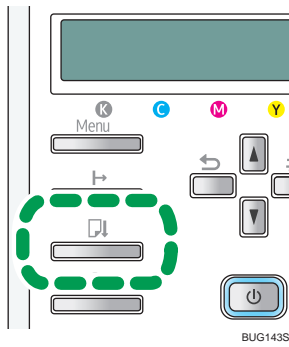
---

## Printing by Form Feed

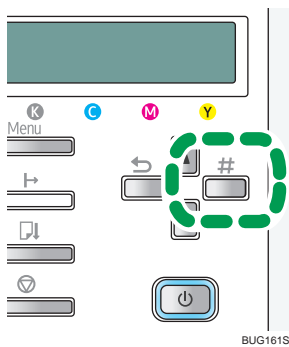
---

Press the [Form Feed] key, and then print.

### 1. Press the [Form Feed] key.



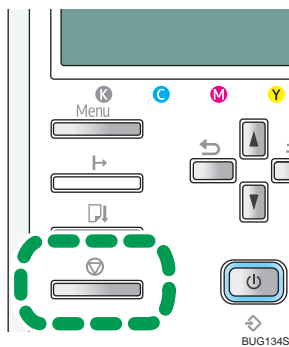
### 2. Press the [#Enter] key.



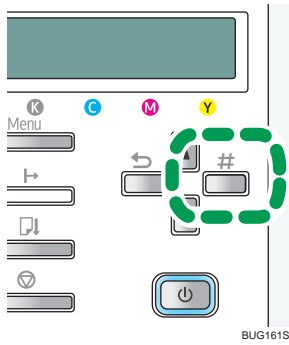
## Canceling the Print Job

Cancel the print job.

### 1. Press the [Job Reset] key.



**2. Press the [#Enter] key.**



**3. Press the [#Enter] key.**

# 8. Appendix

---

## Updating the Firmware

To update the printer and network interface board firmware, download the latest firmware from the website and installing it.

### ↓ Note

- To check the current firmware version, print the system configuration page from the [List/Test Print] menu.

### 📖 Reference

- p.65 "Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu)"

## Checking the Current Printer Driver Version

Follow the procedure below to check the version of the printer driver currently installed.

1. **Open the printer properties dialog box.**
2. **Click the [Setup] tab.**
3. **Click [About].**

The [About] dialog box appears.

4. **Check the version.**
5. **Click [OK].**



# Software on the CD-ROM

This section describes the CD-ROM supplied with the printer.

## Files

The following is a list of the files on the CD-ROM.

File Name
SETUP.EXE
RPCS Raster Printer Driver for Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2008
PCL 5c Printer Driver for Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2008
PCL 6 Printer Driver for Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2008
SmartDeviceMonitor for Client
ICM Color Profiles for Printer
Manuals (HTML files)

## RPCS Raster Printer Drivers

This section gives the file locations of the different RPCS raster printer drivers and their system requirements.

### File Location

The drivers are in the following folders on the supplied CD-ROM.

- RPCS raster printer driver for Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2008

**Drivers\Rpcs\_r\XP\_VISTA\DISK1**

### System Requirements for the Printer Drivers

- Computer  
PC/AT-compatible computer with USB interface
- Operating Systems  
Windows 2000/XP/Vista or Windows Server 2003/2008
- Display Resolution  
Minimum SVGA 800 × 600 pixels

**Note**

- The printer drivers do not support clustering technology under Windows 2000 and Windows Server 2003/2008.
- For details about using the printer driver, see the printer driver Help.

---

## PCL Printer Drivers

---

This section gives the file locations of the different PCL 5c printer drivers and their system requirements. These drivers allow your computer to communicate with this printer via a printer language.

### File Location

The Drivers are in the following folders on the supplied CD-ROM.

- PCL 5c printer driver for Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2008  
`Drivers\Pc15c\XP_VISTA\xxxx\disk1`
- PCL 6 printer driver for Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2008  
`Drivers\Pc16\XP_VISTA\xxxx\disk1`

### System Requirements for the Printer Drivers

- Computer  
PC/AT-compatible computer with USB interface
- Operating Systems  
Windows 2000/XP/Vista or Windows Server 2003/2008
- Display Resolution  
Minimum SVGA 800 × 600 pixels

**Note**

- "xxxx" in the file location will be the name of the printer driver's supported language.
- The printer drivers do not support clustering technology under Windows 2000 and Windows Server 2003/2008.
- For details about using the printer driver, see the printer driver Help.

---

## SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

---

This section explains the functions and location of SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is software with the following functions. It is recommended that you install it on any computer you wish to use the printer with.

- Under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, and Windows Server 2003/2008, you can print over a peer-to-peer TCP/IP network.
- You can monitor the printer status over a TCP/IP network.

**File Location**

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is in the following folder on the supplied CD-ROM.

**Network\Devmon\Client\Disk1**

**Note**

- See "p.110 "Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client"", or the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

**Reference**

- For details about installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, see p.77 "Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port".

---

**Manuals (HTML files)**

---

This section gives the location of the manuals.

**File Location**

The manuals are in the following folders on the supplied CD-ROM.

**MANUAL\_HTML**

# Cautions to Take When Using in a Network

---

## Using DHCP

---

This printer can be used in a DHCP environment. In a WINS server environment, the printer name can simultaneously be registered with a WINS server.

### ↓ Note

- Supported DHCP server operating systems are: Windows 2000 Server, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and UNIX standard.
- The IP address acquired from DHCP can be checked on the configuration page. For details about printing a configuration page, see "Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu)".
- When there are multiple DHCP servers, make the same reservation for all. This printer uses information from the DHCP server that responds first.

### 📖 Reference

- p.65 "Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel (List/Test Print Menu)"

# Electromagnetic Interference

If another electronic device is placed next to the printer, each will influence the other negatively. In the case of a television or radio, noise may be generated. If this happens, do the following:

- Move the television or radio as far as possible from the printer.
- Change the position of the antenna of the television or radio.
- Use a different wall outlet on a different circuit.

# Specifications

Specifications of the printer and options are listed.

## Printer Body

### Print speed

Measurements according to the manufacturer's measurement system

Black draft: 30.0 ppm

Color draft: 30.0 ppm

Depending on the operating environment, printing may take longer than normal.

### Print direction

Supports bidirectional, minimum distance printing

### Print resolution

Max 1200 × 1200 dpi equivalent

### Nozzles

Black: 192 nozzles

Cyan, magenta, and yellow: 192 nozzles per color

### Paper sizes (Tray 1 : standard)

Standard paper size: A4<sup>□</sup>, A5<sup>□</sup>, A6<sup>□</sup>, B5 JIS<sup>□</sup>, Letter (8 1/2" × 11")<sup>□</sup>, Legal(8 1/2" × 14")<sup>□</sup>, 5 1/2" × 8 1/2"<sup>□</sup>, Executive (7 1/4" × 10 1/2")<sup>□</sup>, 8" × 13"<sup>□</sup>, 8 1/2" × 13"<sup>□</sup>, 8 1/4" × 13"<sup>□</sup>, 16K<sup>□</sup>, Com10 Envelope (4 1/8" × 9 1/2")<sup>□</sup>, Monarch Envelope (3 7/8" × 7 1/2")<sup>□</sup>, C6 Envelope (114 × 162 mm)<sup>□</sup>, C5 Envelope (162 × 229 mm)<sup>□</sup>, DL Envelope (110 × 220 mm)<sup>□</sup>

Custom paper sizes: 139.7-356 mm (5.50-14.01 inch) (Vertical) × 88-216 mm (3.46-8.50 inch) (Horizontal)

### Paper sizes (Duplex Unit)

Standard paper size: A4<sup>□</sup>, A5<sup>□</sup>, A6<sup>□</sup>, B5 JIS<sup>□</sup>, Letter (8 1/2" × 11")<sup>□</sup>, 5 1/2" × 8 1/2"<sup>□</sup>, Executive (7 1/4" × 10 1/2")<sup>□</sup>, 16K<sup>□</sup>

### Paper type

Plain paper

Recycled paper

Color paper

Inkjet plain paper

Glossy paper (Duplex printing is not supported.)

Envelope (Duplex printing is not supported.)

**Paper weight**

Tray 1/ optional tray: 60-157 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16.0-42.0 lb.)

**Paper capacity**

Tray 1: 250 sheets

**Maximum paper capacity**

1350 sheets (with the optional tray installed)

**Output ramp capacity**

100 sheets

The capacity may be less depending on the images printed.

**Power source**

100-120V: 50/60Hz 1.2A (when fully equipped)

220-240V: 50/60Hz 0.6A (when fully equipped)

**Power consumption**

Average power consumption while printing:

38 W or less (not including options)

Energy Saver mode:

less than 3.4 W

To avoid any power consumption, disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

(Unplug the power plug only after making sure the [Power] key indicator is off.)

**Operating environment**

Temperature: 10 to 32°C (50 to 89.6°F)

Humidity: 15-80% RH (maximum wet-bulb temperature: 25°C (77°F))

Printing may stop to protect the printer for conditions outside those described above.

**Storage environment**

Temperature: 1 to 40°C (33.8 to 104°F)

Humidity: 5-80% RH

**External dimensions**

(W × D × H) 509 × 485 × 263 mm (20.0 × 19.1 × 10.4 inches)

(W × D × H) 509 × 707 × 450 mm (20.0 × 27.8 × 17.7 inches) (when fully equipped)

**Weight**

Approximately 15.5 kg (34.2 lb.) (printer body with consumables)

Approximately 29.9 kg (65.9 lb.) (when fully equipped)

**Noise emission****Sound Power Level**

	Main unit only
During Printing	Quality priority : 62.7 dB(A) or less Speed priority : 66.7 dB(A) or less
Standby	40 dB(A) or less

**Sound Pressure Level**

	Main unit only
During Printing	Quality priority : 56.7 dB(A) or less Speed priority : 60.7 dB(A) or less
Standby	34 dB(A) or less

**Interface**

USB 2.0 high speed

Ethernet (10BASE-T, 100BASE-TX)

**Printer language**

RPCS Raster, PCL

8

**Option (Paper Feed Unit)****Paper Feed Unit Type TK1110****Paper sizes**

A4<sup>□</sup>, A5<sup>□</sup>, A6<sup>□</sup>, B5 JIS<sup>□</sup>, Letter (8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" × 11")<sup>□</sup>, Legal (8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" × 14")<sup>□</sup>, Executive (7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>" × 10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>")<sup>□</sup>, 8" × 13"<sup>□</sup>, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" × 13"<sup>□</sup>, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>" × 13"<sup>□</sup>, 16K<sup>□</sup>

Custom paper sizes: 148-356 mm (5.83-14.01 inch) (Vertical) × 105-216 mm (4.14-8.50 inch) (Horizontal)

**Paper type**

Plain paper

Recycled paper

Color paper

Inkjet plain paper



Glossy paper

**Paper weight**

60-105 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16.0-28.0 lb.)

**Paper capacity**

500 sheets

## Option (Bypass tray)

### Multi Bypass Tray Type BY1000

**Paper sizes**

A4<sup>□</sup>, A5<sup>□</sup>, A6<sup>□</sup>, B5 JIS<sup>□</sup>, Letter (8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" × 11")<sup>□</sup>, Legal (8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" × 14")<sup>□</sup>, 5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" × 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"<sup>□</sup>, Executive (7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>" × 10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" )<sup>□</sup>, 8" × 13"<sup>□</sup>, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" × 13"<sup>□</sup>, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>" × 13"<sup>□</sup>, 16K<sup>□</sup>, Com10 Envelope (4<sup>1</sup>/<sub>8</sub>" × 9<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" )<sup>□</sup>, Monarch Envelope (3<sup>7</sup>/<sub>8</sub>" × 7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" )<sup>□</sup>, C6 Envelope (114 × 162 mm)<sup>□</sup>, C5 Envelope (162 × 229 mm)<sup>□</sup>, DL Envelope (110 × 220 mm)<sup>□</sup>

Custom paper sizes: 127-1295.4 mm (5-51 inch) (Vertical) × 55-216 mm (2.17-8.50 inch) (Horizontal)

**Paper type**

Plain paper

Recycled paper

Color paper

Inkjet plain paper

Glossy paper

Envelope

Thick

**Paper weight**

52-255 g/m<sup>2</sup> (14.0-68.0 lb.)

**Paper capacity**

100

**Note**

- Under the PCL driver, the available custom size is 139.7-355.9 mm (5.50-14.01 inch) (Vertical) × 55.0-216.0 mm (2.17-8.50 inch) (Horizontal).

# List of Printer Driver Functions (Windows/Macintosh)

The following tables list the functions available under Mac OS X and their Windows printer driver equivalents.

## Paper source tray

Windows	Mac OS X
Tray 1	Tray 1
Tray 2	Tray 2
Tray 3	Tray 3
Bypass Tray	Bypass Tray
Auto Tray Select	Auto Tray Select

## Paper type

Windows	Mac OS X
Plain	Plain
Inkjet Plain Paper	Inkjet Plain Paper
Glossy Paper	Glossy Paper
Inkjet Postcard	Inkjet Postcard
Postcard	Postcard
Envelope	Envelope
Thick	Thick

## Original size

Windows	Mac OS X
A0	-
A1	-
A2	-
A3	-

Windows	Mac OS X
A4	A4
A5	A5
A6	A6
B1 JIS	-
B2 JIS	-
B3 JIS	-
B4 JIS	-
B5 JIS	B5 JIS
B6 JIS	B6 JIS
Letter	Letter (US Letter)
Legal	Legal (US Legal)
12" x 18"	-
5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " x 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "	5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " x 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "
11" x 17"	-
Reply-paid Postcard	Reply-paid Postcard
Executive	Executive
8" x 13"	F/GL
8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " x 13"	Foolscap
8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " x 13"	Folio
8K	-
16K	16K
Com10 Env.	Com10 Env.
Monarch Env.	Monarch Env.
C6 Env.	C6 Env. (C6 Envelope)
C5 Env.	C5 Env. (C5 Envelope)

Windows	Mac OS X
DL Env.	DL Env. (DL Envelope)
Custom Paper Size	Custom Paper Size

The sizes shown in the brackets ( ) for Mac OS X are the sizes shown on the printer driver.

### Printout paper size

Windows	Mac OS X
A4	A4
A5	A5
A6	A6
B5 JIS	B5 JIS
B6 JIS	B6 JIS
Letter	Letter (US Letter)
Legal	Legal (US Legal)
5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "	5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "
Reply-paid Postcard	Reply-paid Postcard
Executive	Executive
8" × 13"	F/GL
8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 13"	Foolscap
8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 13"	Folio
16K	16K
Com10 Env.	Com10 Env.
Monarch Env.	Monarch Env.
C6 Env.	C6 Env. (C6 Envelope)
C5 Env.	C5 Env. (C5 Envelope)
DL Env.	DL Env. (DL Envelope)

Windows	Mac OS X
Custom Size	Custom Size

The sizes shown in the brackets ( ) for Mac OS X are the sizes shown on the printer driver.

### Original orientation

Windows	Mac OS X
Portrait	Portrait (This function is provided by the operating system.)
Landscape	Landscape (This function is provided by the operating system.)

### Collate

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

### Reverse order printing

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

### Rotate by 180 degrees

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

### Centering

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

### Job type

Windows	Mac OS X
Normal Print	Unavailable

Windows	Mac OS X
Send to Job Binding...	
Save as Overlay Data...	

**Print to file**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)	Available (Rendered as PDF, PostScript, This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Print quality**

Windows	Mac OS X
Quality priority	Unavailable (Specify the Resolution, the number of path, and the scan direction. Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, specify the paper type in combination with the print quality.)
Speed priority	
High speed	

**Registering frequently used settings**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Print quality (User settings)**

Windows	Mac OS X
High quality	Unavailable (Specify the Resolution, the number of path, and the scan direction. Under Mac OS X 10.3.x - 10.4.x, specify the paper type in combination with the print quality.)
Quality priority	
Speed priority	
High speed	

**Dithering**

Windows	Mac OS X
Automatic	-
Photographic	Photographic

Windows	Mac OS X
Text	Text
Thin lines	Use error diffusion

**Use error diffusion**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available

**Color profile**

Windows	Mac OS X
Optimize color	-
Off	Off
Presentation	Presentation
Photographic	Photographic
Text	Text

**Gray reproduction**

Windows	Mac OS X
Automatic	Unavailable
K (Black) for text only	
CMY + K	
CMY + K for images only	

**Color balance**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Brightness**

Windows	Mac OS X
-50 ~ 50	Unavailable

**Contrast**

Windows	Mac OS X
-50 ~ 50	Unavailable

**Saturation**

Windows	Mac OS X
-50 ~ 50	Unavailable

**Color balance: Cyan**

Windows	Mac OS X
-50 ~ 50	Unavailable

**Color balance: Magenta**

Windows	Mac OS X
-50 ~ 50	Unavailable

**Color balance: Yellow**

Windows	Mac OS X
-50 ~ 50	Unavailable

**Use ICM**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Use ICM: ICM method**

Windows	Mac OS X
By host system	Unavailable
By printer driver	

**Use ICM: ICM intent**

Windows	Mac OS X
Graphics (Saturation)	Unavailable



Windows	Mac OS X
Pictures (Perceptual)	
Proof (Relative Colorimetric)	
Match (Absolute Colorimetric)	

**Use ColorSync**

Windows	Mac OS X
Unavailable	Unavailable

**Print as bitmap**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Change data processing**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Separate into CMYK, then print in designated color only**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Fit to paper size**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.) (for version 10.4 and later)

**Scale**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Directional Magnification**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Layout**

Windows	Mac OS X
2 pages per sheet (2-up) (left→right) (Top→Bottom)	2 pages per sheet (2-up) (left→right) (Top→Bottom) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
2 pages per sheet (2-up) (right→left)	2 pages per sheet (2-up) (right→left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In rows running left to right)	4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In rows running left to right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In rows running right to left)	4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In rows running right to left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In columns starting on the left)	4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In columns starting on the left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In columns starting on the right)	4 pages per sheet (4-up) (In columns starting on the right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
-	6 pages per sheet (6-up) (In rows running left to right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
-	6 pages per sheet (6-up) (In rows running right to left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
-	6 pages per sheet (6-up) (In columns starting on the left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)

Windows	Mac OS X
-	6 pages per sheet (6-up) (In columns starting on the right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In rows running left to right)	9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In rows running left to right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In rows running right to left)	9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In rows running right to left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In columns starting on the left)	9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In columns starting on the left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In columns starting on the right)	9 pages per sheet (9-up) (In columns starting on the right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In rows running left to right)	16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In rows running left to right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In rows running right to left)	16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In rows running right to left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In columns starting on the left)	16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In columns starting on the left) (This function is provided by the operating system.)
16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In columns starting on the right)	16 pages per sheet (16-up) (In columns starting on the right) (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Draw border**

Windows	Mac OS X
Dashed line	-
-	Single Hairline (This function is provided by the operating system.)

Windows	Mac OS X
-	Single Thin Line (This function is provided by the operating system.)
-	Double Hairline (This function is provided by the operating system.)
-	Double Thin Line (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Poster**

Windows	Mac OS X
1 page into 2 sheets	Unavailable
1 page into 4 sheets	
1 page into 9 sheets	

**Duplex**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available

**Adjust Image Position: Direction**

Windows	Mac OS X
Left	Long-Edge Binding
Right	-
Top	Short-Edge Binding

**Adjust Image Position: Top/Left margin**

Windows	Mac OS X
0 - 50mm	Unavailable

**Create margin**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Booklet**

Windows	Mac OS X
Booklet 1 -Open to left	Unavailable
Booklet 1 -Open to right	
Booklet 2 -Open to left	
Booklet 2 -Open to right	

**Specifying the long edge of custom-size paper**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Specifying the short edge of custom-size paper**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Margin settings for custom-size paper**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Registering custom paper sizes**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Watermarks: Text**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Watermarks: Bitmap**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Overlay**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Header/Footer**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Economy Color**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available

**Sheet-dry print delay in duplex**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available

8

**Mixed Original Orientations**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Do not print blank pages**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available

**Reduce automatically to fit specified paper size**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available (A4 only)	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.) (for version 10.4 and later)

**Use preprinted/prepunched paper**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Measurement Unit**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Uni-directional printing only**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Display Preview and Print screen**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available (This function is provided by the operating system.)

**Unauthorized Copy Control**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Custom Settings**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**When the envelope selector is set to Envelope Mode, use uni-directional printing only**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Available

**Density for plain paper printing**

Windows	Mac OS X
Light	Unavailable

Windows	Mac OS X
Standard	
Dark	

**Environment Settings**

Windows	Mac OS X
Available	Unavailable

**Printable area**

Windows	Mac OS X
Regular	Unavailable
Enlarged	
Maximum	



# Information about Installed Applications

## expat

Use of the software installed on this product, including the controller (hereinafter "software") and the expat Version 1.95.2 application software (hereinafter "expat 1.95.2"), is subject to the following conditions:

The product manufacturer provides warranty and support to the software of the product including expat 1.95.2 and the product manufacturer allows the initial developer of expat 1.95.2 to be free from these obligations.

Copyright © 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd  
and Clark Cooper

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

### ↓ Note

- Information on expat 1.95.2 is available at:  
<http://expat.sourceforge.net/>

## MD5

Copyright (c) 1991-2, RSA Data Security, Inc. Created 1991. All rights reserved.

License to copy and use this software is granted provided that it is identified as the "RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing this software or this function.

License is also granted to make and use derivative works provided that such works are identified as "derived from the RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing the derived work.

RSA Data Security, Inc. makes no representations concerning either the merchantability of this software or the suitability of this software for any particular purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty of any kind.

These notices must be retained in any copies of any part of this documentation and/or software.

---

## NetBSD

---

### Copyright Notice of NetBSD

For all users to use this product:

This product contains NetBSD operating system:

For the most part, the software constituting the NetBSD operating system is not in the public domain; its authors retain their copyright.

The following text shows the copyright notice used for many of the NetBSD source code. For exact copyright notice applicable for each of the files/binaries, the source code tree must be consulted.

A full source code can be found at <http://www.netbsd.org/>.

Copyright © 1999, 2000 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:  
This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.
4. Neither the name of The NetBSD Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE NETBSD FOUNDATION, INC. AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## Authors Name List

---

All product names mentioned herein are trademarks of their respective owners.

The following notices are required to satisfy the license terms of the software that we have mentioned in this document:

- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan R. Stone for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Manuel Bouyer.
- This product includes software developed by Charles Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Charles M. Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Christopher G. Demetriou.
- This product includes software developed by Tools GmbH.
- This product includes software developed by Terrence R. Lambert.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Glass and Charles Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Theo de Raadt.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone and Jason R. Thorpe for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Christos Zoulas.
- This product includes software developed by Christopher G. Demetriou for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Paul Kranenburg.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Glass.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Winning Strategies, Inc.
- This product includes software developed by Frank van der Linden for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Frank van der Linden
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Jason R. Thorpe.
- The software was developed by the University of California, Berkeley.
- This product includes software developed by Chris Provenzano, the University of California, Berkeley, and contributors.

---

## Original SSLeay License

---

Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)

All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com).

The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed.

If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used.

This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

"This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)"

The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the rouines from the library being used are not cryptographic related :-).

4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement:

"This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT

LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence [including the GNU Public Licence.]

---

## **TCP/IP**

---

Elmic System's KASAGO TCP/IP is installed for TCP/IP of this product.

Copyright© Elmic Wescom, Inc. 2005

---

## **JPEG LIBRARY**

---

- The software installed on this product is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

---

## **IPS™ print language emulations**

---

Copyright© 1987-2006 Zoran Corporation. All rights reserved.

## Where to Inquire

For inquiries, contact your sales or service representative.

# Recommended Consumables

Consumables recommended for this printer are listed.

Purchase necessary consumables before your supply runs out.

For information about consumables, contact your sales or service representative.

- Print cartridges
- Ink Collector Unit

## Option and Consumables

The following options can be used with the printer:

- Paper Feed Unit TK1110

This unit feeds paper in bulk.

- Multi Bypass Tray BY1000

You can also feed paper from the bypass tray.

### ↓ Note

- For information about options and consumables, contact your service representative.



# INDEX

## A

About the Web Browser Help.....	129
About This Product.....	9
Adj. Paper Feed.....	168
Alert indicator.....	22
An Error Occurs.....	213
Attaching the Multi Bypass Tray BY1000.....	40
Attaching the Options.....	39
Attaching the Paper Feed Unit TK1110.....	39
Authors Name List.....	313

## B

Basic Printing Procedure.....	140
Before Installing the Software (Network Connection).....	60
Before Installing the Software (USB).....	56
Bypass tray.....	31
Bypass tray extension.....	31

## C

Canceling a Print Job from the Computer.....	144
Canceling a Print Job on a Macintosh.....	144
Canceling printing.....	104
Canceling Printing.....	104
Canceling Printing from the Status Monitor.....	104
Canceling printing from the Taskbar.....	105
Canceling Printing Using the [Job Reset] Key of the Printer.....	104, 145
Canceling the Print Job.....	255, 257, 259, 261, 263, 264, 266
Cartridge Almost Empty.....	272
Cartridge/Print-head Tank Empty.....	273
Cautions to Take When Using in a Network.....	290
Changing the Host Interface menu.....	75
Changing the Paper Input Menu.....	94
Changing the PCL Menu.....	186
Changing the Printer Settings.....	116
Changing the System Menu.....	182
Check the power source.....	37
Checking the Computer and Installation Area.....	35
Checking the Computer to be Connected.....	37
Checking the Consumables.....	246

Checking the Current Printer Driver Version.....	286
Checking the Number of Printed Pages from the Control Panel.....	157
Checking the Printer Status.....	116
Checking the Printer Status and Settings using the Printer's Control Panel.....	65
Checking the Remaining Ink.....	191
Checking the Supplied Items and Unpacking the Printer.....	37
Checking the Version of the Printer Driver.....	152
Checking whether Bidirectional Communication is Working.....	147
Checking Your Computer Environment.....	205
Cleaning.....	200
Colors Do Not Match the Displayed Image.....	243
Compatible Paper Types.....	84
Conditions for Bidirectional Communication.....	99
Confirming Installation.....	205
Confirming the Connection Method.....	66
Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (Network Connection).....	60
Connecting the Computer and Installing the Software (USB Connection).....	56
Connecting the Printer via the Network.....	60
Connecting the Printer via USB.....	56
Control Panel.....	22, 248
Correct Orientation of Pre-printed Paper When Loaded in the Tray 1/Tray 2/Tray 3.....	88
Correct Orientation of Preprinted Paper When Loaded in the Bypass Tray.....	89
Counter Menu.....	157
Cover Open.....	267
Custom Setting.....	97

## D

Data In indicator.....	22
De-condensation.....	176
Deleting Devices.....	211
Description for the Specified Model.....	15
Detaching and Reattaching the Multi Bypass Tray.....	31
Dialog Boxes for Printer Settings.....	137
Disclaimer.....	11
Display.....	22
Displaying Help from the Print dialog.....	149
Displaying Mac Help.....	149

Displaying the [Maintenance Utility].....	138	If Bidirectional Communication is Disabled.....	99
Displaying the Counter.....	157	If Test Print Fails.....	209
Displaying the Page Setup dialog.....	138	If You Cannot Remove Jammed Paper.....	237
Displaying the Print dialog.....	138	Important Notice.....	103
Displaying the Printer Driver Settings Dialog Boxes .....	137	Information about Installed Applications.....	311
Displaying the Printer Status.....	109, 113, 147	Ink.....	193, 269, 272, 273
Displaying the Status Monitor.....	147	Ink Collector Unit.....	21
Displaying Top Page.....	114	Ink Collector Unit Almost Full.....	277
Disposing.....	203	Ink collector unit cover.....	21
Duplex Unit.....	22	Ink Collector Unit Full.....	277
Duplex Unit Not Detected.....	271	Ink Collector Unit Not Detected.....	275
<b>E</b>		Inkjet plain paper.....	84
Electromagnetic Interference.....	291	Install.....	68, 77, 82
Enter key.....	22	Installing the Drivers for Network Connection..... .....	76
Envelope selector.....	20	Installing the PCL or RPCS Raster Printer Driver (Network).....	77
Envelope Selector Position Mismatch.....	279	Installing the PCL or RPCS raster printer driver (USB) .....	68
Envelopes.....	84	Installing the Print Cartridges.....	40
Error.....	248	Installing the Printer Driver under Mac OS X..... .....	133
Escape key.....	22	Installing User Guide.....	16
Ethernet port.....	22	Interpreting the Configuration Page.....	65
expat.....	311	Introduction.....	9
<b>F</b>		<b>J</b>	
Feed.....	215	Job Reset.....	104
Files.....	154, 287	Job Reset key.....	22
Form Feed key.....	22	JPEG LIBRARY.....	315
<b>G</b>		<b>L</b>	
Glossy paper.....	84	Left cover.....	20
Guide board.....	21	List/Test Print Menu.....	65
Guide to Components.....	20	Loadable Paper Sizes and Quantities.....	84
<b>H</b>		Loading paper.....	44
Handling Print Cartridges.....	195	Loading Paper.....	258
Hardware.....	131	Loading Paper into Bypass Tray (optional).....	53
Head Position.....	166	Loading Paper into Tray 1.....	44
Head-cleaning.....	162	Loading Paper into Tray 2/Tray 3.....	49
Head-flushing.....	165	Loading Paper Larger than A4 (Letter)(tray1)..... .....	46
Host Interface Menu.....	73	Loading Paper Larger than A4/Letter (Tray 2/Tray 3).....	51
How to Use User Guide.....	17	Loading Precautions.....	87
<b>I</b>			
If a Message Appears during Installation.....	247		

Locking the Keys.....189

## M

Machine Body.....20

Machine Rear.....21

Maintenance Menu.....159

Making Printer Settings Using the Control Panel.....  
.....25

Manuals.....155, 289

Manuals for This Printer.....13

Menu.....116

Menu Chart.....25

Menu key.....22

Messages.....248

Moving.....201

Moving a Long Distance.....201

Moving a Short Distance.....201

Multi Bypass Tray BY1000.....31

Multi-tab.....97

## N

NetBSD.....312

Network Interface Error.....279

No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Bypass Tray).....  
.....258

No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 1).....254

No Paper/Tray Not Detected (Tray 2/Tray 3).....  
.....256

No Response from Printer.....254

No-Fuss Head Cleaning.....163

Non-compatible paper.....91

Notes on the Installation (Network Connection).....  
.....63

Notes on the Installation (USB Connection).....57

Notifying the Printer Status by E-mail.....117

Nozzle Check.....160

## O

Online key.....22

Opening from an Application.....98

Opening from Printer Status Error Messages.....19

Opening from the CD-ROM.....18

Opening from the Icon.....18

Opening from the Printer Driver.....18

Opening from the Start Menu.....18

Opening Help.....149

Opening the Printer Properties Dialog Box.....97

Opening the Printing Preferences Dialog Box.....  
.....97

Operating System.....131

Option (Bypass tray).....295

Option (Paper Feed Unit).....294

Options.....30

Options and consumables.....318

Original SSLeay License.....314

Other Problems.....244

Out of Printable Temperature Range.....278

Output ramp.....20

Output ramp extension.....20

## P

Paper.....84

Paper Feed Unit TK1110.....30

Paper feed wheel.....21

Paper Handling Precautions.....87

Paper Input Menu.....94

Paper Is Not Fed or Delivered Normally.....215

Paper Jam.....217

Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch  
(AutoTray Select).....265

Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch  
(Bypass Tray).....263

Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Tray  
1).....260

Paper Size Mismatch/Paper Type Mismatch (Tray  
2/Tray 3).....261

Paper Storage Precautions.....90

Paper Type Precautions.....90

Paper Will Not Feed Even When the Power Is On.  
.....213

PCL Menu.....184

PCL Printer Drivers.....288

Performing Maintenance using the Control Panel...  
.....159

Plain paper.....84

Plugging in the Power Cord and Turning the Power  
On.....42

Positions Do Not Match the Displayed Image.....  
.....243

Power Cannot Be Turned On.....213

Power inlet.....21

Power key.....	22
Print cartridge.....	20
Print Cartridge End LED.....	22
Print Cartridge(s) Not Detected.....	269
Print results are not satisfactory.....	241
Printable area.....	92
Printer Body.....	292
Printer Driver.....	68, 77
Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed.....	207
Printer Driver Settings.....	296
Printer Error.....	278
Printer Properties Dialog Box.....	97, 101, 137
Printing.....	101
Printing a Configuration Page.....	54
Printing a document using [Data security for copying].....	102
Printing a Document Using [Mask type].....	102
Printing by Form Feed.....	255, 256, 260, 262, 264, 265
Printing on Paper in a Paper Tray.....	141
Printing on Various Paper Types.....	140
Printing Will Not Start.....	213
Printing with the Bypass Tray.....	143
Prints are Unsatisfactory.....	241

## Q

Quick Install for Network.....	63, 205
Quick Install for USB.....	57, 205

## R

Receiving Notification of Print Job Status via the Status Monitor.....	109
Recommended consumables.....	317
Recommended Functions.....	33
Registration.....	170
Removing paper jammed around the guide board.....	230
Removing Paper Jammed in the Duplex Unit.....	234
Removing Paper Jammed in the Multi Bypass Tray (optional).....	223
Removing Paper Jammed in the Rear Unit.....	222
Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 1.....	218
Removing Paper Jammed in Tray 2/Tray 3 (optional).....	220

Removing Paper Jammed under the Top Cover.....	227
Removing the User Guide.....	19
Replacing an Ink Collector Unit.....	197
Replacing a Print Cartridge.....	191, 193
Restricting Printer Functions.....	189
Right front cover.....	20
RPCS Raster Printer Drivers.....	154, 287

## S

Selecting the Control Panel Language.....	187
Setting Up a Client Computer.....	71
Setting Up a Server.....	70
Setting Up the Hardware.....	35
Sharing the Printer.....	70
SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	82, 110, 288
SNMP.....	130
Software Cannot Be Installed.....	205
Software on the CD-ROM.....	287
Specifications.....	292
Specifying Settings on [Accessories] Tab.....	99
Specifying Settings on the Control Panel.....	61
Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel.....	178
Specifying the Client Computer Settings.....	112
Specifying the Interface and Network Settings using the Printer's Control Panel.....	73
Specifying the Paper Settings using the Printer's Control Panel.....	94
Specifying the Print Server.....	111
Specifying the Printer Settings on a Macintosh.....	134
Specifying the Settings for Monitoring the Printer ...	112
Status Monitor.....	104, 254
Status Monitor Does Not Open.....	254
Status Monitor Errors.....	254
Symbols.....	16
System Menu.....	178
System Requirements.....	131

## T

TCP/IP.....	77, 315
The area where the printer is to be placed.....	35
Thick paper.....	84

Top cover.....	20	Where to Inquire.....	316
Trademarks.....	9		
Tray 1.....	20		
Tray 2.....	30		
Tray 2 cover.....	30		
Tray 3.....	30		
Tray 3 cover.....	30		
Troubleshooting.....	248		
Two Types of Printer Properties Dialog Box.....	97		

## U

Unauthorized Copy Control.....	102
Uninstalling.....	210
Uninstalling the Printer Driver.....	152, 210
Unlocking the Keys.....	189
up arrow, down arrow keys.....	22
Updating the Firmware.....	285
USB Connection is not Automatically Detected.....	208
USB slot.....	21
Used Ink Collector Unit.....	277
User's Notes.....	11
Using as the Windows Network Printer.....	81
Using DHCP.....	290
Using Notification via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	111
Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	110
Using the [Form Feed] Key to Remove Jammed Paper.....	217
Using the LPR Port.....	80
Using the Printer via a USB Connection from a Macintosh.....	134
Using the Printer via Network Connection from a Macintosh.....	135
Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port.....	77
Using the Standard TCP/IP Port.....	78
Using the Status Monitor.....	109
Using Web Browser.....	114

## V

Vent.....	21
-----------	----

## W

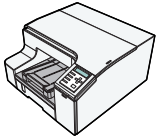
Wheel.....	31
When Not Using for a Long Period of Time.....	204

---

MEMO



**GelSprinter GX e5550N** User Guide





### Introduction

This manual contains detailed instructions and notes on the operation and use of this machine. For your safety and benefit, read this manual carefully before using the machine. Keep this manual in a handy place for quick reference.

Read this manual carefully before you use this product and keep it handy for future reference.

### Notes:

Contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

Some illustrations in this manual might be slightly different from the machine.

Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer.

Depending on which country you are in, certain units may be optional. For details, please contact your local dealer.

The model names of the machines do not appear in the following pages. Check the type of your machine before reading this manual.

- Type1: GelSprinter GX e3300N
- Type2: GelSprinter GX e3350N
- Type3: GelSprinter GX e5550N

For good print quality, the supplier recommends that you use genuine print cartridges from the supplier.

The supplier shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that might result from the use of parts other than genuine parts from the supplier with your office products.

### Power Source

- Type1: 100-240 V: 50/60 Hz 1.0-0.6 A
- Type2: 100-120 V: 50/60 Hz 1.0 A
- Type3: 100-120 V: 50/60 Hz 1.2 A

Voltage must not fluctuate more than 10%.

Please be sure to connect the power cable to a power source as above.

Confirm that the wall outlet is near the machine and freely accessible, so that in event of an emergency, it can be unplugged easily.

# Safety Information

When using this machine, the following safety precautions should always be followed.

---

## Safety During Operation

---

In this manual, the following important symbols are used:

 **WARNING:**

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, could result in death or serious injury.

 **CAUTION:**

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, may result in minor or moderate injury or damage to property.

---

## Environments Where the Machine Can be Used

---

 **WARNING:**

- ***Keep the machine away from flammable liquids, gases, and aerosols. A fire or an electric shock might occur.***
- ***Do not put any metal objects or containers holding water (e.g. vases, flowerpots, glasses) on the machine. If the contents fall inside the machine, a fire or electric shock could occur.***

 **CAUTION:**

- *Keep the machine away from humidity and dust. Otherwise a fire or an electric shock might occur.*
- *Do not place the machine on an unstable or tilted surface. If it topples over, an injury might occur.*
- *Make sure the room where you are using the machine is well ventilated and spacious. Good ventilation is especially important when the machine is used heavily.*

 **Note**

- When you use this machine for a long time in a confined space without good ventilation, you may detect an odd smell. To keep the workplace comfortable, we recommend that you keep it well ventilated.

**⚠ WARNING:**

- ***The supplied power cord is for use with this equipment only. Do not use with other appliances. Doing so may result in fire, electric shock, or injury.***
- ***Only connect the machine to the power source described on the inside front cover of this manual.***
- ***Connect the power cord directly into a wall outlet and never use an extension cord.***
- ***Do not plug or unplug the power cord with your hands wet. Otherwise, an electric shock might occur.***
- ***Avoid multi wiring.***
- ***Do not damage, break or make any modifications to the power cord. Do not place heavy objects on it. Do not pull it hard nor bend it more than necessary. These actions could cause an electric shock or fire.***
- ***Connect this machine only to a power source that matches the specifications shown in this manual and do not use an extension cord.***
- ***Use of this machine with extension cords and power sources other than those that match the specifications shown constitutes an electric shock and fire hazard.***
- ***Power cords that are damaged, broken, modified, trapped under heavy objects, pulled hard, or bent severely are electric shock and fire hazards.***
- ***Touching the prongs of the power cable's plug with anything metallic constitutes a fire and electric shock hazard.***
- ***It is dangerous to handle the plug with wet hands. Doing this may result in receiving an electric shock.***

---

**⚠ CAUTION:**

---

- *When the machine will not be used for a long time, unplug the power cord.*
- *When you disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet, always pull the plug (not the cable).*
- *Be sure to disconnect the plug from the wall outlet and clean the prongs and the area around the prongs at least once a year. Allowing dust to build up on the plug constitutes a fire hazard.*

**⚠ Important**

- Rating voltage of the connector for option: Max. DC 37 V.

---

## Handling the Main Machine

---

### **WARNING:**

---

- ***Make sure the wall outlet is near the machine and freely accessible so that in event of an emergency it can be unplugged easily.***
- ***If by any chance this machine falls over or a breakage occurs (e.g. the cover), turn off the main switch, unplug the power cable and contact your service representative. If you continue to use the machine in this state it could result in fire or electric shock.***
- ***If metal, liquid or foreign matter falls into the machine, turn off the operation and main power switches, and unplug the main power cord. Contact your service representative. Do not keep using the machine with a fault or defect.***
- ***Disposal can take place at our authorized dealer.***
- ***Keep the polythene materials (bags, gloves, etc.) supplied with this machine away from babies and small children at all times. Suffocation can result if polythene materials are brought into contact with the mouth or nose.***

### **CAUTION:**

---

- ***Type 1 weighs approximately 14.0 kg (30.9 lb.) (16.5 kg (36.4 lb.) with options installed). Type 2 weighs approximately 14.0 kg (30.9 lb.) (16.5 kg (36.4 lb.) with options installed). Type 3 weighs approximately 15.5 kg (34.2 lb.) (29.9 kg (65.9 lb.) with options installed).***
- ***Careless handling and over exertion when lifting can result in breakage and/or injury.***
- ***Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before you move the machine. While moving the machine, you should take care that the power cord will not be damaged under the machine.***
- ***Deliver to waste product collection areas. Do not dispose of via domestic refuse collection.***

---

## Handling the Machine's Interior

---

---

**⚠ WARNING:**

---

- *To avoid hazardous electric shock do not remove any covers or screws other than those specified in this manual. When the machine needs to be checked, adjusted, or repaired, contact your service representative.*
- *Do not take apart or attempt any modifications to this machine. There is a risk of fire, electric shock, explosion or loss of sight.*

---

## Handling the Machine's Supplies

---

### **WARNING:**

- **Keep the polythene materials (bags, gloves, etc.) supplied with this machine away from babies and small children at all times. Suffocation can result if polythene materials are brought into contact with the mouth or nose.**

### **CAUTION:**

- *Do not eat or swallow ink.*

- *If ink comes into contact with your eyes, rinse immediately in running water. For other symptoms, consult a doctor.*
- *If ink is ingested, induce vomiting by drinking a strong saline solution. Consult a doctor immediately.*
- *If your skin comes into contact with ink, wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water.*

- *Keep the ink or ink container out of reach of children.*

- *Avoid getting ink on your clothes or skin when removing a paper jam or replacing ink. If your skin comes into contact with ink, wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water.*
- *If ink gets on your clothing, wash with cold water. Hot water will set the ink into the fabric and may make removing the stain impossible.*

- *Be careful not to get ink on your clothes when replacing an ink container. Ink stains on clothes are hard to remove.*

- *Keep the ink collector unit out of reach of children.*
- *When you replace the ink collector unit, be careful not to get any ink on your clothes as it may not wash off easily.*

- *Our products are engineered to meet high standards of quality and functionality, and we recommend that you use only the expendable supplies available at an authorized dealer.*

# Usage of Manuals

Read this manual carefully before you use this machine and keep it handy for future reference. For safe and correct use, be sure to read the Safety Information in this manual before using the machine.



# Safety Labels of This Machine

This section explains the machine's safety information labels.

---

## Power Switch Symbols

---

The meanings of the symbols for the switches on this machine are as follows:

-  :STANDBY.

# Laws and Regulations

---

## Legal Prohibition

---

Do not copy or print any item for which reproduction is prohibited by law.

Copying or printing the following items is generally prohibited by local law:

bank notes, revenue stamps, bonds, stock certificates, bank drafts, checks, passports, driver's licenses.

The preceding list is meant as a guide only and is not inclusive. We assume no responsibility for its completeness or accuracy. If you have any questions concerning the legality of copying or printing certain items, consult with your legal advisor.

# ENERGY STAR Program

## ENERGY STAR® Program Requirements for Imaging Equipment



The ENERGY STAR® Program Requirements for Imaging Equipment encourage energy conservation by promoting energy efficient computers and other office equipment.

The program backs the development and dissemination of products that feature energy saving functions.

It is an open program in which manufacturers participate voluntarily.

Targeted products are computers, monitors, printers, facsimiles, copiers, scanners, and multi-function devices. Energy Star standards and logos are internationally uniform.

### ❖ Low-power Mode (Energy Saver mode)

This printer automatically lowers its power consumption 60 minutes after the last operation has been completed. To exit Low-power (Energy Saver) mode, press any key on the control panel. For more information about how to configure Energy Saver mode, see “Specifying System Settings using the Control Panel (System Menu)”, User Guide as a HTML file on the CD-ROM.

### ❖ Specifications

Energy Saver mode	Power Consumption	Type1: 2.0 W or less (100-120 V) 2.5 W or less (220-240 V) Type2: 3.4 W or less Type3: 3.4 W or less
	Default Interval	5 minutes
	Recovery Time	2 seconds or less

## ❖ Declaration of Conformity

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Responsible party: Ricoh Americas Corporation

Address: 5 Dedrick Place, West Caldwell, NJ 07006

Telephone number: 973-882-2000

Product Name: Printer

Model Number: GX e3300N, Aficio GX e3300N/GX e3350N, Aficio GX e3350N/GX e5550N, Aficio GX e5550N

## ❖ Note:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one more of the following measures:

**Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.**

**Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.**

**Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.**

**Consult the dealer or an experienced radio /TV technician for help.**

## ❖ Caution:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### Notes to users in the state of California

Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply, See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate)

### Note to users in Canada

#### Note:

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

### Remarque concernant les utilisateurs au Canada

#### Avertissement:

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Copyright © 2009

Printed in China

EN  J017-6622B



J0176622B

# 本機をお使いになるお客様へ

---

本書では本機を使用するための補足事項を記載しております。  
本体に同梱の使用説明書とあわせてお読みください。

電源ON/OFFは、必ず操作部の[電源]キーにて実施してください。  
電源プラグを外すなど、[電源]キー以外で電源 OFF を実施した場合、メンテナンスに使用するインクの量が増える可能性があります。

## Notes for Users

---

Please note the following additional information in this manual:

To switch the machine's power on and off, you must use the [Power] key on the control panel.

If the power cord becomes unplugged or the machine loses power through any means other than usage of the [Power] key, there is a possibility that the volume of ink used in maintenance will increase.

Copyright © 2009

Printed in China

JA (JP) EN (GB) EN (US) J017-6611



J0176611

# **About GelSprinter GX Series Firmware Updates**

## **(Windows)**

### **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1.	About Firmware Updates .....	2
2.	Operating Environment and Other Requirements .....	2
2.1.	Operating Environment .....	2
2.2.	Supported Operating Systems .....	2
2.3.	About Printer Drivers .....	2
3.	Update Cautions .....	3
3.1.	Caution 1 .....	3
3.2.	Caution 2 .....	3
3.3.	Caution 3 .....	3
3.4.	Caution 4 .....	3
3.5.	Caution 5 .....	3
3.6.	Caution 6 .....	3
4.	Disclaimer .....	3
5.	Firmware Update Operating Instructions .....	4
5.1.	Bidirectional-Enabled .....	5
5.2.	Bidirectional-Disabled .....	7
6.	Trademarks .....	10

## **1. About Firmware Updates**

Updates allow GelSprinter GX series models to receive the latest firmware.

## **2. Operating Environment and Other Requirements**

### **2.1. Operating Environment**

If the printer is connected to computers by network peer-to-peer or directly via a single USB cable, successful updates are guaranteed.

### **2.2. Supported Operating Systems**

1. Windows 2000
2. Windows XP
3. Windows XP (x64)
4. Windows Vista
5. Windows Vista (x64)
6. Windows Server 2003
7. Windows Server 2003 (x64)
8. Windows Server 2008
9. Windows Server 2008 (x64)

You must login as an administrator or as a user with administrator privileges.

### **2.3. About Printer Drivers**

Printing is possible provided the printer's driver is installed.

### **3. Update Cautions**

This section describes several things you must check for to ensure successful updates. You must read this section before performing updates.

\* For more details about cautions, refer to "ReadMe.txt".

#### **3.1. Caution 1.**

Before performing updates, check your computer's power options: make sure [System Standby:] / [System hibernates:] is set to "Never".

To check your computer's Power Options under Windows XP (procedures for other operating systems will differ):

1. Click the [Start] menu.
2. Point to [Settings], and then click [Control Panel].
3. Click [Power Options].
4. Select the [Power Schemes] tab (displayed by default).
5. Make sure [System standby:] / [System hibernates:] is set to "Never".

#### **3.2. Caution 2.**

During updates, make sure the printer's power is not turned off and the network or USB cable remains connected. Also, during updates, do not print any jobs or run applications that use the printer driver, Status Monitor, or SmartDeviceMonitor.

#### **3.3. Caution 3.**

If the printer's power is turned off or the USB or network cable is disconnected during updates, the update will fail and must be performed again.

#### **3.4. Caution 4.**

During updates, do not put the computer into [System standby:] / [System hibernates:] manually.

#### **3.5. Caution 5.**

If you want to use the SmartDeviceMonitor port to update the firmware over a network, be sure to uncheck the [Use Extended Features] check box of SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

#### **3.6. Caution 6.**

Bidirectional communication is not available if you are running SmartDeviceMonitor port under a 64-bit operating system. If you are using a 64-bit operating system, see "5.2. Bidirectional-Disabled", and perform the update procedure.

### **4. Disclaimer**

The manufacturer is not liable for any damages resulting from use or misuse of this software. Nor is the manufacturer liable for any damages resulting from use or misuse of this software with third parties.



## 5. Firmware Update Operating Instructions

These instructions explain how to update the firmware of the printer.

Before you start the update, make sure of the following:

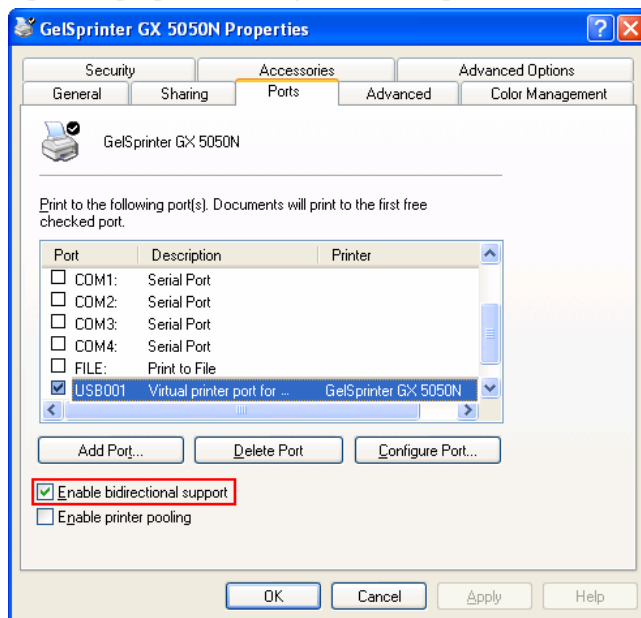
- The printer is in standby mode and the [Power] key is lit in green.
- No applications are running on the computer.
- The printer is connected to the computer with a USB cable or via network peer-to-peer.

The following procedure uses Windows XP screenshots and is based on the GelSprinter GX 5050N model.

### Note

Depending on the printer driver and its settings, update procedures might vary.

Open the properties dialog box for the printer in use and check the port status.



- If “bidirectional support” has been enabled in the printer properties dialog box:
    - ⇒ Update the firmware by following the update procedure shown in section 5.1.
  - If “bidirectional support” in the printer properties dialog box has been disabled:
    - ⇒ Update the firmware by following the update procedure shown in section 5.2.
- \* We recommend you enable bidirectional support.

## 5.1. Bidirectional-Enabled

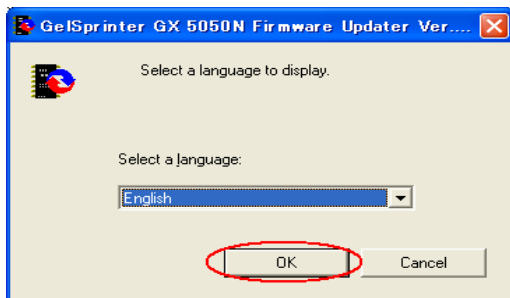
This section explains how to update the bidirectional-enabled printer driver.

1. Double-click [Product Name\_FirmwareUpdater\_VX\_XX.exe] to start the update.

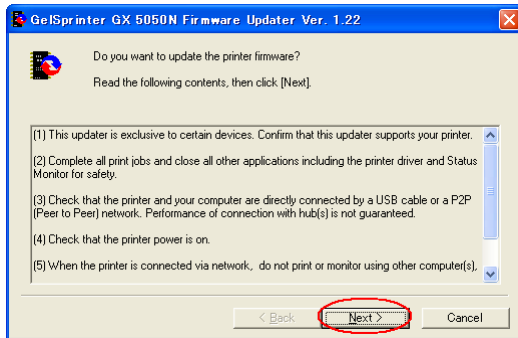
### Note

Product Name represents the machine name; VX\_XX, the version.

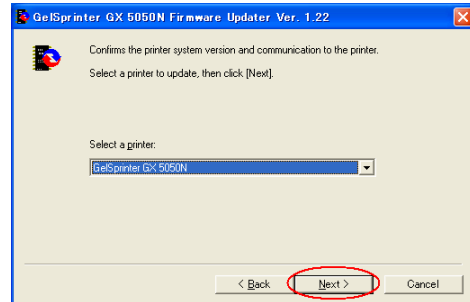
2. Select [English], and then click [OK].



3. The following screen appears. Check the displayed details, and then click [Next >].



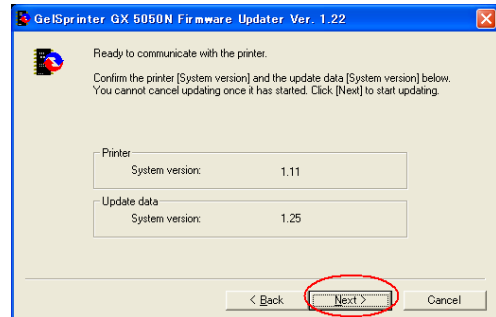
4. Select the printer name, and then click [Next >].



5. Check that the system version for [Update data] is later than the system version for [Printer], and then click [Next >].

### Note

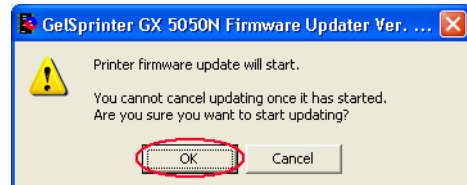
- The following screen is an example. The versions that actually appear may be different.



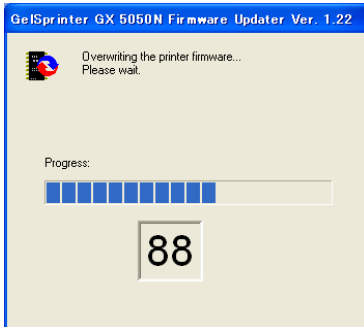
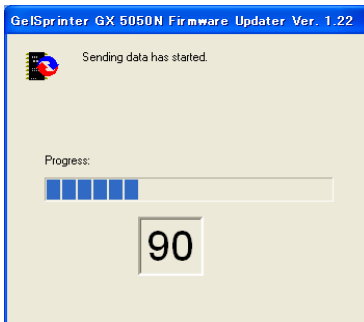
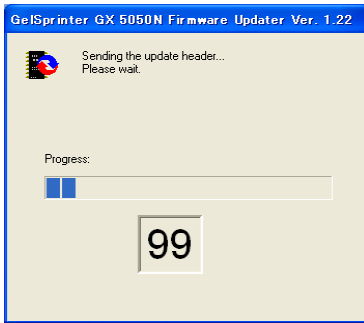
6. Click [OK].

### Note

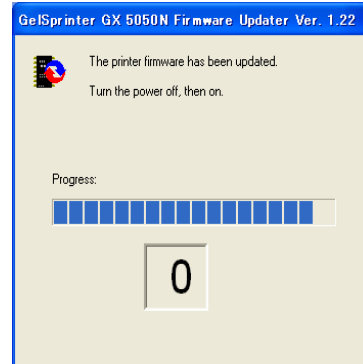
Do not switch the printer off while updating.



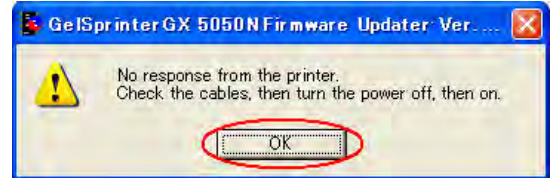
7. Updating starts.



8. The printer is switched back on automatically, after the screen shown below appears.



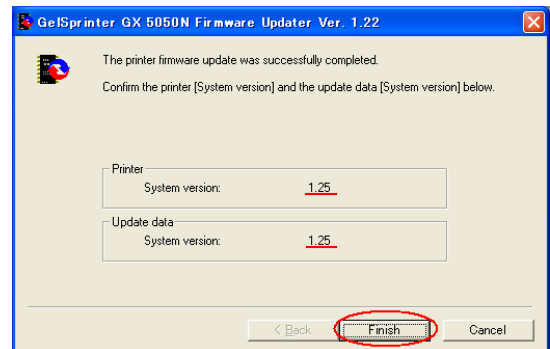
- If the following screen appears, switch the printer off and then back on, and then click [OK].



9. After updating, check the version, and then click [Finish].

Note

The following screen is an example. The versions that actually appear may be different.



10. Updating is complete.

## 5.2. Bidirectional-Disabled

This section explains how to update the bidirectional-disabled printer driver.

To update the firmware when bidirectional communication is disabled, see 3. “Update Cautions”, and then check the following:

- You must be able to view the printer’s control panel.
  - ⇒ The procedure requires you to check the printer’s status on the control panel.  
Make sure you are able to view the printer’s control panel when updating the firmware.
  
- Check the current firmware version and the firmware version you want to install.
  - ⇒ Take care to install only firmware versions that are later than the version that is already installed.

[How to check the current firmware version]

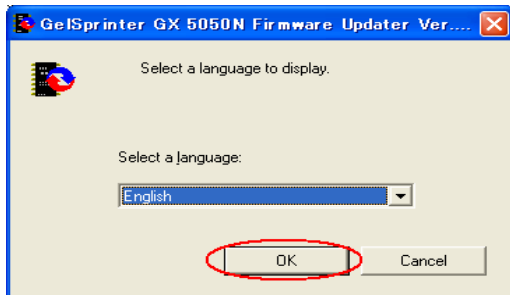
1. Press the [Menu] key on the printer’s control panel.
2. Select [List/Test Print].
3. Execute [Config. Page].
4. The System Summary is printed.
5. Check the version number under “System Version”.

1. Double-click [Product Name\_FirmwareUpdater\_VX\_XX.exe] to start the update.

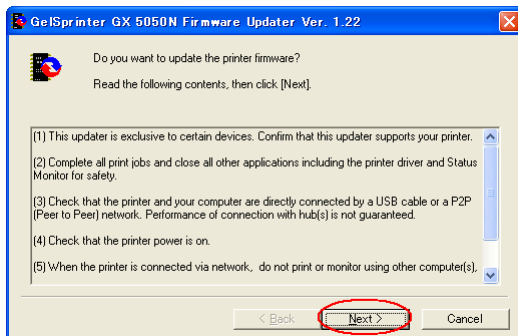
**Note**

Product Name represents the machine name; VX\_XX, the version.

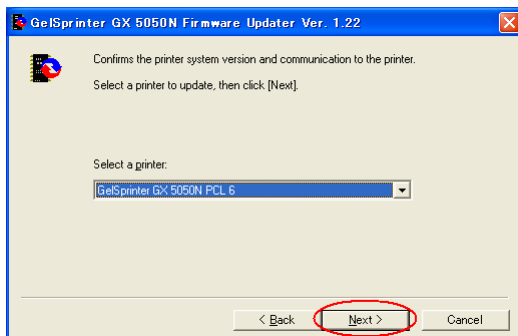
2. Select [English], and then click [OK].



3. The following screen appears. Check the displayed details, and then click [Next >].



4. Select the printer name, and then click [Next >].

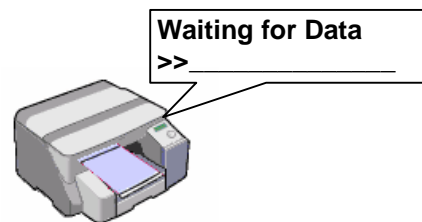


5. After checking the following, click [OK].

- A functional printer has been selected.
  - The printer is available and not currently inactive.
  - The printer is not offline.
  - There are no remaining print jobs displayed on the task bar.
- \* Check the control panel for the next step.

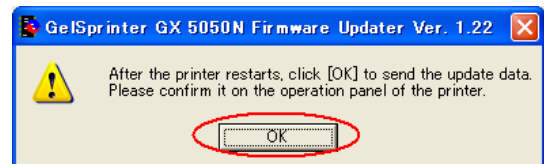


6. Check that the message "Waiting for Data" is displayed on the printer's control panel.



7. Click [OK].

- \* Check the control panel for the next step.

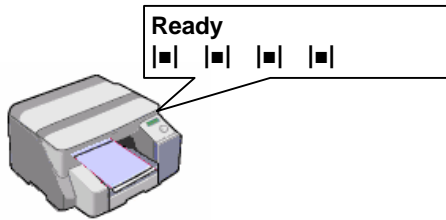


**8. Updating starts.**

Check the update progress displayed on the LCD of the printer's control panel.

The update progress should be as shown in the diagram on the right.

When the "Ready" message appears, the printer is ready to print.

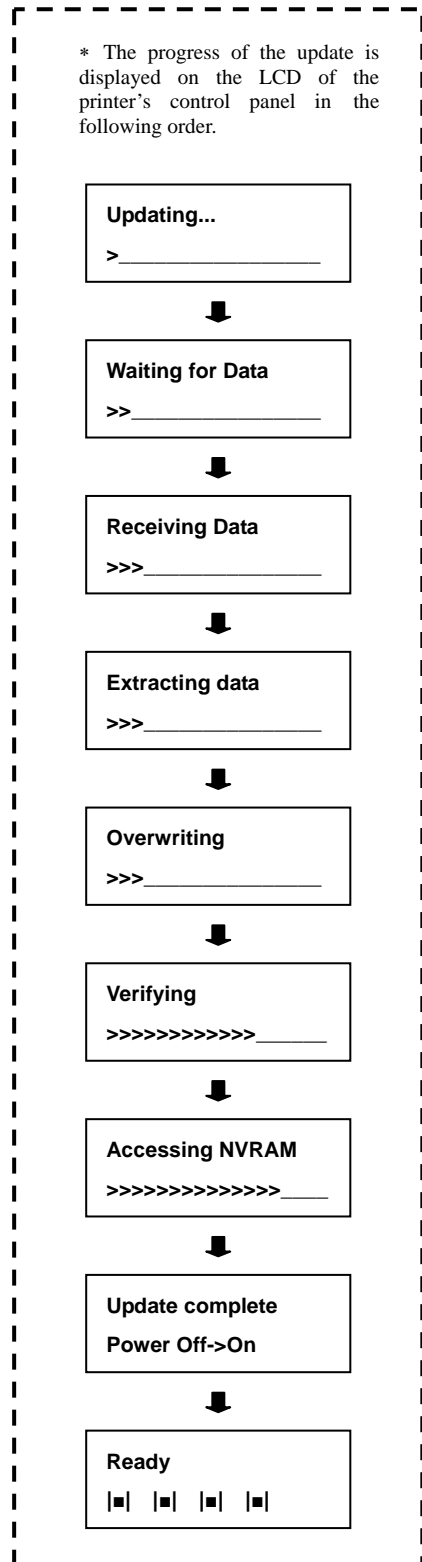


**9. After the update, check that the new firmware version is displayed.**

Use the following procedure to check the version of your printer.

1. Press the [Menu] key on the printer's control panel.
2. Select [List/Test Print].
3. Execute [Config. Page].
4. The System Summary is printed.
5. Check the version number under "System Version".

**10. The update is complete.**



## **6. Trademarks**

Adobe and Acrobat are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Pentium is a registered trademark of Intel Corporation.

Netscape is a registered trademark of Netscape Communication Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.

Macromedia and Flash are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the U.S. and/or other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies.

We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

- The product names of Windows 2000 are as follows:

- Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional

- Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Server

- Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Advanced Server

- The product names of Windows XP are as follows:

- Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition

- Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional

- The product names of Windows Server 2003 are as follows:

- Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Standard Edition

- Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Enterprise Edition

- Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Web Edition

- The product names of Windows Vista are as follows:

- Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Basic

- Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Premium

- Microsoft® Windows Vista® Business

- Microsoft® Windows Vista® Ultimate

- The product names of Windows Server 2008 are as follows:

- Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard

- Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise

# **About GelSprinter GX e3300N/GX e3350N Firmware Updates**

## **(Macintosh)**

### **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1.	About Firmware Updates .....	2
2.	Operating Environment and Other Requirements .....	2
2.1.	Operating Environment .....	2
2.2.	Supported Operating Systems .....	2
2.3.	About Printer Drivers .....	2
3.	Update Cautions .....	3
3.1.	Caution 1 .....	3
3.2.	Caution 2 .....	3
3.3.	Caution 3 .....	3
3.4.	Caution 4 .....	3
4.	Disclaimer .....	3
5.	Firmware Update Operating Instructions .....	4
6.	Trademarks .....	7



## **1. About Firmware Updates**

Updates allow GelSprinter GX e3300N/GX e3350N models to receive the latest firmware.

## **2. Operating Environment and Other Requirements**

### **2.1. Operating Environment**

If the printer is connected to computers by network peer-to-peer or directly via a single USB cable, successful updates are guaranteed.

### **2.2. Supported Operating Systems**

Mac OS X 10.3 or later

### **2.3. About Printer Drivers**

Printing is possible provided the printer's driver is installed.

### **3. Update Cautions**

This section describes several things you must check for to ensure successful updates.

You must read this section before performing updates.

#### **3.1. Caution 1**

Check your computer's System Preferences before performing updates.

Procedure for Mac OS X 10.5.1 (The procedures for your machine might differ slightly from those shown if you are using a different version of Mac OS):

1. Click [System Preferences...] on the [Apple] menu.
2. Click [Energy Saver] in the [System Preferences] dialog box.
3. Click [Sleep].
4. Make sure [Put the display(s) to sleep when the computer is inactive for:] is set to "Never".
5. Click [Schedule...].
6. Check that the [Sleep], [Restart], and [Shut Down] check boxes are not selected.

#### **3.2. Caution 2**

During updates, make sure the printer's power is not turned off and the network or USB cable remains connected. Also, during updates, do not print any jobs or run applications that use the printer driver, or Status Monitor.

#### **3.3. Caution 3**

If the printer's power is turned off or the USB or network cable is disconnected during updates, the update will fail and must be performed again.

#### **3.4. Caution 4**

During updates, do not put the computer into [Sleep], [Restart], or [Shut Down] manually.

### **4. Disclaimer**

The manufacturer is not liable for any damages resulting from use or misuse of this software.

Nor is the manufacturer liable for any damages resulting from use or misuse of this software with third parties.

## **5. Firmware Update Operating Instructions**

These instructions explain how to update the firmware of the printer.

Before you start the update, make sure of the following:

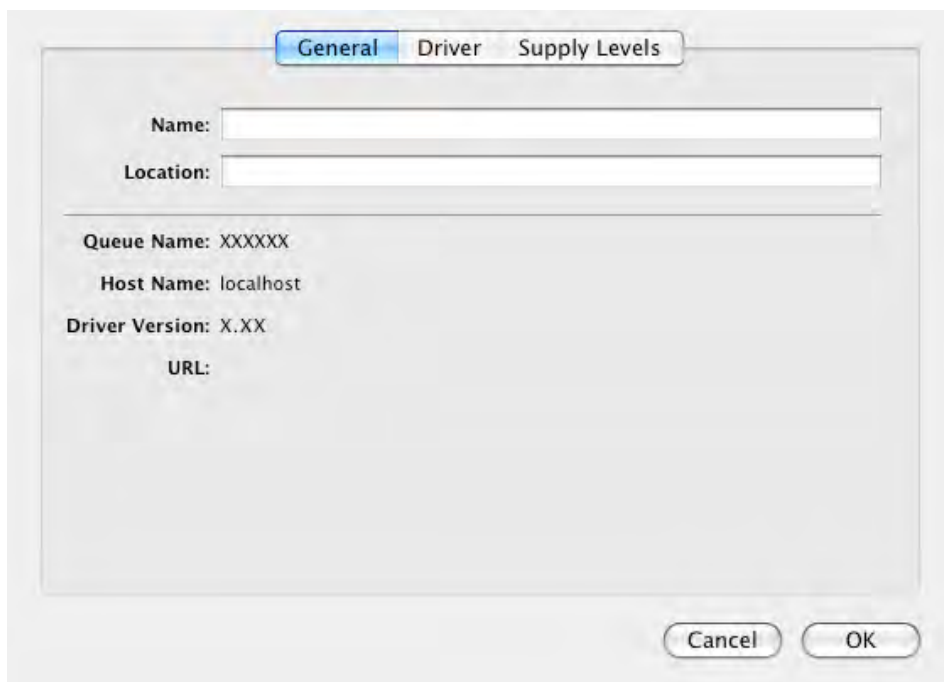
- The printer is turned on.
- The printer is in standby mode and the [Online] key is lit in blue.
- The printer driver is installed on the computer.
- No applications are running on the computer.
- The printer is connected to the computer with a USB cable or via network peer-to-peer.

### Note

The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.5.1. The procedures for your machine might differ slightly from those shown if you are using a different version of Mac OS.

Note that in the following procedure, "△" indicates a space and "␣" indicates one press of the [Return] key.

- 1** Click [System Preferences...] on the [Apple] menu.
- 2** Click [Print & Fax] in the [System Preferences] dialog box.  
The [Print & Fax] appears.
- 3** From [Print & Fax], double-click the printer you want to use.
- 4** On the [Printer List] toolbar, click [Info].
- 5** Check the displayed [Queue Name:].



- 6** Place the downloaded file on the desktop.
- 7** Double-click the downloaded file.  
A new folder with the same name as the downloaded file is created.
- 8** Click the Finder icon in the Dock.
- 9** Click [Utilities] on the [Go] menu.  
The [Utilities] folder appears.

**10** In the [Utilities] folder, double-click the Terminal icon.

The [Terminal] appears.

**11** On the [Terminal] screen, enter the following command:

```
cd Δ~/Desktop/Name of the created folder/ ↵
```

Enter the following command and check the name of the queue that you want to update:

```
lpstat Δ-p ↵
```

"printer XXXXXX is idle." will be displayed.

Note

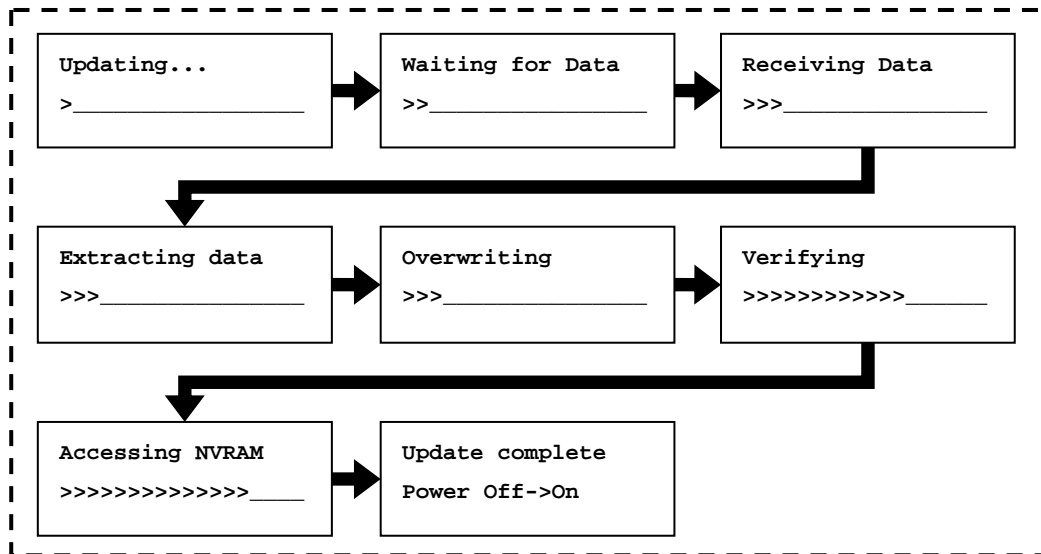
"XXXXXX" is the name of the queue.

**12** Enter the following command:

```
./update.sh ΔXXXXXX ↵
```

Updating will begin.

You can view the progress of the update on the printer's control panel.



If the update is successful, "Update complete Power Off->On" will appear on the printer's control panel.

If the update fails, "Update Error Retry update" will appear on the printer's control panel. If this error message is displayed, perform the update procedure again from the beginning.

**13** Check that "After your printer finishes updating the firmware, please reboot your printer." is displayed on the [Terminal] screen, and then enter the following command:

```
exit ↵
```

"logout" will be displayed.

- 14** Click [Quit Terminal] on the [Terminal] menu.  
The [Terminal] screen will close.
- 15** Press and hold down the printer's [Power] key until the power turns off.
- 16** Press the printer's [Power] key again to turn the power back on.
- 17** The update is complete.

## **6. Trademarks**

Mac OS, Macintosh, and Mac are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

# **About Network Interface Board Firmware Updates**

## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b>1. About Firmware Updates .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>2. Operating Environment and Other Requirements.....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>2.1 Operating Environment .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>2.2 Recommended Web Browsers.....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>3. Update Cautions.....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>3.1 Caution 1.....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>3.2 Caution 2.....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>3.3 Caution 3.....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>3.4 Caution 4.....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>4. Disclaimer .....</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>5. Update Procedure .....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>6. Trademarks.....</b>	<b>16</b>

## **1. About Firmware Updates**

You can update the firmware of the Network Interface Board on the GX series models.

## **2. Operating Environment and Other Requirements**

### **2.1 Operating Environment**

A Web browser is required.

To use the Web browser, you must first configure the appropriate TCP/IP settings on both the computer and printer.

### **2.2 Recommended Web Browsers**

- Windows:

- Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher

- Firefox 2.0 or higher

- Mac OS:

- Safari 2.0 or higher

- Firefox 2.0 or higher

For details about how to set up and use the Web browser, see the User Guide supplied with the printer.



### **3. Update Cautions**

This section describes several things you must check for to ensure successful updates. You must read this section before performing updates.

#### **3.1 Caution 1.**

Before performing updates, check your computer's power options: make sure [System Standby:] / [System hibernates:] is set to "Never".

#### **Checking Your Power Settings**

(This procedure is for Windows XP. Procedures vary depending on your operating system and its settings.)

1. Click the [Start] menu.
2. Point to [Settings], and then click [Control Panel].
3. Click [Power Options].
4. Select the [Power Schemes] tab (displayed by default).
5. Make sure [System standby:] / [System hibernates:] is set to "Never".

#### **3.2 Caution 2.**

During the update, do not switch the printer off, disconnect the network cable, or run applications that use the printer driver, Status Monitor, or SmartDeviceMonitor.

#### **3.3 Caution 3.**

If the printer's power is switched off or the network cable is disconnected during the update, you must perform the update procedure again.

#### **3.4 Caution 4.**

During updates, do not put the computer into [System standby:] / [System hibernates:] manually.

#### **4. Disclaimer**

The manufacturer is not liable for any damages resulting from use or misuse of this software.  
Nor is the manufacturer liable for any damages resulting from use or misuse of this software with third parties.

## 5. Update Procedure

This manual explains how to update the firmware of the Network Interface Board for the GX series models.

### ■ Before Performing Updates

Check the following:

- The printer's "Online" key is lit (the printer is ready to print).
- No other applications are running.

### ■ Update Procedure

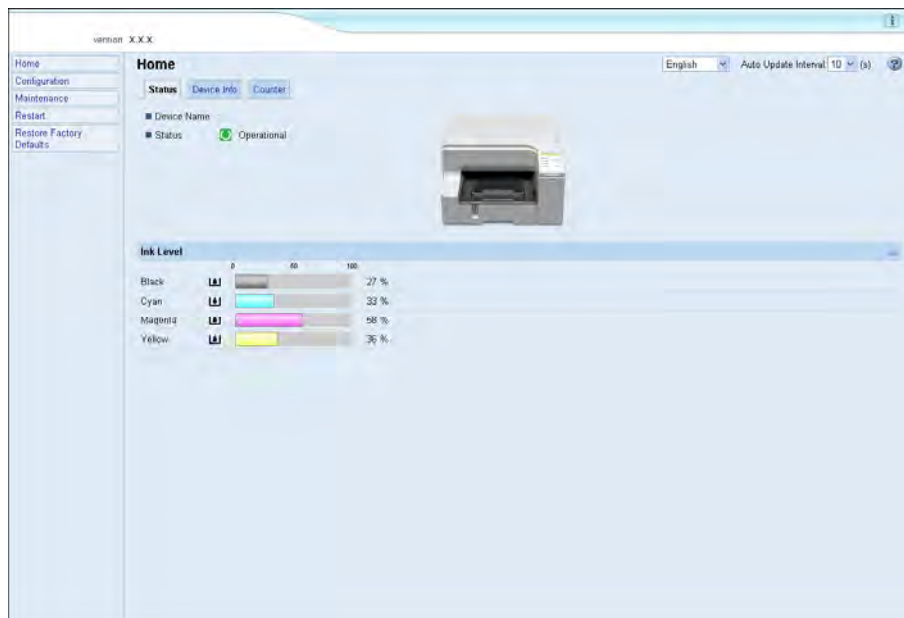
This procedure is for Windows XP.

The display samples may differ from the actual display.

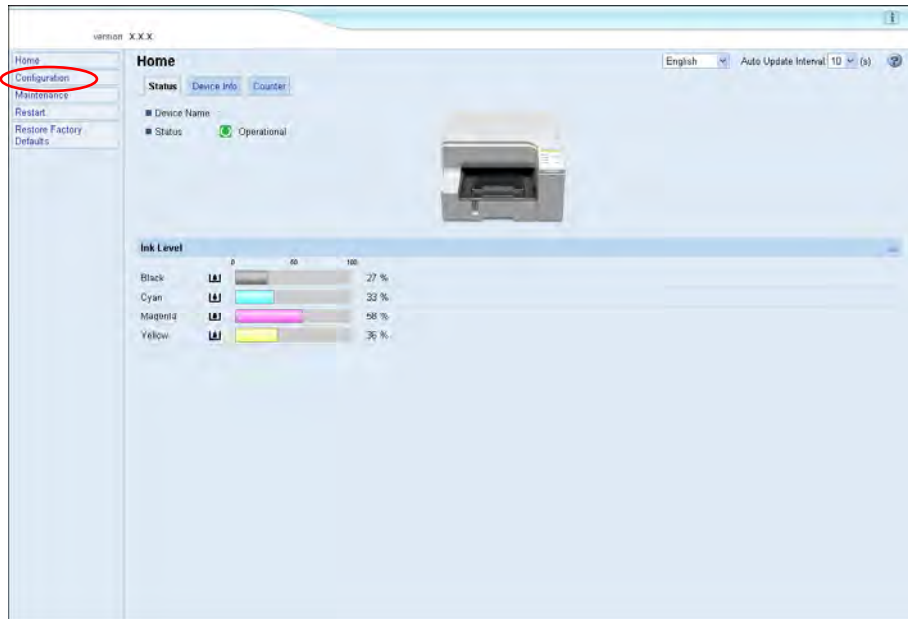
1. Launch the Web browser.

2. In the Web browser's address bar, enter “http://(printer's IP address)” to access the printer.

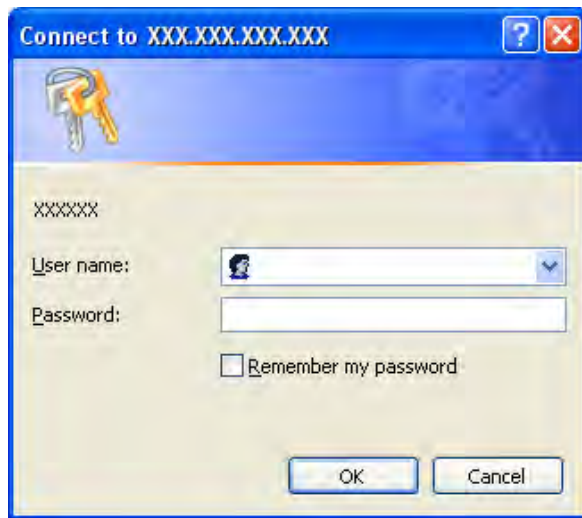
The printer's top page appears.



3. Click [Configuration].



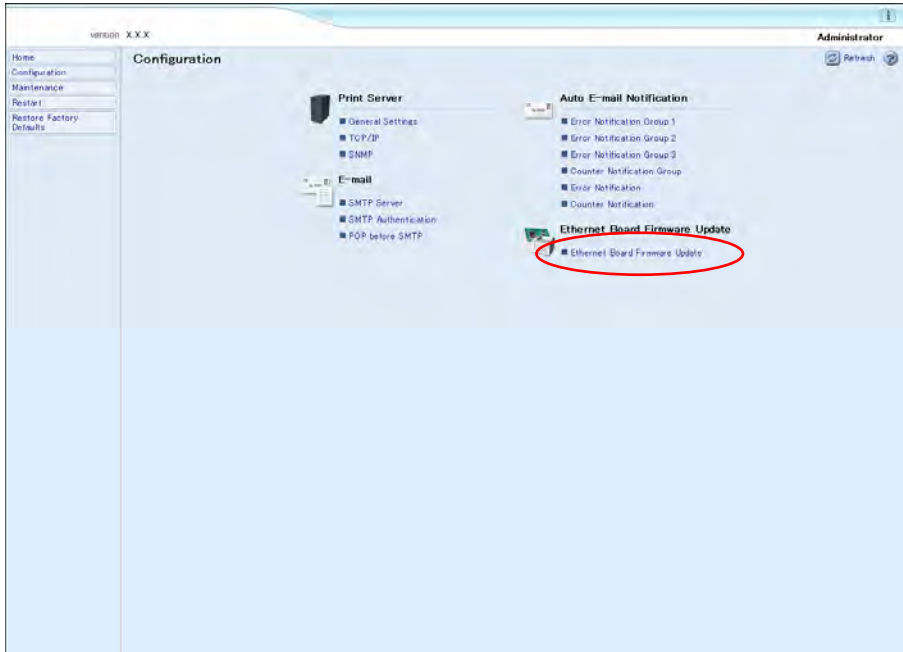
A dialog box for entering the user name and password appears.



4. In the “User name” field, enter “admin” and in the “Password” field, enter the corresponding password, and then click [OK].

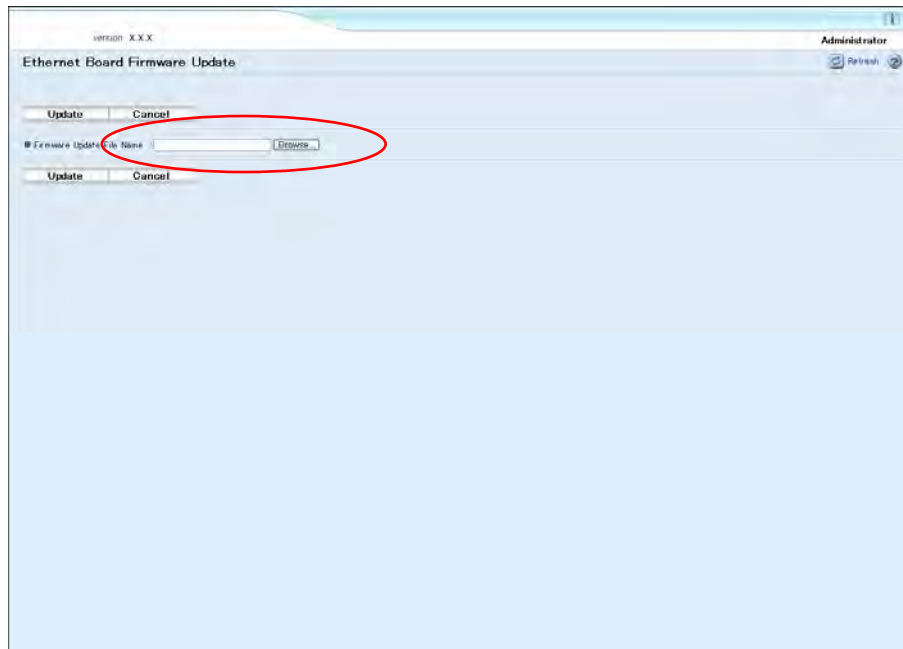
Note that there is no default password. Therefore, unless a password has been specified, leave the password field blank.

5. Click [Ethernet Board Firmware Update].



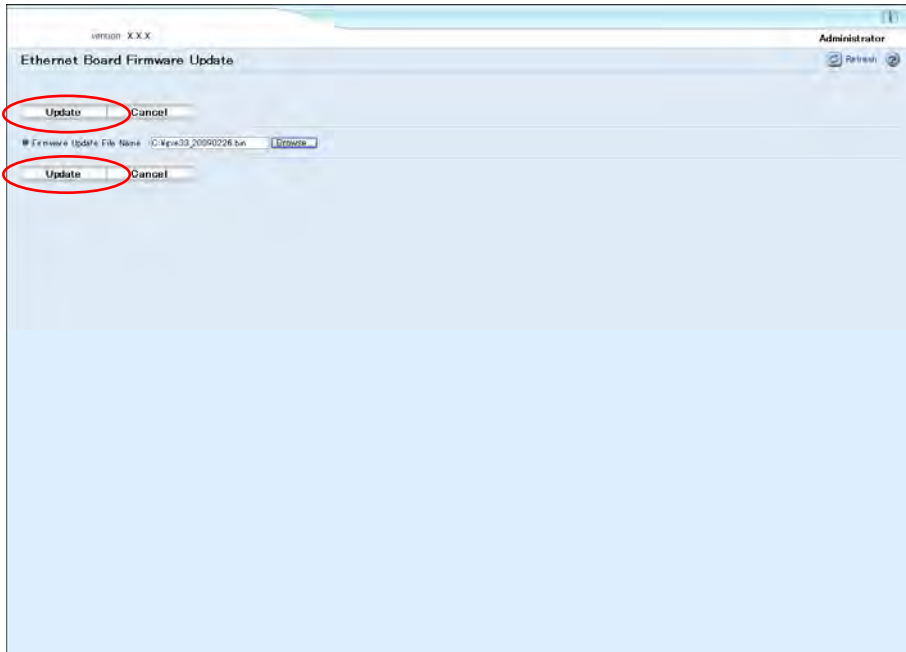
6. Select the updater file **\*\*\*.bin**.

You can select the file by entering the file path in the “Firmware Update File Name:” field, or by clicking [Browse] and locating the file.



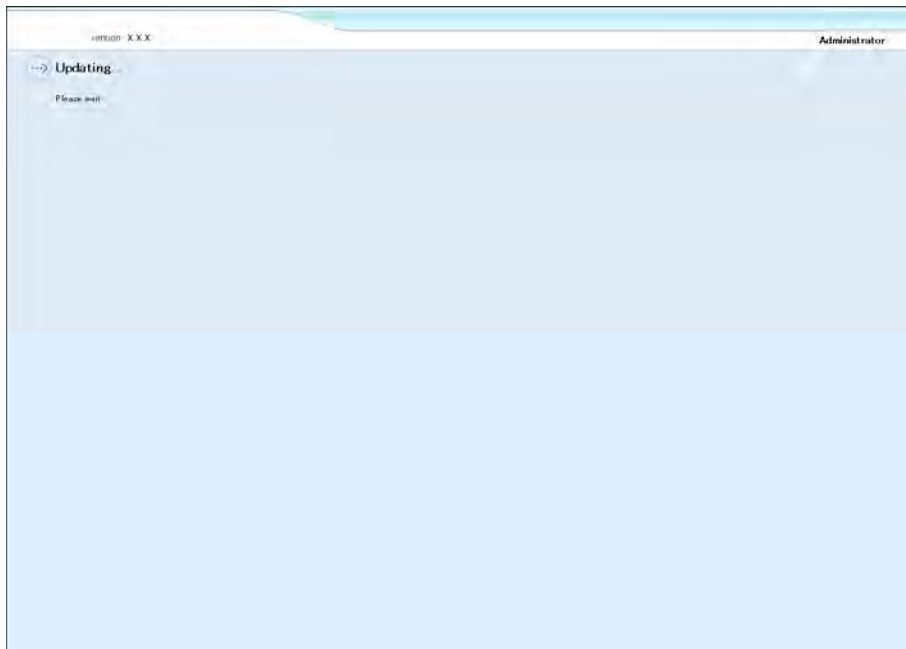
7. Click [Update].

Updating begins.

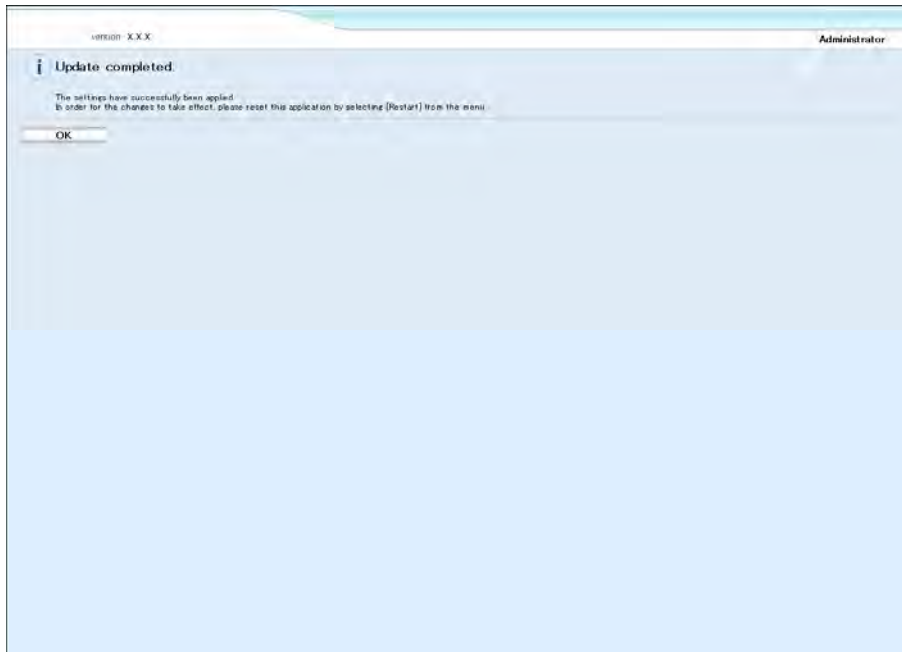


The update takes some time. During the update, do not use the Web browser, computer, or printer.

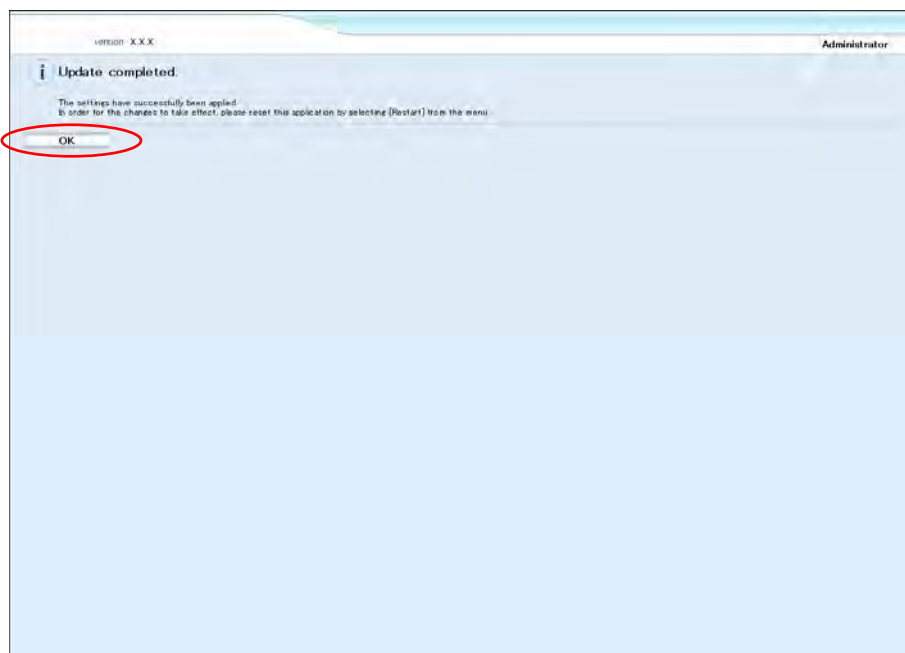
When the update starts, the following message appears.



When the update is complete, the following message appears.

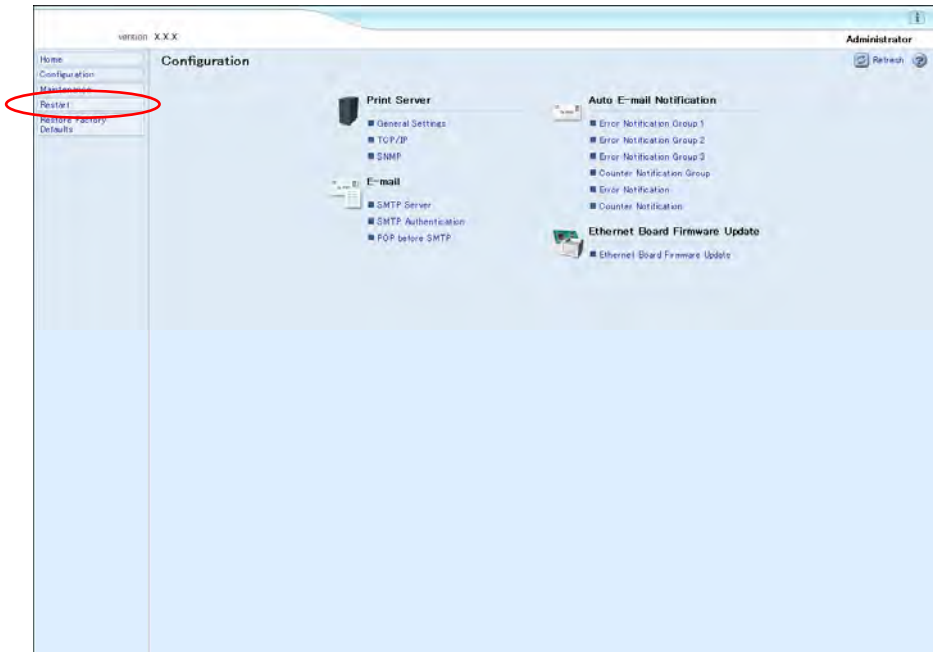


8. Click [OK].



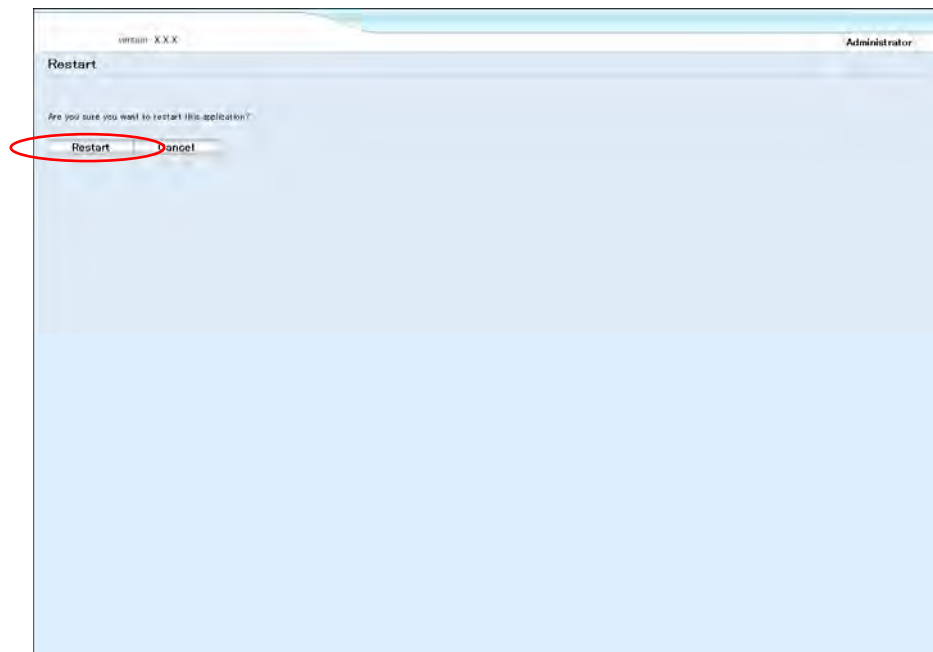
The Configuration page appears.

9. Click [Restart].



10. Click [Restart].

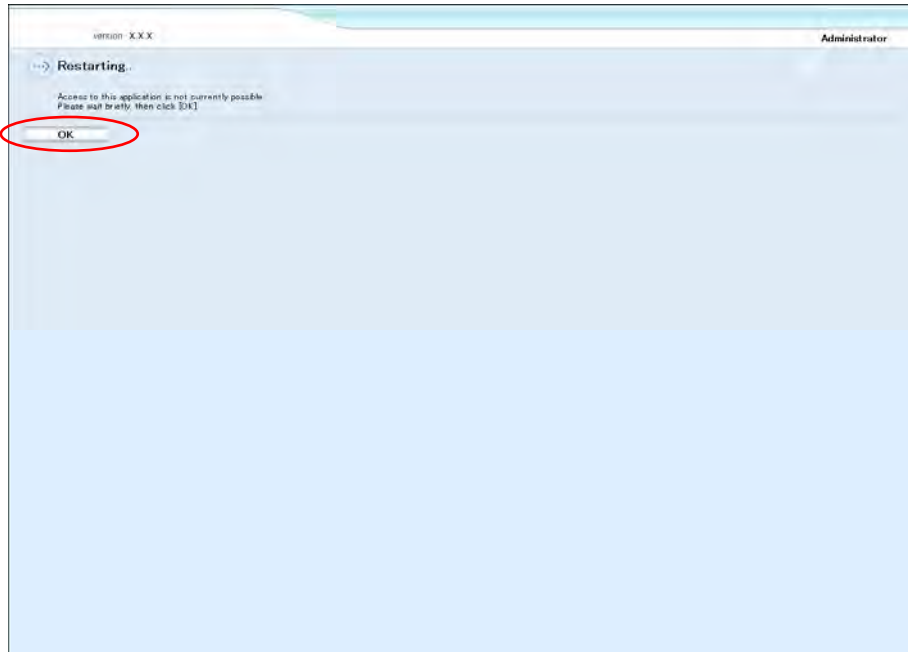
The network interface board is restarted.





11. Click [OK].

Restarting takes some time. Wait a while, and then click [OK].

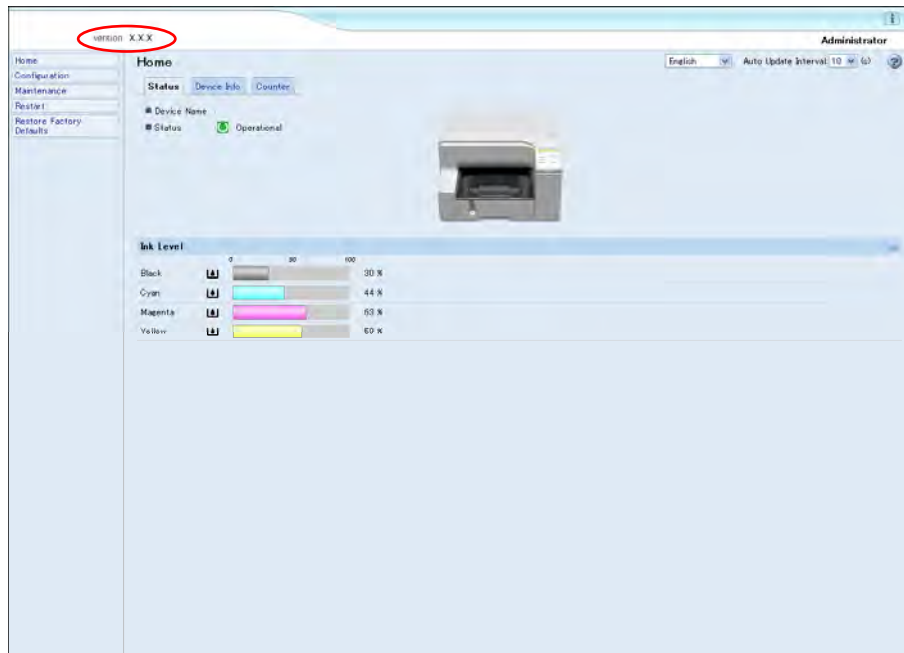


12. The printer's top page appears.\*<sup>1</sup>

On this page, check that the firmware has been updated.

If the firmware has been updated, a new version number will be displayed.

If the version number has not changed, the update might have failed. In this case, see p. 13, “If the Update Fails”.



\*1 If [DHCP] has been enabled, the printer's IP address might have changed, and the printer's top page will not appear.

If the printer's top page does not appear, obtain the printer's IP address from the printer's control panel, and then connect to that IP address.

■ If the Update Fails

1. The update might fail if attempted during printing or if the wrong file was selected.

If the dialog box for selecting the updater file appears, go back to Step 6, and be sure to select the correct file.

< Possible Causes of Update Failure >

- The update was attempted during printing.
- The update coincided with an update from another computer.
- The updater file is invalid.

If the printer's top page appears, go back to Step 3.

< Possible Causes of Update Failure >

- The wrong file was selected as the updater file.

2. There was a power failure.

Go back to Step 1.

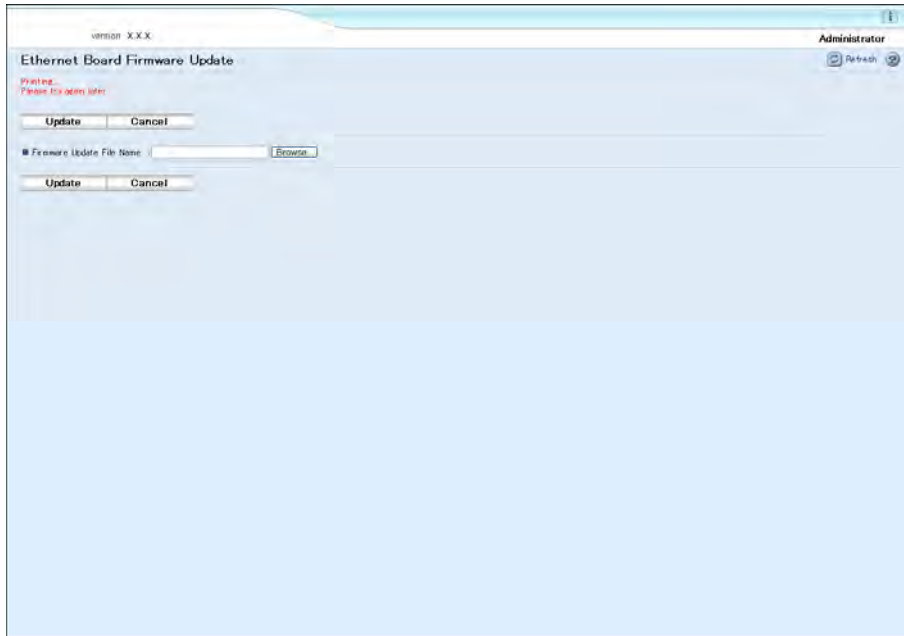
If there was a power failure, you might not be able to access the printer over the network. If this is the case, switch the printer off, hold down button located above the Ethernet port, then, without releasing the button, switch the printer back on and hold down the button at least five more seconds.

This procedure resets both the firmware and settings of the interface board to their factory-set states.

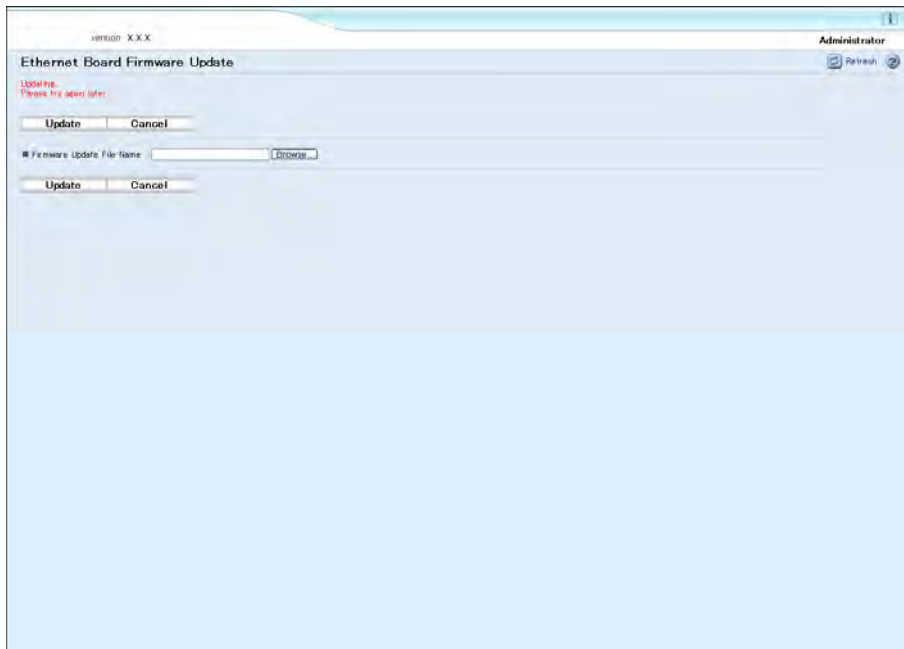
Specify the network settings again, and then go back to Step 1.

■ Possible Causes of Update Failure

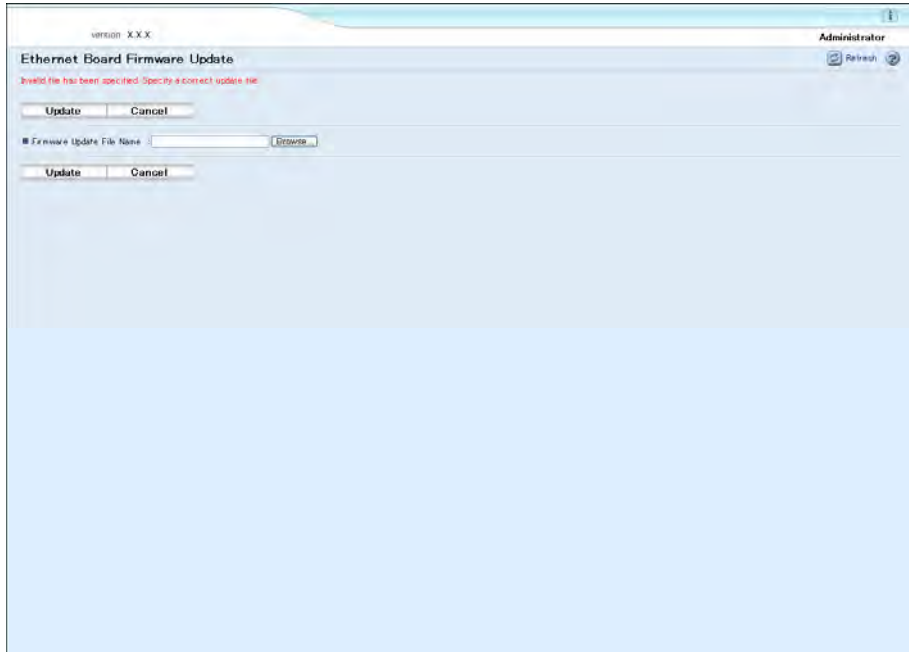
1. The update is being attempted during printing.



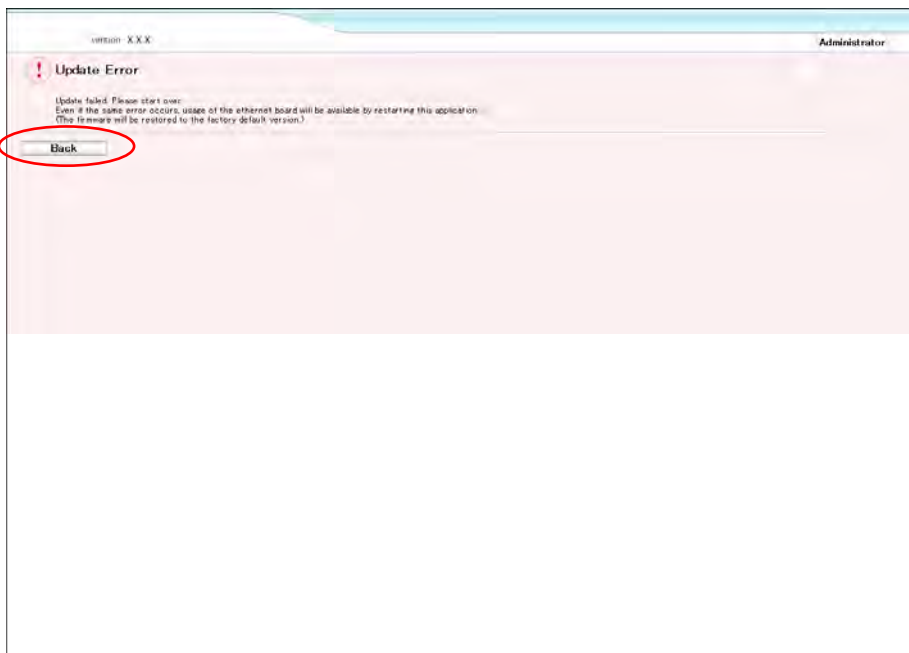
2. The firmware is being updated from another computer.



3. The updater file is invalid.



4. The wrong file has been selected as the updater file.



In this case, you can return the printer's top page by clicking [Back].

## 6. Trademarks

Microsoft<sup>®</sup>, Windows<sup>®</sup>, Windows Server<sup>®</sup>, and Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Mac OS, Macintosh, and Safari are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies.

We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

- The product names of Windows 2000 are as follows:

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 Advanced Server

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 Server

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 Professional

- The product names of Windows XP are as follows:

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Professional

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Home Edition

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Media Center Edition

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Tablet PC Edition

- The product names of Windows Vista are as follows:

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> Ultimate

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> Business

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> Home Premium

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> Home Basic

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> Enterprise

- The product names of Windows Server 2003 are as follows:

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2003 Standard Edition

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2003 Enterprise Edition

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2003 Web Edition

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2003 Datacenter Edition

- The product names of Windows Server 2003 R2 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Standard Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Enterprise Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Datacenter Edition

- The product names of Windows Server 2008 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Datacenter

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 for Itanium-based Systems

Microsoft® Windows® Web Server 2008

Microsoft® Windows® HPC Server 2008

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard without Hyper-V™

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise without Hyper-V™

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Datacenter without Hyper-V™

Copyright © 2009

EN

US / EN

GB

J017-6630



**Before installing the unit**



**Be sure to install the carriage unit by the date printed on the bar code seal.**  
If you do not, this can adversely affect the ink in the cartridges and the preservative liquid in the head tank, which can cause image quality problems.

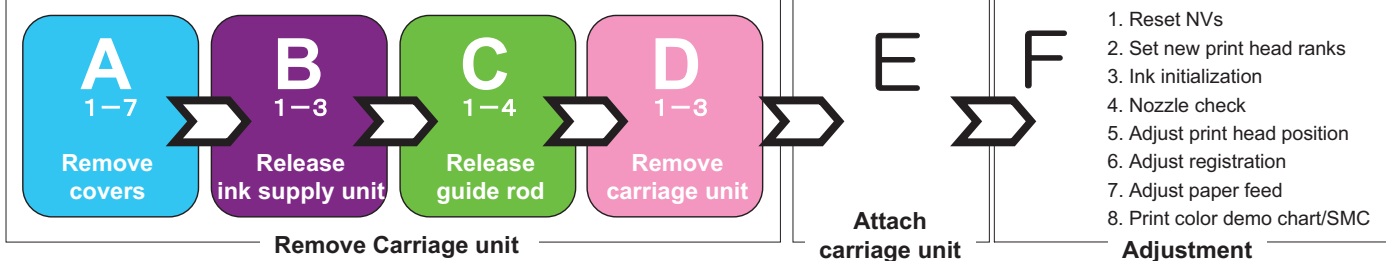
**Caution**

1. Make sure to turn off the printer main power before beginning the replacement.
2. Do not touch the print head nozzle, as this may cause the print quality to decrease.
3. Do not touch the ink level feeler, as this may cause ink leaks.
4. If ink drips onto the belt, clean it off with a soft cloth.

**Accessories**

Refer to the Appendix: Accessories.

Following is the overall carriage units replacement flow.



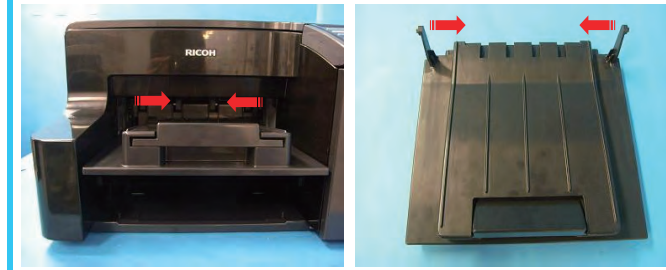
**A-1 Remove paper tray**

Remove the paper tray.



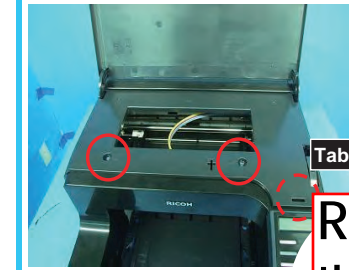
**A-2 Remove output tray**

Remove the output tray by pushing the hinges on both sides.



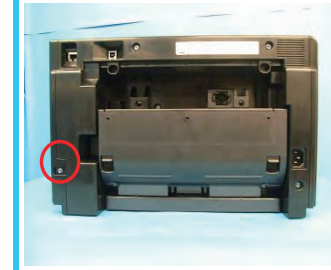
**A-3 Remove inner/upper covers**

Remove the screws (x2), tab.

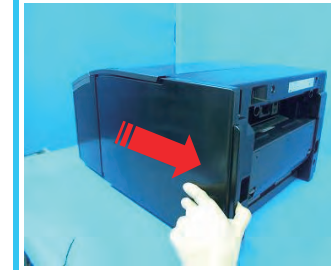


**A-4 Remove right cover**

1. Remove the screw (x1).



2. Slide the right cover backward.

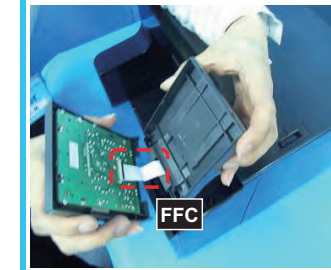


**A-6 Remove operation panel**

1. Remove the screws (x2).

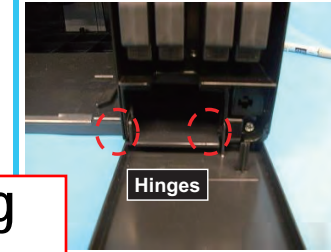


2. Remove the FFC.



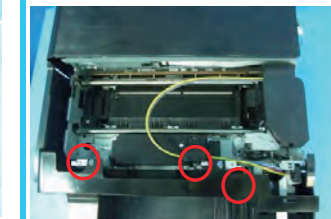
**A-5 Remove ink cartridge cover**

Unlock the hinges.



**A-7 Remove front cover**

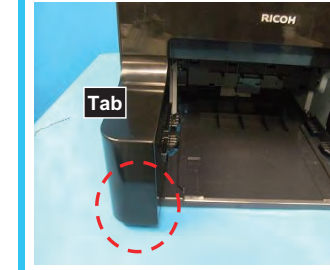
1. Loosen the screws (x3).



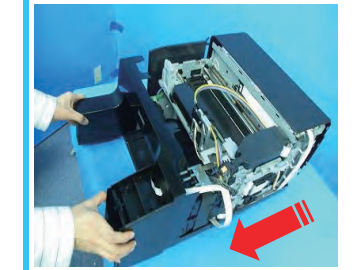
2. Remove the screw (x1).



3. Release the tab on the front left corner of the machine.

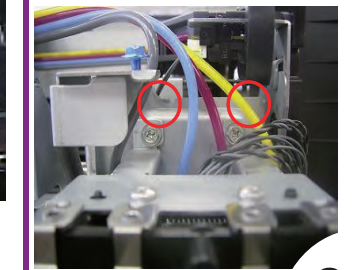
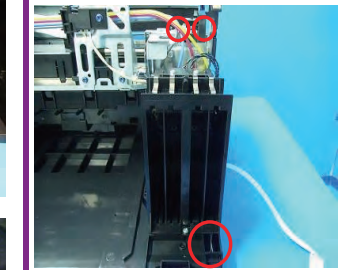


4. Pull out the cover.



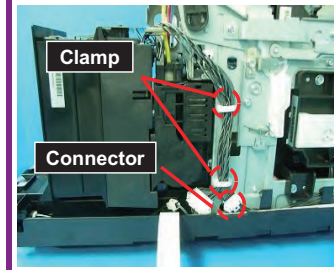
**B-1 Release ink supply unit**

1. Remove the ink cartridges.  
2. Remove the screws (x3).

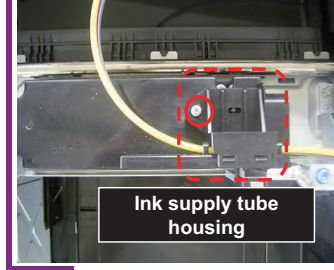


**Replacing the Ink Collector Unit GX**

3. Remove the clamps and connector.

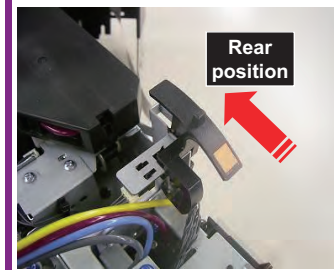


4. Remove the screw (x1).



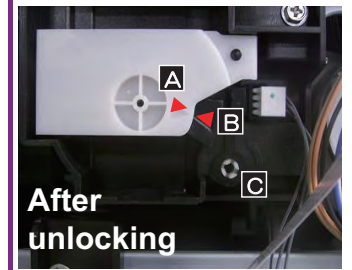
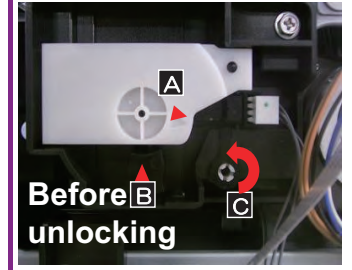
**B-2 Push carriage position lever**

Set the carriage position lever to the rear position.

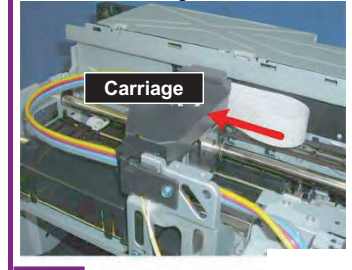


**B-3 Release carriage**

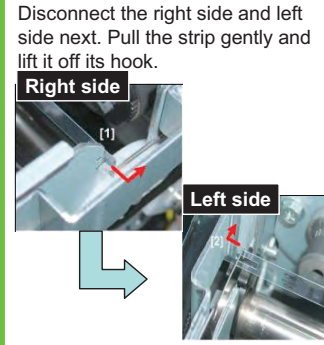
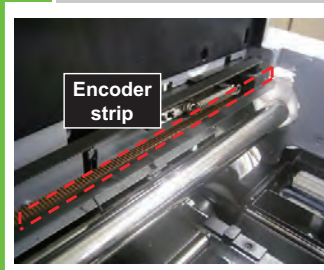
1. Insert the tip of a screwdriver into the hole [C] and turn it counter-clockwise until the two triangle marks [A] and [B] are aligned.



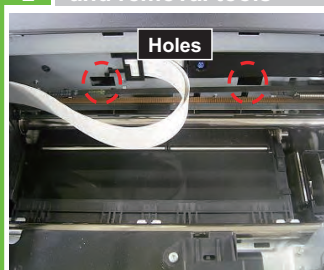
2. Push the carriage to the center.



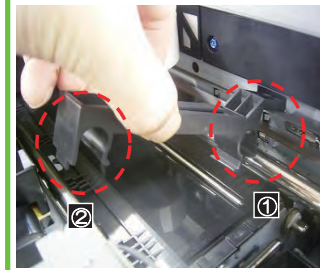
**C-1 Remove encoder strip**



**C-2 Attach the fastening and removal tools**

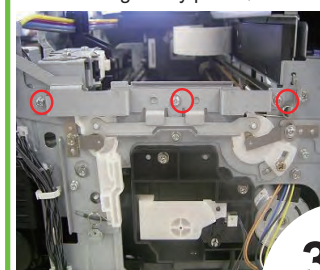


Insert the end of the tool into the hole. Fasten the rear end of the tool to the rear guide rod. Fasten the front end of the tool to the guide rod.

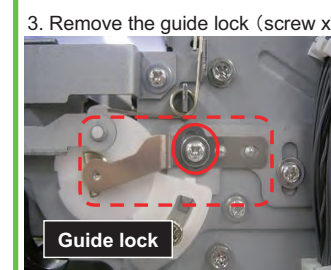
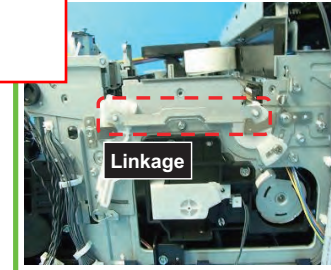


**C-3 Unlock guide rod**

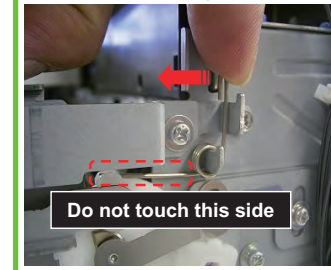
1. Remove right stay plate (screw x3).



2. Remove the linkage.

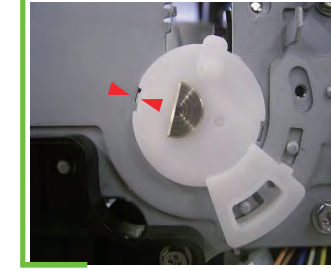
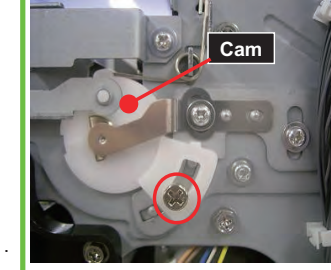


4. Remove the spring.



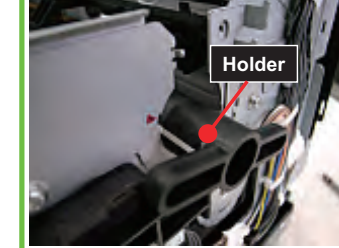
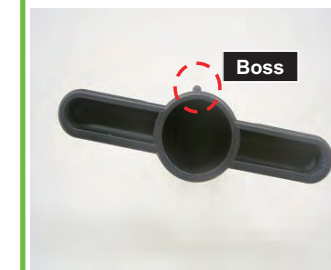
**CAUTION:** Make sure to remove the spring by disconnecting the top end (shown by the arrow in the photo).

5. Remove the screw, rotate the cam until the triangle marks are aligned, and then remove the cam.

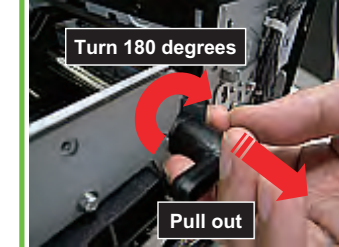


**C-4 Pull out guide rod**

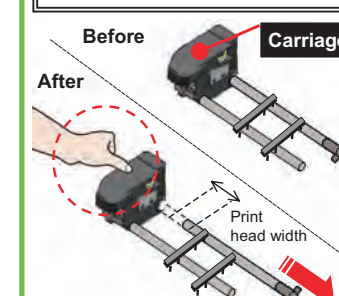
1. Attach the holder to the end of the guide rod.



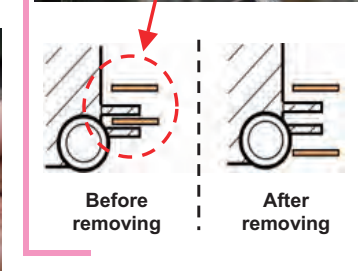
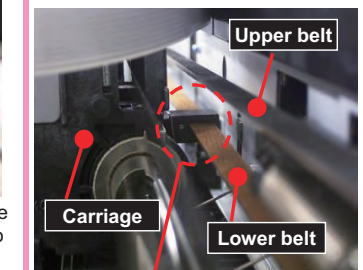
2. Slide the holder onto the end of the rod, and then rotate it 180 degrees to lock it in place. Finally, pull out the holder and rod together.



**CAUTION:** Make sure to secure the carriage unit in place with one hand while you remove the guide rod with the other hand.



**D-1 Remove the belt from carriage**

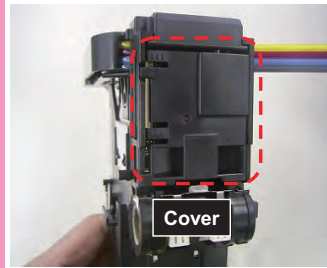


**D-2 Remove carriage FFC**

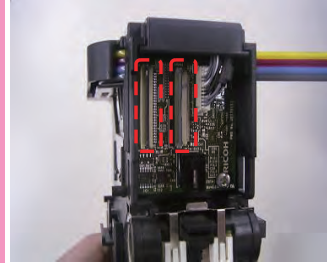
**CAUTION:**  
- Make sure not to touch the grease on the guide rod.  
- Do not touch ink level feeler.  
- Keep the carriage unit in the orientation shown in the photo (Do not rotate it or tip it sideways).



1. Remove the cover from the rear side of the carriage unit.



2. Remove the 2 FFCs.

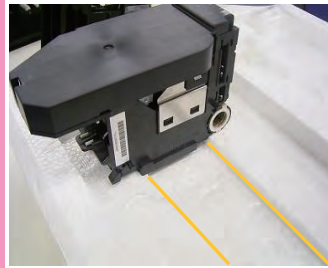
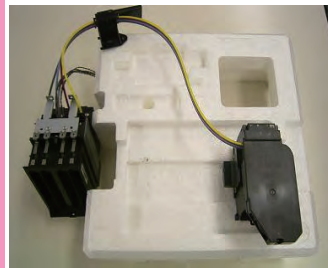


3. Secure the FFC to the jigs.



### D-3 Remove carriage

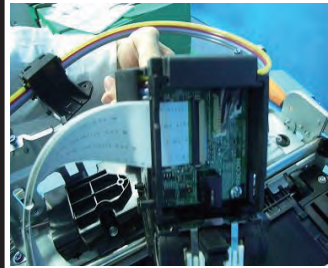
Fit the carriage unit into the Styrofoam holders as shown in the photo.



Removal of the carriage unit completed.

### E Attach new carriage

1. Attach the 2 FFCs.



**CAUTION:**  
 • Be careful not to fold them.  
 • One FFC is longer than the other. Make sure to attach the longer FFC in the right position (and shorter FFC in the left position).

Do not fold the FFCs



2. Attach the carriage's rear cover.

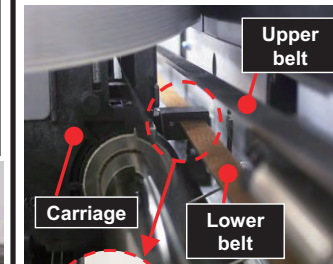
3. Remove the humidity retention cap.



4. Re-insert the guide rod into the carriage. (See Step C-4)

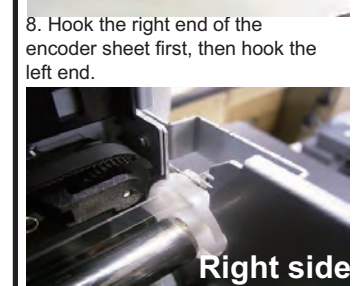
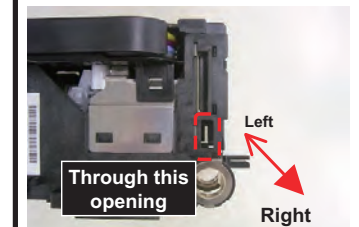
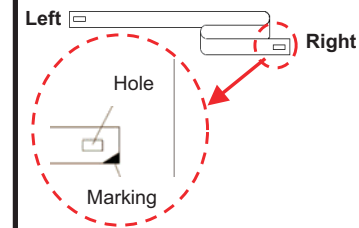
5. Remove the jigs. (See Step C-2)

6. Attach the belt.

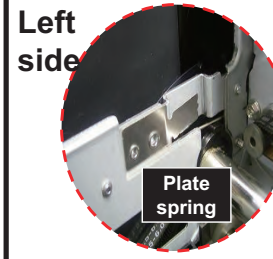


7. Pass the bundled encoder strip (not the original encoder strip) through the opening between the carriage sensors.

5



**CAUTION:**  
 If you wipe the surface from the left side, this may damage the plate spring.

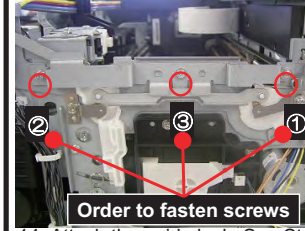


10. Attach the cam (screw x1). See Step C-3-5.

11. Attach the spring. See Step C-3-4.

12. Attach the linkage. See Step C-3-2.

13. Attach the stay plate.



14. Attach the guide lock. See Step C-3-3.

15. Attach the ink supply unit See Step B-1.

16. Attach the front cover. See Step A-7.

17. Attach the operation panel. See Step A-6.

18. Attach the right cover. See Step A-4.

19. Attach the upper/inner cover. See Step A-3.

20. Attach the ink cartridge cover. See Step A-5.

21. Attach the output tray and paper tray. See Step A-1 and 2.

22. Reset the envelope lever to standard position. See Step B-2.

Carriage attachment completed.

### F Adjustment after replacement

1. Open the ink cartridge cover before you turn on the machine main power. Otherwise the machine will perform auto maintenance and consume a large amount of ink.

2. Enter SP mode.

3. Execute SP5101.  
 (Some values related to print head will be reset)

4. Install the starter ink cartridges.

5. Install the ink collector unit.

6. Close the ink cartridge cover.

**IMPORTANT:** Ink initialization will start. During the initialization, do not open any covers, or turn off the power. The entire process will take about seven minutes.

7. Print out the nozzle check pattern.

[Menu]⇒[Maintenance]⇒[Nozzle check]

**IMPORTANT:** Check to see if the nozzle is clogged, and if it is, perform print head cleaning.

8. Adjust the print head position.

[Menu]⇒[Maintenance]⇒[Head Position]\*1

9. Adjust the registration.

[Menu]⇒[Maintenance]⇒[Registration]\*2

10. Adjust the paper feed.

[Menu]⇒[Maintenance]⇒[Adj. Paper Feed]

11. Print out the color demo page.

[Menu]⇒[List/Test Print]⇒[Color Demo Page]

12. Print out the engine summary (SP 5200).

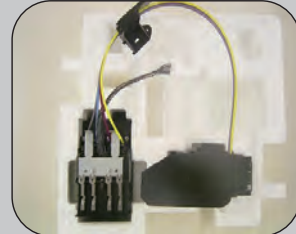
13. Replace the ink collector unit and ink cartridges with the ones the customer was originally using.

\*1: 「Standard」-「High Speed」-「High Quality」 \*2: Only 「Tray 1-Plain Paper」

6

### Appendix: Accessories

1. Carriage unit



2. Procedure



3. Waste ink tank



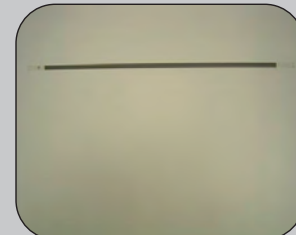
4. Ink cartridges



5. Guide rod fastening tool (x2; right side of photo), guide rod removal tool (x1; left side of photo)



6. Main scan encoder sheet



### Notice:

Please be informed of the following as this kit is commonly used with Japanese models.

- Both English and Japanese procedure are bundled.
- Ink cartridges are labeled in Japanese but can be used in all models.

## 警告

- 本製品に使用しているポリ袋・手袋などを乳幼児の近くに放置しないでください。口や鼻をふさぎ、窒息する恐れがあります。

## 注意

- 子供の手の届かない所に保管してください。
- インクが衣服や周囲のものに付着すると落ちにくい場合があります。インク回収ユニットを交換するときは、インクで衣服や周囲のものを汚さないようご注意ください。
- インクが眼に入った場合、速やかに流水で洗い、異常のあるときは医師にご相談ください。
- インクを飲み込んだ場合、濃い食塩水を飲ませるなどして吐き出させ、医師にご相談ください。
- インクが皮膚についた場合は、すぐに水または石鹸水で洗い流してください。

長期間使用していない廃インクボックスは使用しないでください。

廃インクボックスのチップ部分には触れないでください。

お使いの機種によっては、イラストが異なる場合があります。

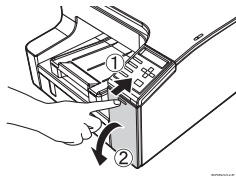
操作部に次のメッセージが表示されたときは、廃インクボックスを交換してください。次のメッセージは、廃インクボックスが満杯の時に表示されます。

インクボックスが満杯です  
マシンのメンテナンス

インクボックスが満杯です  
メンテナンスを完了してください

**1** 箱の中に入っている新しい廃インクボックスを取り出します。

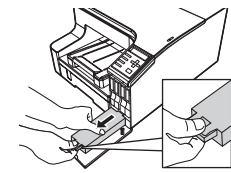
**2** 右前カバーのくぼんでいる箇所を押して (①) 開けます (②)。



**3** 5秒以上待ってから、プリンター本体内部から、満杯になった廃インクボックスを取り出します。

### 重要

- 廃インクボックスを落とさないようにしてください。



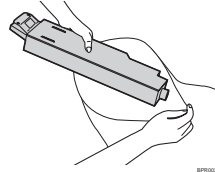
### 補足

- 「PUSH」部分を押しながら、水平にして手前に引き出してください。

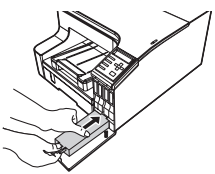
**4** 使用済みの廃インクボックスを、同梱されているビニール袋に入れます。

### 重要

- 同梱されているビニール袋に入れる際に入れた後は、廃インクボックスを落とさないようにしてください。ビニール袋が破れ、インク漏れの原因となります。



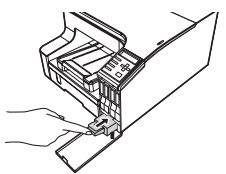
**5** 新しい廃インクボックスを差し込みます。



**6** 廃インクボックスを本体内部にカチッと音がして止まるまでゆっくと差し込みます。

### 重要

- 廃インクボックスはしっかりと奥まで押し込んでセットしてください。プリンター内部に液体が漏れる原因となります。



**7** 右前カバーのくぼんでいる箇所を押して閉じます。右前カバーが閉じていることを確認してください。

### 補足

- ご使用後は、配送担当者、ご購入先または保守担当者に連絡の上、使用済み廃インクボックスをお渡しください。

# Replacing the Ink Collector Unit GX e3300/e5500

## WARNING:

- Keep the polythene materials (bags, gloves, etc.) supplied with this machine away from babies and small children at all times. Suffocation can result if polythene materials are brought into contact with the mouth or nose.

## CAUTION:

- Keep the ink collector unit out of reach of children.
- When replacing the ink collector unit, be careful not to spill ink on your clothes or nearby objects. Ink stains can be hard to remove.
- If ink comes into contact with your eyes, rinse immediately in running water. For other symptoms, consult a doctor.
- If ink is ingested, induce vomiting by drinking a strong saline solution. Consult a doctor immediately.
- If your skin comes into contact with ink, wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water.

Do not use an ink collector unit that has not been used for a long time.

Do not touch the ink collector unit' chip contacts.

The illustrations shown here might not match your model exactly.

Replace the ink collector unit when the following message appears on the control panel:

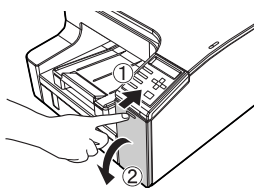
The following message appears when the ink collector unit is full.

Ink Collector Unit is full

Replace Ink Collector Unit

**1** Take the new ink collector unit out of the box.

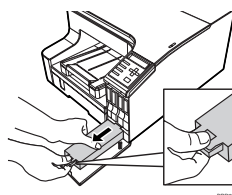
**2** While pressing the recessed part (①) of the right front cover, open the cover (②).



**3** Wait at least five seconds, and then remove the full ink collector unit from the printer.

### Important

- Take care not to drop the ink collector unit.



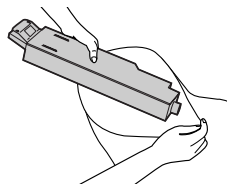
### Note

- When pulling the unit out, keep the unit level and press on the area marked "Push".

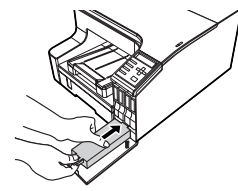
**4** Put the Ink collector unit in the supplied plastic bag.

### Important

- Take care not to drop the ink collector unit when putting it in the supplied plastic bag. The bag might tear, causing ink to spill.



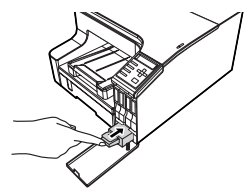
**5** Insert the new ink collector unit.



**6** Slide the ink collector unit carefully into the printer, until you hear it click.

### Important

- Make sure the ink collector unit is fully inserted. If it is not, ink will leak inside the printer.



**7** Close the right front cover.

CE Marking Traceability Information (For EU Countries Only.)

Manufacturer:  
Ricoh Co., Ltd.  
3-6 Nakamagome 1-chome,  
Ohta-ku, Tokyo, 143-8555 Japan

Authorized representative:  
Ricoh Europe PLC  
66 Chiltern Street London W1U  
4AG U.K.